	Pictorial index	Search by illustration
1	For safety and security	Make sure to read though them
2	Instrument cluster	How to read the gauges and meters, the variety of warning lights and indicators, etc.
3	Operation of each component	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving, etc.
4	Driving	Operations and advices which are necessary for driving
5	Interior features	Usage of the interior features, etc.
6	Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures
7	When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction or emergency
8	Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specification, customizable features, etc.
	Index	Search by symptom
		Search alphabetically

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

For your information..... 8
Reading this manual 12
How to search 13
Pictorial index 14

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 34
For safety drive 36
Seat belts 38
SRS airbags 44
Airbag manual on-off system.....56
Safety information for children.....58
Child restraint systems 59
Installing child restraints..... 68
Exhaust gas precautions 79

1-2. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system. 80
Double locking system..... 85
Alarm 86

2 Instrument cluster

2. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators.....94
Gauges and meters 98
Multi-information display . 101
Head-up display 109

3 Operation of each component

3-1. Key information
Keys 118

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk
Smart entry & start system 123
Wireless remote control 141
Doors 146
Trunk 150

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 157
Driving position memory .. 161
Head restraints..... 167

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel.....170
Inside rear view mirror..... 171
Outside rear view mirrors . 174

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 178
Moon roof 181

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle 186
Cargo and luggage 197
Trailer towing 198

4-2. Driving procedures
Engine (ignition) switch 207
Automatic transmission 214
Turn signal lever 222
Parking brake 224
Horn 227

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers
Headlight switch 228
Automatic High Beam 233
Fog light switch 239
Windshield wipers and washer 241
Headlight cleaner switch ... 248

4-4. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap . 249

4-5. Using the driving support
Cruise control 254
Dynamic radar cruise control 258
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 274
Lexus (parking assist-sensor) 284
Lexus (parking assist monitor) 297
Driving mode select switch 326
Driving assist systems 331
Hill-start assist control 339
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 341
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 352

4-6. Driving tips
Winter driving tips 359

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

5-1. Remote Touch screen
Remote Touch 368
Remote Touch screen 370
Set up screen 382
Speech command system .. 401

5-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
Front automatic air conditioning system.....409
Rear air conditioning system.....425
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers.....430
Windshield wiper de-icer .. 431

5-3. Using the audio system
Audio system type..... 432
Using the radio 457
Using the CD/DVD player.....465
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs.....467
Playing DVD video 473
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information.....486
Listening to Bluetooth audio.....496
Listening to a USB memory.....508
Listening to an iPod 519
Optimal use of the audio/video system.....530
Using the AUX port 533
Using the rear seat audio controls.....534
Using the steering wheel audio switches.....539

5-4. Using the hands-free phone system (for cellular phone)
Hands-free system (for cellular phone).....542
Using a Bluetooth® (phone).....556
Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone).....575
Setting the Bluetooth®..... 598

۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

5-5. Using the interior lights
Interior lights list 611
Interior light 612
• Personal lights..... 612
5-6. Using the storage features
List of storage features 614
• Glove box..... 616
• Console box 617
• Cup holders..... 618
• Auxiliary boxes..... 620
Trunk features 621
5-7. Other interior features
Sun visors and vanity mirrors.....624
Clock 625
Ashtrays 626
Power outlets.....627
Heated steering wheel 629
Seat heaters/ seat ventilators.....631
Armrest..... 635
Rear sunshade/rear door sunshades.....636
Trunk storage extension 639
Coat hooks..... 640
Assist grip 641
Utility hook 642

6 Maintenance and care

6-1. Maintenance and care
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior.....644
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior.....648
6-2. Maintenance
Maintenance requirements.....651
6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance
Do-it-yourself service precautions.....654
Hood..... 657
Positioning a floor jack 658
Engine compartment 660
Tires..... 672
Tire inflation pressure 689
Wheels..... 691
Air conditioning filter 693
Electronic key battery 695
Checking and replacing fuses.....698
Light bulbs 720

امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 738

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency.....739

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed.....740

If you think something is wrong.....747

Fuel pump shut off system 748

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds.....749

If a warning message is displayed.....757

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire).....782

If you have a flat tire (vehicles without a spare tire).....797

If the engine will not start . 815

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....817

If the parking brake cannot be released.....818

If the electronic key does not operate properly.....821

If the vehicle battery is discharged.....824

If your vehicle overheats... 829

If your vehicle becomes stuck.....832

ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن پشتیبانی
FarmaSOS.com

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.).....836

Fuel information.....853

8-2. Customization

Customizable features.....855

8-3. Items to initialize

Items to initialize.....866

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting).....868

Alphabetical index.....876

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual” for information regarding the naviga-

For your information

Main Owner’s Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

Both genuine Lexus and a wide variety of other spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available on the market. Should it be determined that any of the genuine Lexus parts or accessories supplied with the vehicle need to be replaced, Lexus recommends that genuine Lexus parts or accessories, be used to replace them. Other parts or accessories of matching quality can also be used. Lexus cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine Lexus spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

FarmaSOS.com

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Dynamic radar cruise control system
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- Vehicle dynamics integrated management
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional before you scrap your vehicle.



Your vehicle contains batteries and/or accumulators. Do not discard them into the environment but cooperate with separate collection (Directive 2006/66/EC).

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

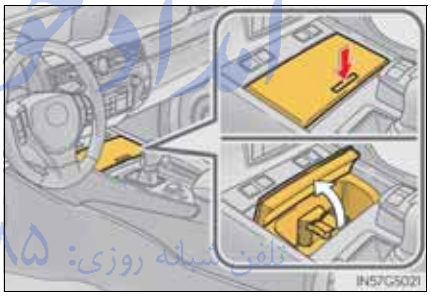
Reading this manual

CAUTION:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.

NOTICE:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.

1 2 3 ··· Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

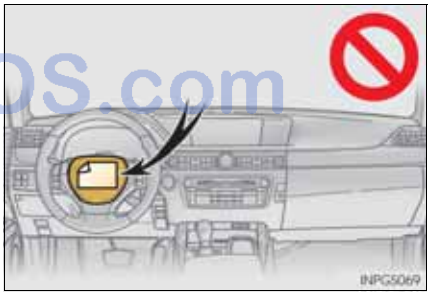
Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.



Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

Indicates the component or position being explained.

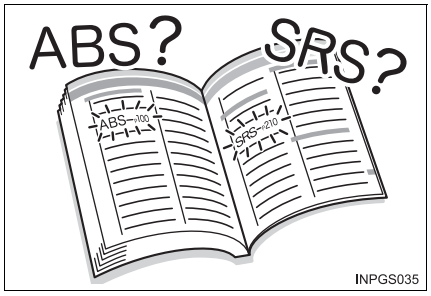
Means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.



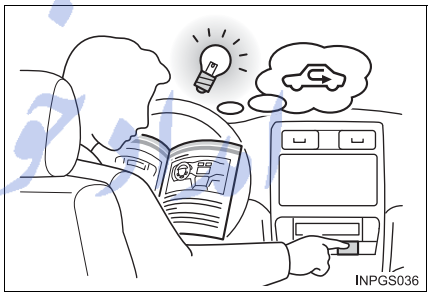
FarmaSOS.com

How to search

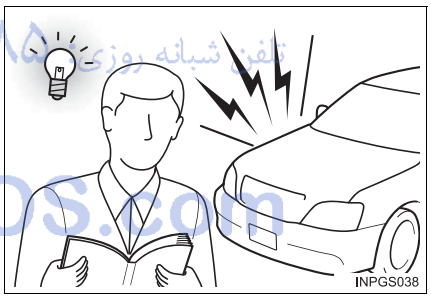
■ Searching by name
- Alphabetical index.....P. 876



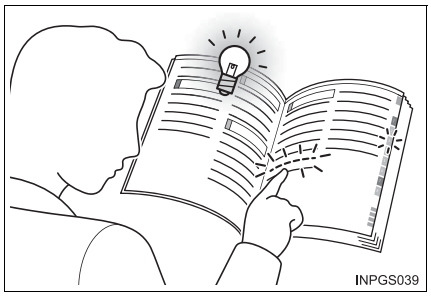
■ Searching by installation position
- Pictorial index .....P. 14



■ Searching by symptom or sound
- What to do if... (Troubleshooting).....P. 868



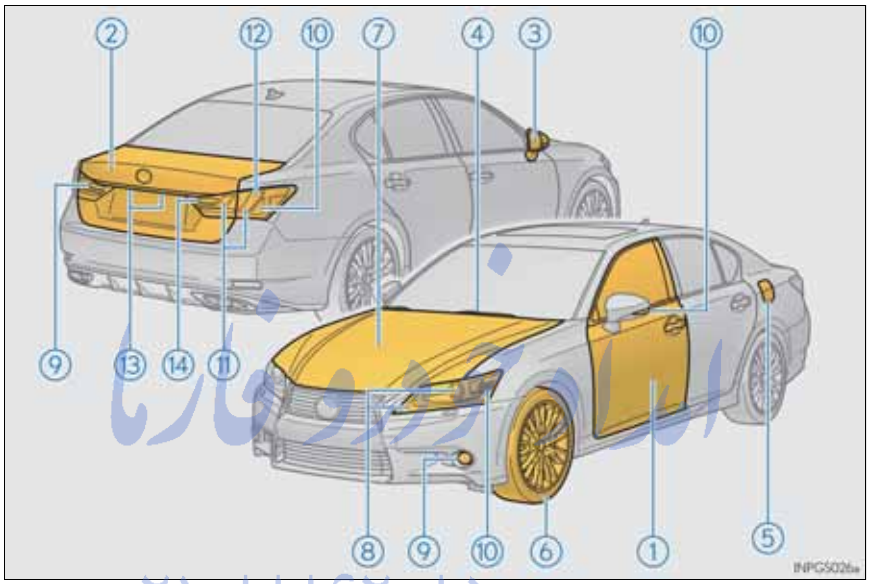
■ Searching by title
- Table of contents .....P. 2



FarmaSOS.com

Pictorial index

Exterior



① Doors . . . . . P. 146
Locking/unlocking . . . . . P. 124, 141
Opening/closing the door glasses . . . . . P. 178
Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key . . . . . P. 821
Warning lights/warning messages . . . . . P. 752, 763

② Trunk . . . . . P. 150
Opening from inside . . . . . P. 150
Opening from outside . . . . . P. 124, 141
Opening by using the mechanical key . . . . . P. 822
Warning lights/warning messages . . . . . P. 752, 764

③ Outside rear view mirrors . . . . . P. 174
Adjusting the mirror angle . . . . . P. 174
Folding the mirrors . . . . . P. 174
Driving position memory . . . . . P. 161
Defogging the mirrors . . . . . P. 430

FarmaSOS.com

④ Windshield wipers . . . . . P. 241
Precautions against winter season. . . . . P. 359
To prevent freezing (windshield wiper de-icer)*1 . . . . . P. 431
Precautions against car wash . . . . . P. 646

⑤ Fuel filler door . . . . . P. 249
Refueling method . . . . . P. 249
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity . . . . . P. 838

⑥ Tires . . . . . P. 672
Tire size/inflation pressure . . . . . P. 850
Winter tires/tire chain . . . . . P. 359
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system*1 . . . . . P. 672
Coping with flat tires . . . . . P. 782, 797

⑦ Hood . . . . . P. 657
Opening. . . . . P. 657
Engine compartment cover . . . . . P. 661
Engine oil . . . . . P. 839
Coping with overheat . . . . . P. 829
Warning messages. . . . . P. 763

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P. 720, Watts: P. 852)

⑧ Headlights/front position lights/daytime running lights . . . . . P. 228

⑨ Front fog lights*1/rear fog light*2 . . . . . P. 239

⑩ Turn signal lights . . . . . P. 222

⑪ Tail lights . . . . . P. 228

⑫ Stop lights
Hill-start assist control . . . . . P. 339

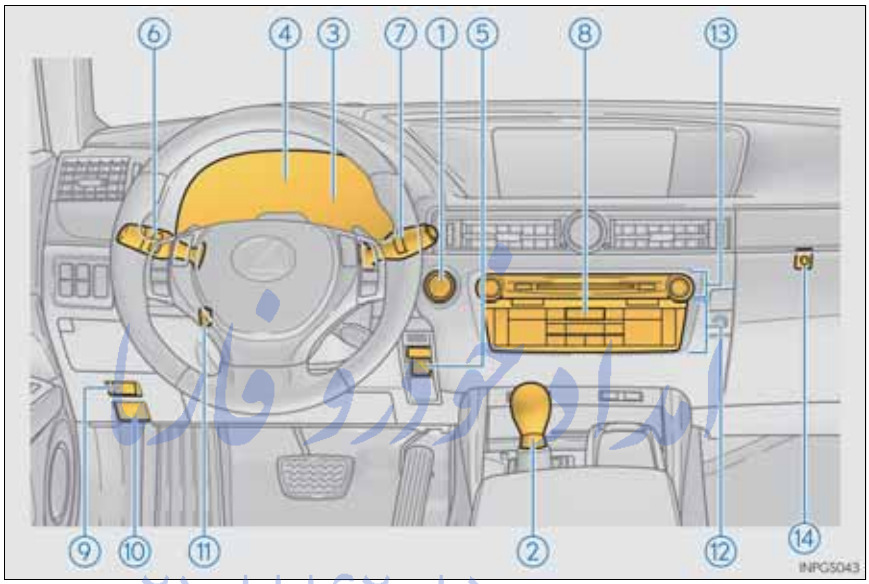
⑬ License plate lights . . . . . P. 228

⑭ Back-up light*2
Shifting the shift lever to R. . . . . P. 214

*1: If equipped
*2: They may be located on the opposite side depending on the target region.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۵-۸۸۸۶۰۸۹
FarmaSOS.com

Instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)



① Engine switch . . . . . P. 207
Starting the engine/changing the modes . . . . . P. 207
Emergency stop of the engine . . . . . P. 739
When the engine will not start . . . . . P. 815
Warning messages . . . . . P. 774

② Shift lever . . . . . P. 214
Changing the shift position . . . . . P. 214
Precautions against towing . . . . . P. 740
When the shift lever does not move . . . . . P. 817

③ Meters . . . . . P. 98
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel light . . . . . P. 98
Warning lights/indicator lights . . . . . P. 94
When the warning lights come on . . . . . P. 749

FarmaSOS.com

④ Multi-information display . . . . . P. 101
Display . . . . . P. 101
When the warning messages are displayed. . . . . P. 757

⑤ Parking brake . . . . . P. 224
Applying/releasing . . . . . P. 224
Precautions against winter season. . . . . P. 360
Warning buzzer/message . . . . . P. 757

⑥ Turn signal lever . . . . . P. 222
Headlight switch . . . . . P. 228
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/daytime running lights P. 228
Front fog lights*/rear fog light . . . . . P. 239

⑦ Windshield wiper and washer switch . . . . . P. 241
Usage . . . . . P. 241
Adding washer fluid . . . . . P. 671
Warning messages. . . . . P. 771

⑧ Emergency flasher switch . . . . . P. 738

⑨ Trunk opener . . . . . P. 150

⑩ Hood lock release lever. . . . . P. 657

⑪ Tilt and telescopic steering control switch . . . . . P. 170
Adjustment . . . . . P. 170
Driving position memory . . . . . P. 161

⑫ Air conditioning system . . . . . P. 409
Usage . . . . . P. 409
Rear window defogger . . . . . P. 430

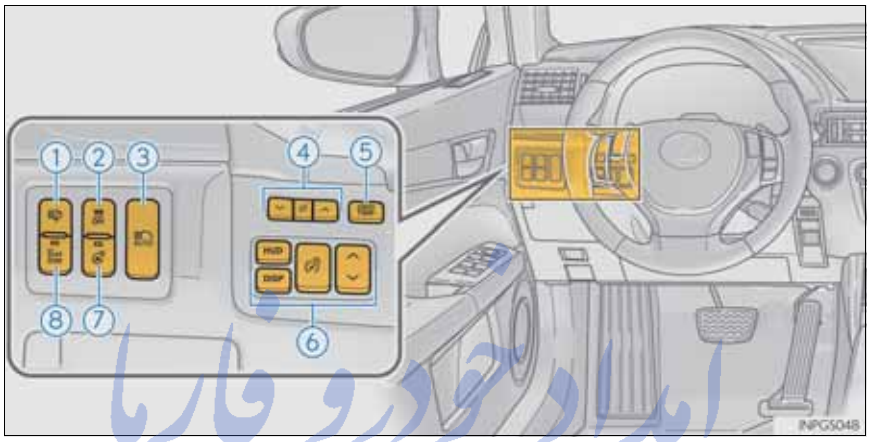
⑬ Audio system . . . . . P. 432
Audio system . . . . . P. 432
Hands-free system. . . . . P. 542

⑭ Trunk opener main switch . . . . . P. 151

امداد خودرو مارد
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

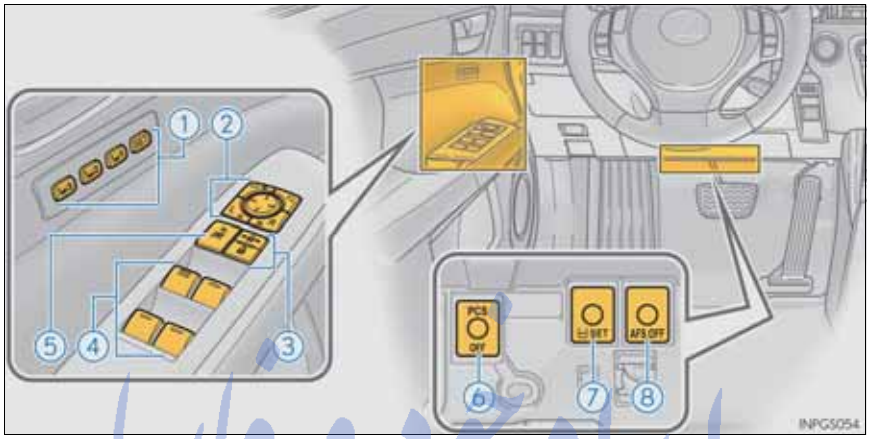
*: If equipped

Switches (Left-hand drive vehicles)



1. Headlight cleaner switch. . . . . .P. 248
2. VSC OFF switch. . . . . .P. 333
3. Automatic high beam switch* . . . . . .P. 233
4. Instrument panel light control switches . . . . . .P. 99
5. Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button . . . . . .P. 99
6. HUD (Head-up display) switches*. . . . . .P. 109
7. Heated steering wheel switch*. . . . . .P. 629
8. BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch* . . . . . .P. 352

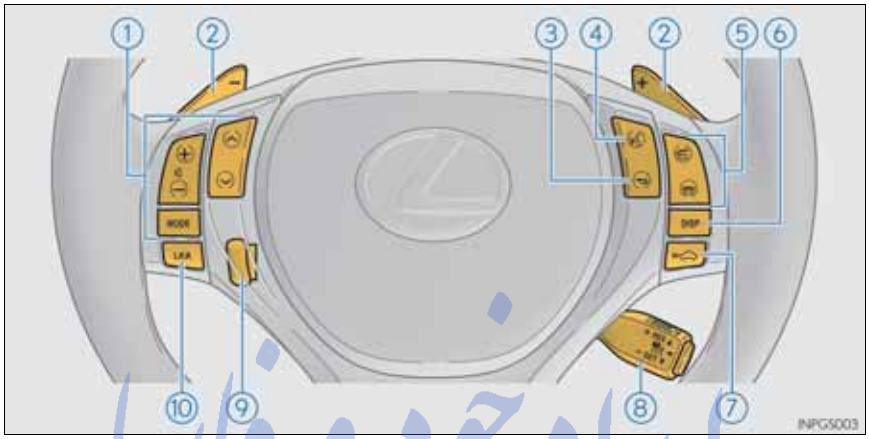
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



1 Driving position memory switches . . . . . P. 161
2 Outside rear view mirror switches . . . . . P. 174
3 Door lock switches . . . . . P. 146
4 Power window switches . . . . . P. 178
5 Window lock switch . . . . . P. 178
6 PCS OFF switch* . . . . . P. 342
7 Tire pressure warning reset switch* . . . . . P. 675
8 AFS OFF switch* . . . . . P. 230

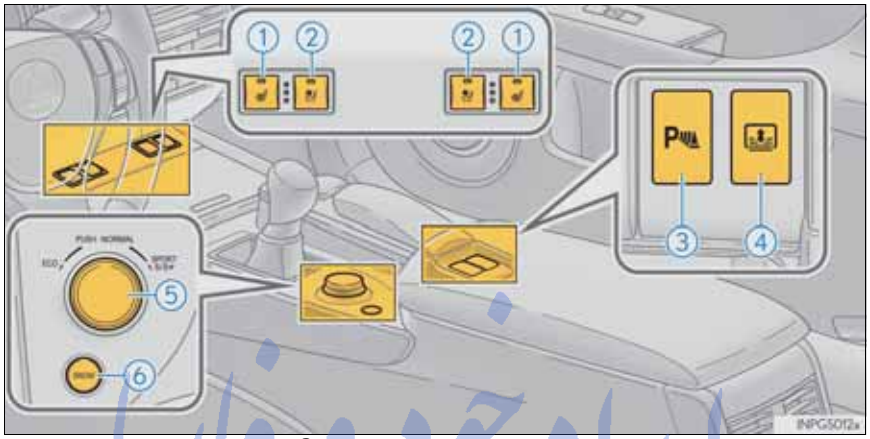
امداد خودرو ما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped



(1) Audio remote control switches . . . . . P. 539
(2) Paddle shift switches . . . . . P. 217
(3) Back switch*1 . . . . . P. 401
(4) Talk switch*1 . . . . . P. 401
(5) Telephone switches . . . . . P. 543
(6) “DISP” button . . . . . P. 102
(7) Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button*2 . . . . . P. 261
(8) Cruise control switch*2 . . . . . P. 254
Dynamic radar cruise control switch*2 . . . . . P. 258
(9) Tilt and telescopic steering control switch . . . . . P. 170
(10) LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch*2 . . . . . P. 276

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

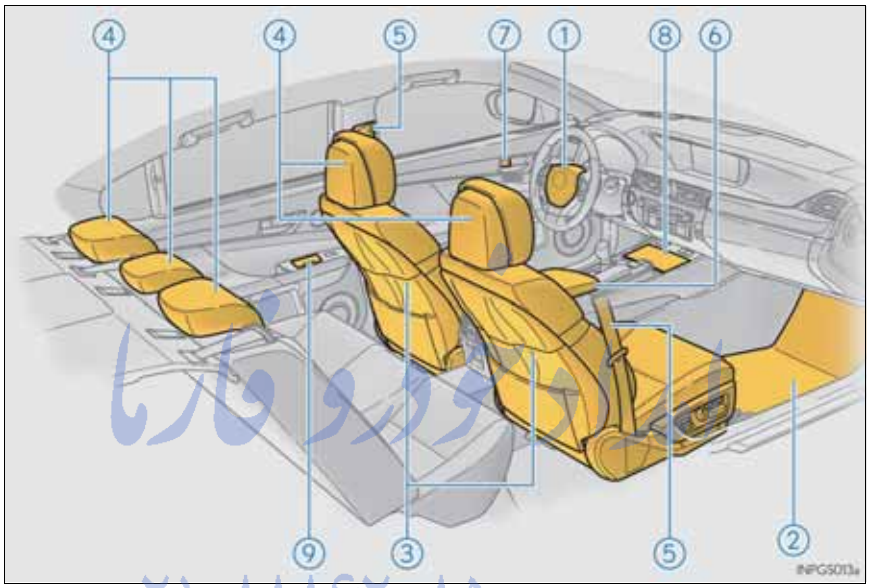


① Seat heater switches*2 . . . . . P. 631
② Seat ventilator switches*2 . . . . . P. 632
③ Lexus parking assist-sensor switch*2 . . . . . P. 284
④ Rear sunshade switch*2 . . . . . P. 636
⑤ Driving mode select switch . . . . . P. 326
⑥ Snow mode switch . . . . . P. 216

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۳۸۳۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

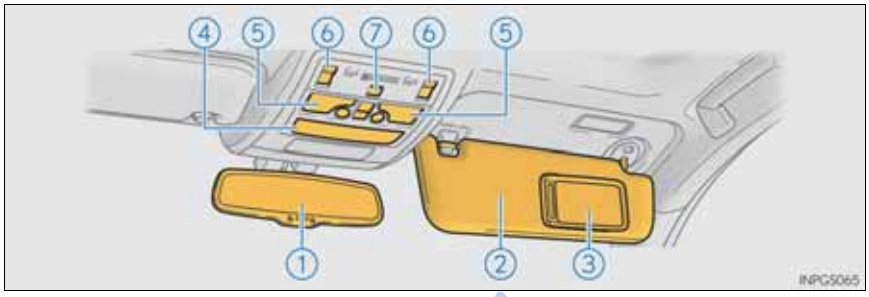
*1: Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
*2: If equipped

Interior (Left-hand drive vehicles)



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

1. SRS airbags . . . . . P. 44
2. Floor mats . . . . . P. 34
3. Front seats . . . . . P. 157
4. Head restraints . . . . . P. 167
5. Seat belts . . . . . P. 38
6. Console box . . . . . P. 617
7. Inside lock buttons . . . . . P. 146
8. Cup holders . . . . . P. 618
9. Auxiliary boxes*1 . . . . . P. 620
   Ashtrays*1 . . . . . P. 626

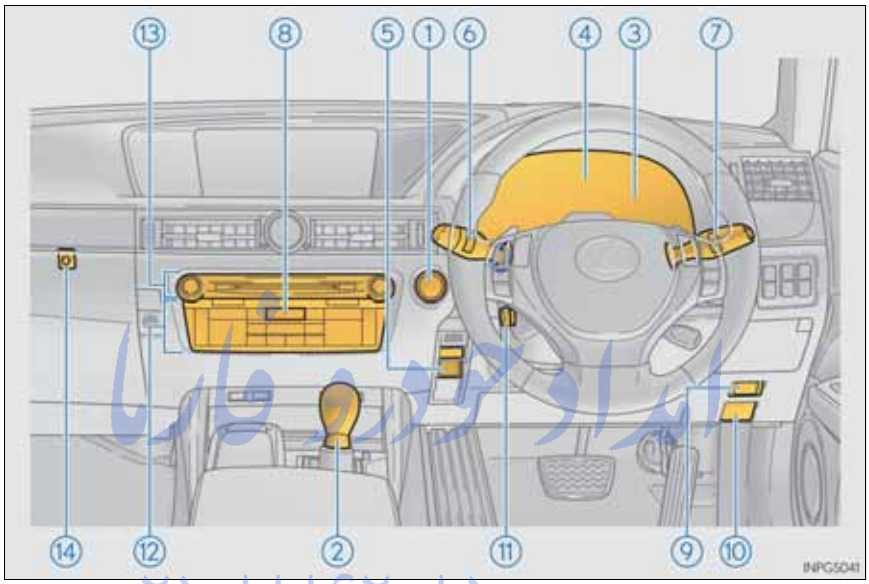


(1) Inside rear view mirror . . . . . P. 171
(2) Sun visors . . . . . P. 624
(3) Vanity mirrors . . . . . P. 624
(4) Interior light . . . . . P. 612
(5) Personal lights*2 . . . . . P. 612
(6) Moon roof switches*1 . . . . . P. 181
(7) Intrusion sensor cancel switch*1 . . . . . P. 89
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch*1 . . . . . P. 89

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

*1: If equipped
*2: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

Instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)



1 Engine switch . . . . . P. 207
Starting the engine/changing the modes . . . . . P. 207
Emergency stop of the engine . . . . . P. 739
When the engine will not start . . . . . P. 815
Warning messages . . . . . P. 774

2 Shift lever . . . . . P. 214
Changing the shift position . . . . . P. 214
Precautions against towing . . . . . P. 740
When the shift lever does not move . . . . . P. 817

3 Meters . . . . . P. 98
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel light . . . . . P. 98
Warning lights/indicator lights . . . . . P. 94
When the warning lights come on . . . . . P. 749

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱۰۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

④ Multi-information display . . . . . P. 101
Display . . . . . P. 101
When the warning messages are displayed. . . . . P. 757

⑤ Parking brake . . . . . P. 224
Applying/releasing . . . . . P. 224
Precautions against winter season. . . . . P. 360
Warning buzzer/message . . . . . P. 757

⑥ Turn signal lever . . . . . P. 222
Headlight switch . . . . . P. 228
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/daytime running lights P. 228
Front fog lights*/rear fog light . . . . . P. 239

⑦ Windshield wiper and washer switch . . . . . P. 241
Usage . . . . . P. 241
Adding washer fluid . . . . . P. 671
Warning messages. . . . . P. 771

⑧ Emergency flasher switch . . . . . P. 738

⑨ Trunk opener . . . . . P. 150

⑩ Hood lock release lever. . . . . P. 657

⑪ Tilt and telescopic steering control switch . . . . . P. 170
Adjustment . . . . . P. 170
Driving position memory . . . . . P. 161

⑫ Air conditioning system . . . . . P. 409
Usage . . . . . P. 409
Rear window defogger . . . . . P. 430

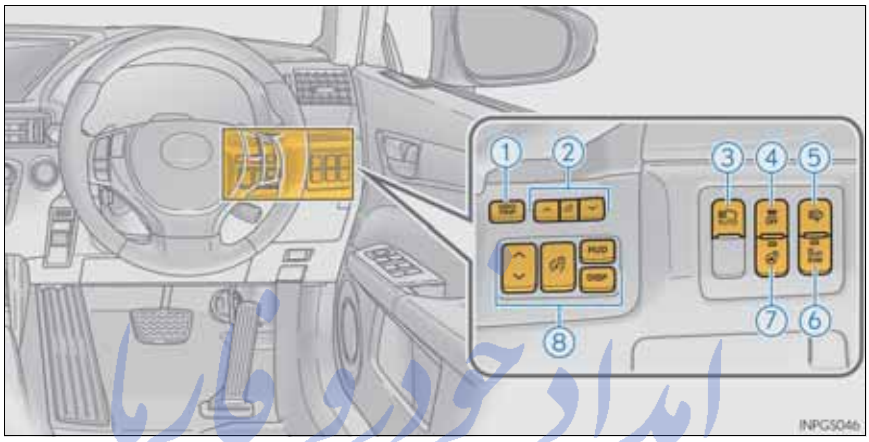
⑬ Audio system . . . . . P. 432
Audio system . . . . . P. 432
Hands-free system. . . . . P. 542

⑭ Trunk opener main switch . . . . . P. 151

امداد خودرو مارا
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

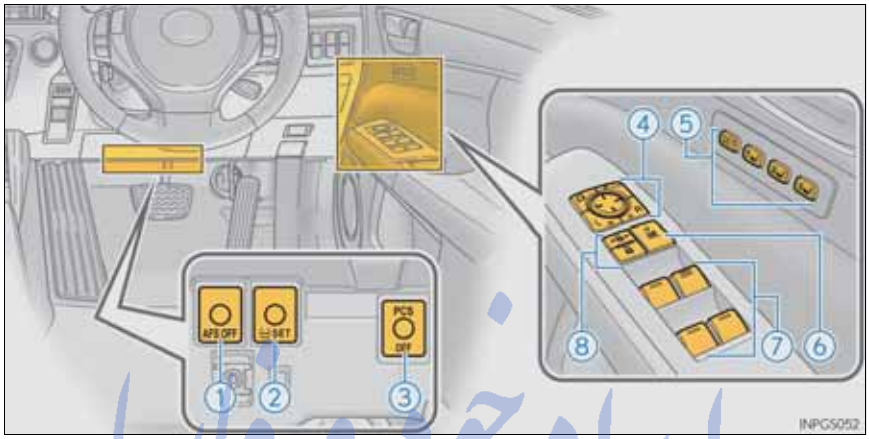
*: If equipped

Switches (Right-hand drive vehicles)



1 Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button . . . . . P. 99
2 Instrument panel light control switches . . . . . P. 99
3 Automatic high beam switch* . . . . . P. 233
4 VSC OFF switch. . . . . P. 333
5 Headlight cleaner switch. . . . . P. 248
6 BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch* . . . . . P. 352
7 Heated steering wheel switch* . . . . . P. 629
8 HUD (Head-up display) switches* . . . . . P. 109

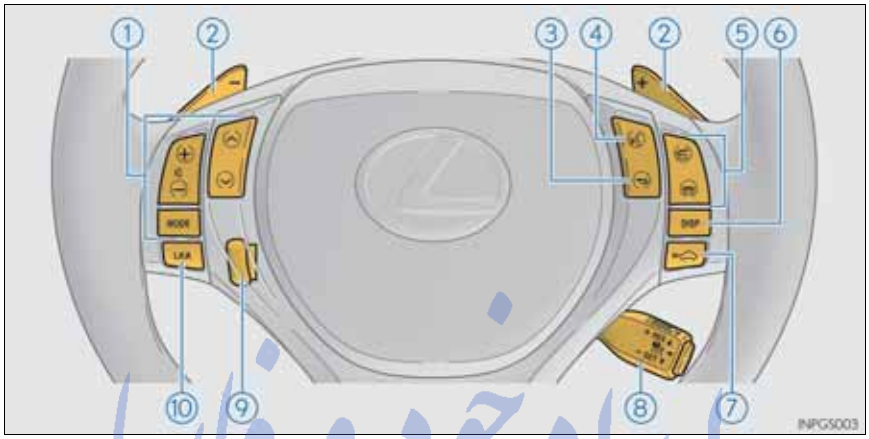
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



1 AFS OFF switch* . . . . . P. 230
2 Tire pressure warning reset switch* . . . . . P. 675
3 PCS OFF switch* . . . . . P. 342
4 Outside rear view mirror switches . . . . . P. 174
5 Driving position memory switches . . . . . P. 161
6 Window lock switch . . . . . P. 178
7 Power window switches . . . . . P. 178
8 Door lock switches . . . . . P. 146

امداد خودرو ما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped



(1) Audio remote control switches . . . . . P. 539
(2) Paddle shift switches . . . . . P. 217
(3) Back switch*1 . . . . . P. 401
(4) Talk switch*1 . . . . . P. 401
(5) Telephone switches . . . . . P. 543
(6) “DISP” button . . . . . P. 102
(7) Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button*2 . . . . . P. 261
(8) Cruise control switch*2 . . . . . P. 254
Dynamic radar cruise control switch*2 . . . . . P. 258
(9) Tilt and telescopic steering control switch . . . . . P. 170
(10) LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch*2 . . . . . P. 276

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

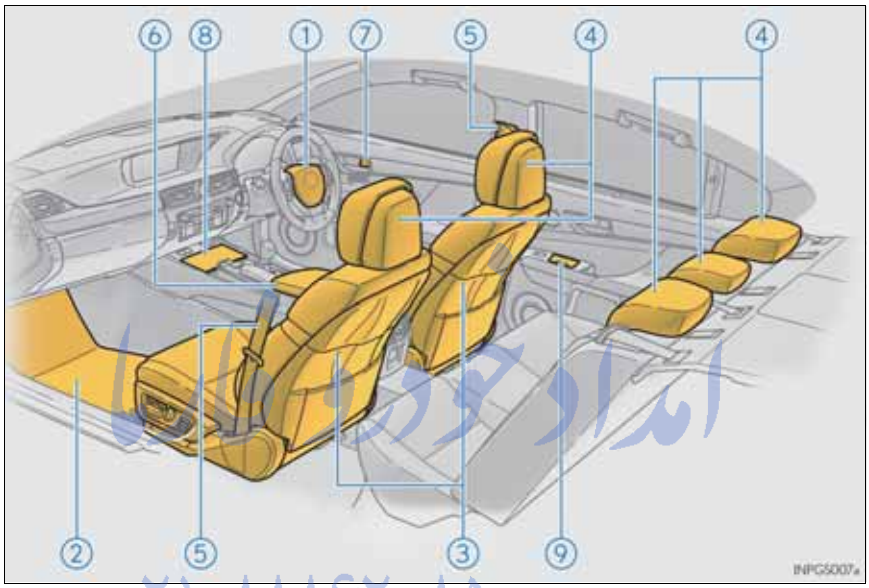


① Rear sunshade switch*2 . . . . . P. 636
② Lexus parking assist-sensor switch*2 . . . . . P. 284
③ Seat heater switches*2 . . . . . P. 631
④ Seat ventilator switches*2 . . . . . P. 632
⑤ Driving mode select switch . . . . . P. 326
⑥ Snow mode switch . . . . . P. 216

آداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۳۸۳۶۲۰۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

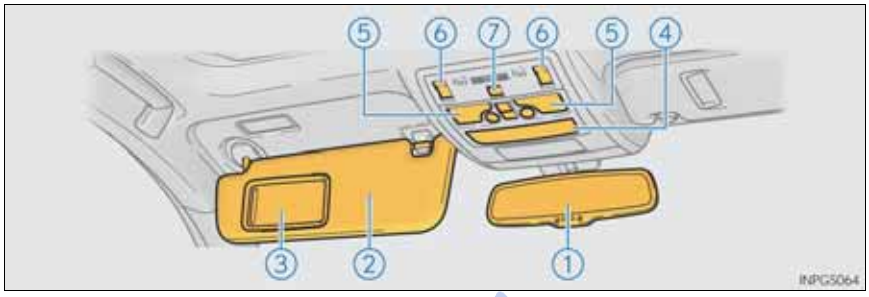
*1: Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
*2: If equipped

Interior (Right-hand drive vehicles)



امداد خودرو ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

① SRS airbags . . . . . P. 44
② Floor mats . . . . . P. 34
③ Front seats . . . . . P. 157
④ Head restraints . . . . . P. 167
⑤ Seat belts . . . . . P. 38
⑥ Console box . . . . . P. 617
⑦ Inside lock buttons . . . . . P. 146
⑧ Cup holders . . . . . P. 618
⑨ Auxiliary boxes*1 . . . . . P. 620
Ashtrays*1 . . . . . P. 626



① Inside rear view mirror . . . . . P. 171
② Sun visors . . . . . P. 624
③ Vanity mirrors . . . . . P. 624
④ Interior light . . . . . P. 612
⑤ Personal lights*2 . . . . . P. 612
⑥ Moon roof switches*1 . . . . . P. 181
⑦ Intrusion sensor cancel switch*1 . . . . . P. 89
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch*1 . . . . . P. 89

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

*1: If equipped
*2: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

For safety and security 1

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 34
For safety drive 36
Seat belts 38
SRS airbags 44
Airbag manual on-off system 56
Safety information for children 58
Child restraint systems 59
Installing child restraints 68
Exhaust gas precautions 79
1-2. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 80
Double locking system 85
Alarm 86

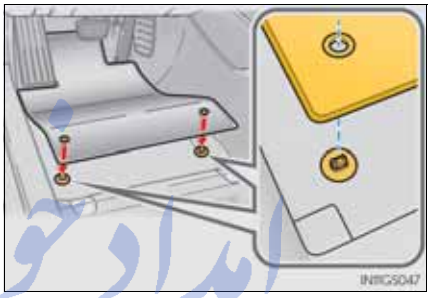
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن نسبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Before driving

Floor mat

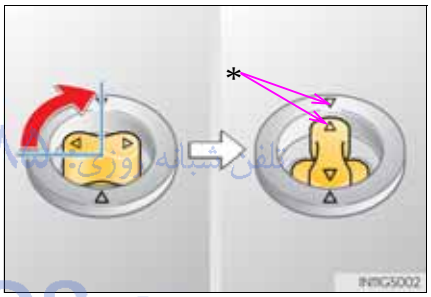
Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the △ marks.



The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to an accident, or leading to death or a serious injury.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

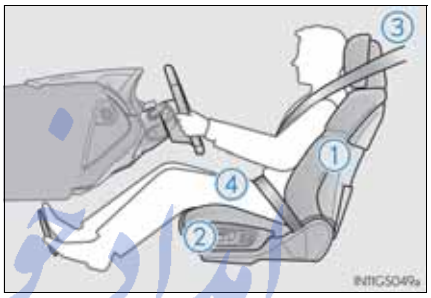


امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

For safety drive

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



1. Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P. 157)
2. Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P. 157)
3. Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 167)
4. Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 38)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P. 38)
Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 59)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P. 171, 174)

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

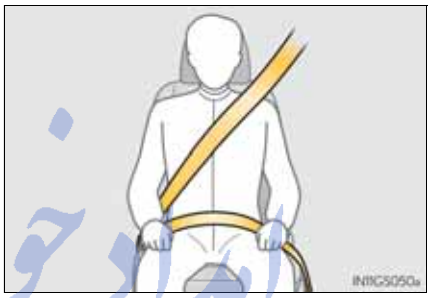
- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

FarmaSOS.com

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

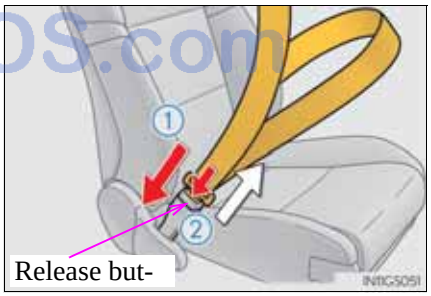
Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seat-back. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵

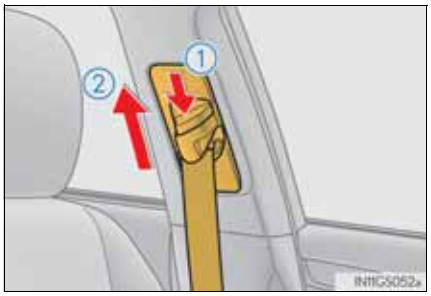
Fastening and releasing the seat belt



1. To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.
2. To release the seat belt, press the release button.

FarmaSOS.com

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

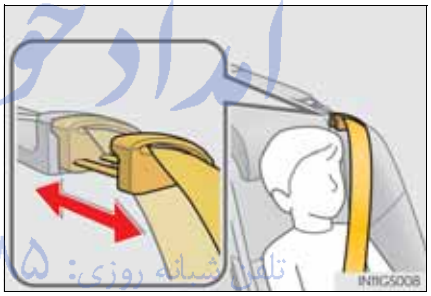


1. Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button.
2. Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

   Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

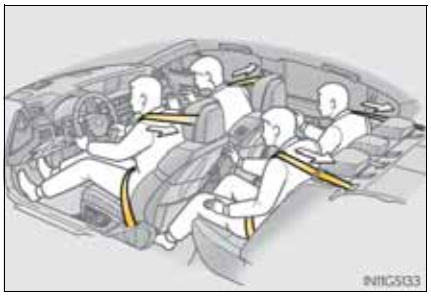
Seat belt comfort guide (outboard rear seats)

For children or smaller-than-average people, slide the seat belt comfort guide forward so that the shoulder belt does not sit close to the person's neck.



ایداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Seat belt pretensioners (front and outboard rear seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The front seat pretensioners also activate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe side collision.

The pretensioner does not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Pre-crash seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-crash safety system)

If the pre-crash sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-crash safety system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs. (→P. 341)

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 59)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P. 38)

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for seat belt replacement or installation.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 38)



Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a colli-

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ :تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 38)

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ Seat belt pretensioners

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

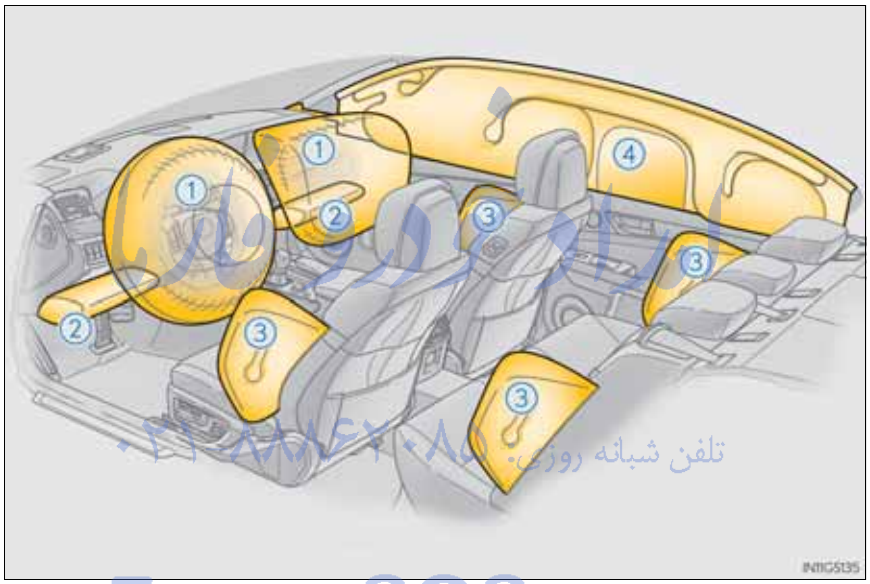
■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

امداد خودرو مارا
FarmaSOS.com

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



FarmaSOS.com

◆ SRS front airbags

① SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

② SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

An SRS knee airbag for the front passenger's seat is built into the glove box door.

SRS side and curtain shield airbags

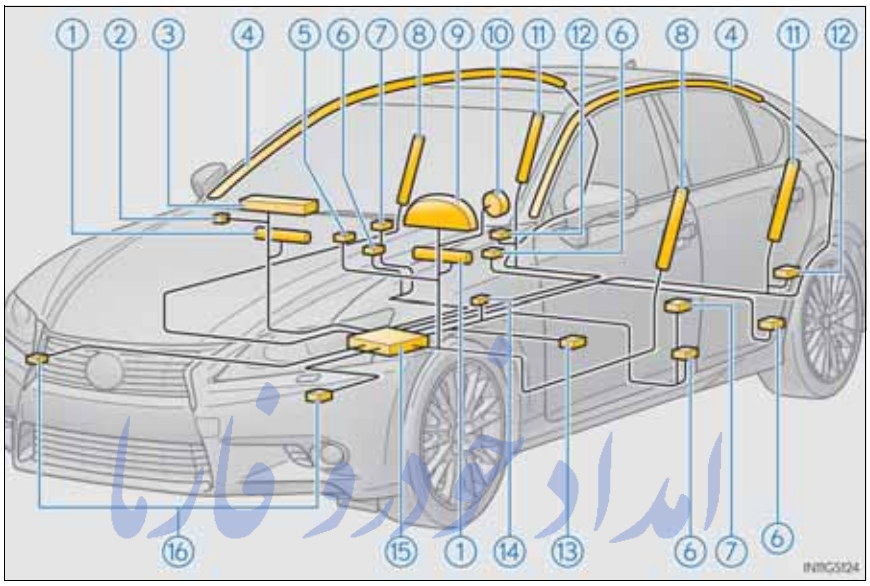
③ SRS front side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

SRS rear side airbags
Can help protect the torso of occupants in the rear outer seats

④ SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

SRS airbag system components



1. Knee airbags
2. Airbag manual on-off switch
3. Front passenger airbag
4. Curtain shield airbags
5. “PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator lights
6. Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
7. Side impact sensors (front)
8. Front side airbags
9. SRS warning light
10. Driver airbag
11. Rear side airbags
12. Side impact sensors (rear)
13. Driver’s seat position sensor
14. Driver’s seat belt buckle switch
15. Airbag sensor assembly
16. Front impact sensors

FarmaSOS.com

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
  The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.
  Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:
  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat.
    Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

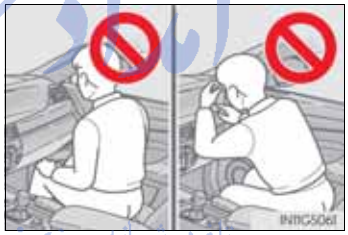
  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 59)
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن سیاه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

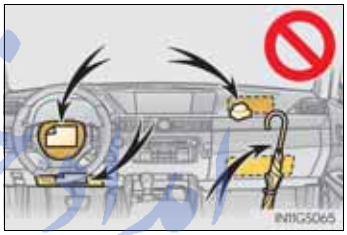
CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

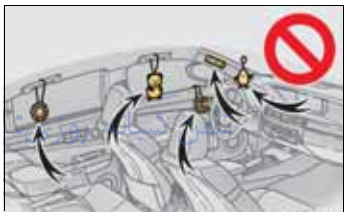
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad, lower portion of the instrument panel and door of the glove box.
These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield glass, side door glass, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip. (Except for the speed limit label →P. 810)



- Do not hang coat hangers or hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.

FarnaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad, door of the glove box and front and rear pillar garnishes are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, glove box, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars or kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle’s suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as an RF-transmitter and CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

FarmaSOS.com

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, the glove box, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

  • If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  • If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.

■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

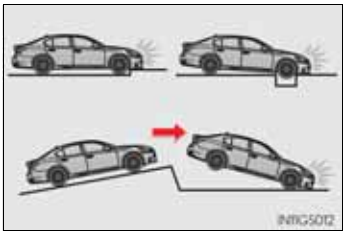
- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).
- The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

امداد خودرو فارس
Farmas03.com

■ Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

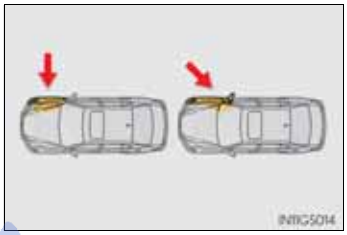


۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن پشتیبانی روزی
FarmaSOS.com

■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

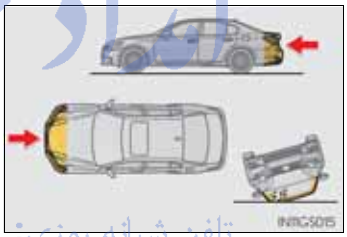
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



The SRS side and curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

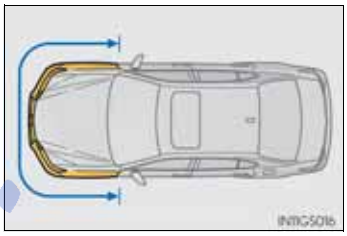


۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

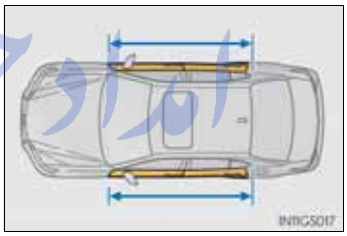
■ When to contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

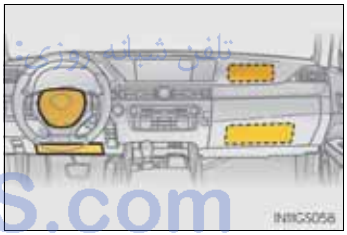
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of a door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.

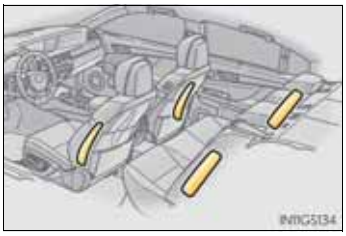


- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag, lower portion of the instrument panel or door of the glove box is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

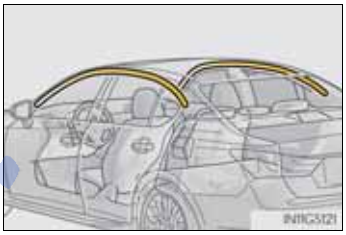


FarmaSOS.com

- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Airbag manual on-off system

This system deactivates the front passenger airbag, front passenger knee airbag and front passenger side airbag.
Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

① “PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator

This indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

② Airbag manual on-off switch



ایداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

Deactivating the front seat passenger airbag, front passenger knee airbag and front passenger side airbag

Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and rotate to the "OFF" position.

The "OFF" indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).



■ "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator information

If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Neither "ON" nor "OFF" comes on.
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to "ON" or "OFF".

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

For safety reasons, always install a child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to off.
If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

■ When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to on.
If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
Farnasco.com

Safety information for children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.
Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally.
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, trunk, seats etc.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵-۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems

Lexus strongly urges the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one on the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 69)
- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for the child restraint system installation.
- Lexus recommends that you use a child restraint system which conforms to the regulation ECE No.44.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the regulation ECE No.44:

Group 0: Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)

Group 0^+: Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)

Group I: 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)

Group II: 15 to 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.) (4 years - 7 years)

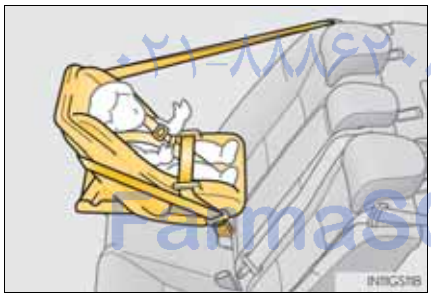
Group III: 22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.) (6 years - 12 years)

In this owner's manual, the following 3 types of popular child restraint systems that can be secured with the seat belts are explained:

امداد خودرو فارا

▶ Baby seat

Equal to Group 0 and 0^+ of ECE No.44



▶ Child seat

Equal to Group 0^+ and I of ECE No.44



FarmaSOS.com

▶ Junior seat

Equal to Group II and III of ECE No.44



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (except for Ukraine)

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Seating position / Mass groups	Front passenger seat		Rear seat	
	Airbag manual on-off switch			
	ON	OFF	Outboard	Center
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	X Never put	UF*1	U*2 L*2	U
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	X Never put	UF*1	U*2 L*2	U
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	Rear-facing — X Never put Forward-facing — UF*1	UF*1	U*2	U
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)	UF*1	UF*1	U*2	U

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

U: Suitable for “universal” category child restraint system approved for the use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category child restraint system approved for the use in this mass group.

L: Suitable for “LEXUS G 0^{+}, BABY SAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM” approved for the use in this mass group.

X: Not suitable seat position for children in this mass group.

NOTE:

*1: When you use a child restraint system in this position, move the seatback to the most upright position and the seat cushion to the highest position.

*2: When you use a child restraint system in this position, remove the head restraint.

The child restraint system mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint system which is different from the system mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer concerned and the seller of those seats.

FarmaSOS.com

Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (with ISOFIX rigid anchors) (except for Ukraine)

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Mass groups	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions
			Rear outboard
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X
	G	ISO/L2	X
		(1)	X
Group 0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)	E	ISO/R1	X
		(1)	X
Group 0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)	E	ISO/R1	X
	D	ISO/R2	X
	C	ISO/R3	X
		(1)	X
Group I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	D	ISO/R2	X
	C	ISO/R3	X
	B	ISO/F2	IUF*
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF*
	A	ISO/F3	IUF*
		(1)	X
Group II 15 to 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.)		(1)	X
Group III 22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.)		(1)	X

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

(1) For the child restraint system which do not carry the ISO/XX size class identification (A to G), for the applicable mass group, the car manufacturer shall indicate the vehicle specific ISOFIX child restraint system(s) recommended for each position.

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

X: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

*: When you use a child restraint system in this position, remove the head restraint.

The child restraint system mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint systems different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer and retailer.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ When installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat

When you have to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the following:

- The seatback to the most upright position
- The seat cushion to the highest position
- The seat cushion to the fully rearward position



■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 38)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using a child restraint system

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child. It may result in death or serious injury (in the event of sudden braking or an accident).

FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 56)
  In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

FarhaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

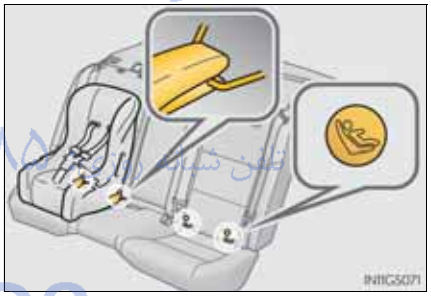
Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the seats using a seat belt or ISO-FIX rigid anchors. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.

Seat belts (An ELR belt requires a locking clip)



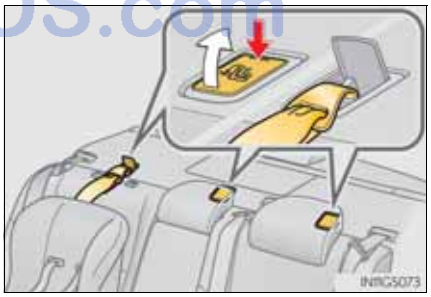
ISOFIX rigid anchors

Lower anchors are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



Anchor brackets (for top strap)

An anchor bracket is provided for each rear seat.

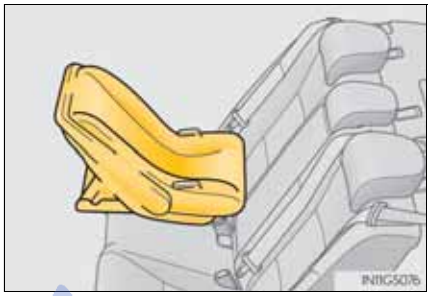


امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

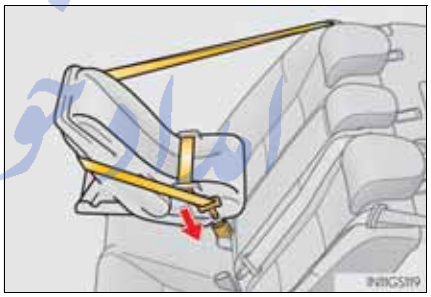
Installing child restraints using a seat belt

■ Rear-facing — Baby seat/child seat

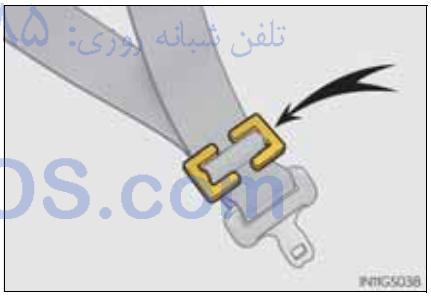
1 Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.



2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



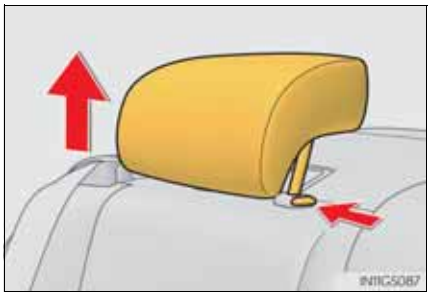
3 Install a locking clip near the tab of the lap and shoulder belt by inserting the lap and shoulder webbing through the recesses of the locking clip. Buckle the belt again. If the belt has any slack, release the buckle and reinstall the locking clip.



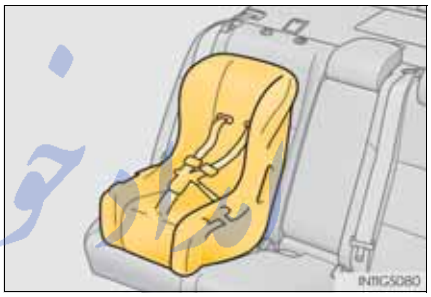
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Forward-facing — Child seat

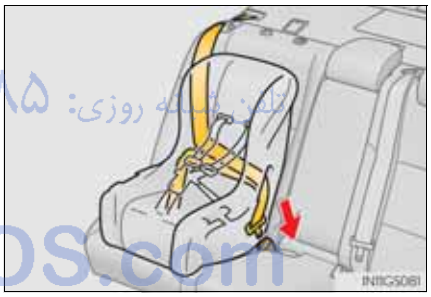
1 Rear outboard seats: Remove the head restraint.



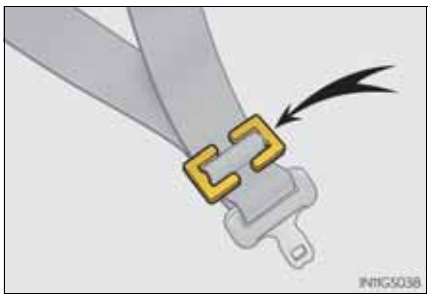
2 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



3 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



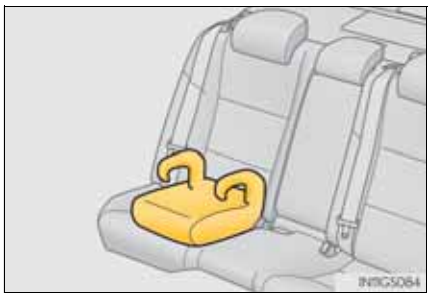
4 Install a locking clip near the tab of the lap and shoulder belt by inserting the lap and shoulder webbing through the recesses of the locking clip. Buckle the belt again. If the belt has any slack, release the buckle and reinstall the locking clip.



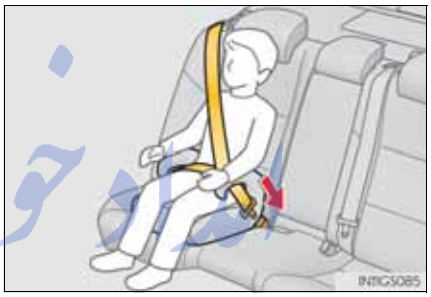
خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

■ Junior seat

1 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



2 Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

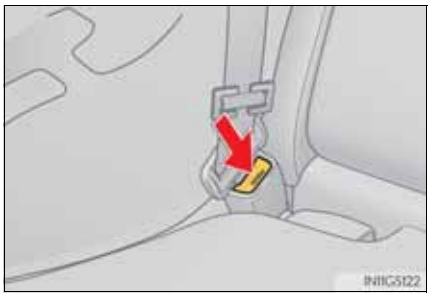


Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 38)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۲۱-۸۸۸۶۳۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

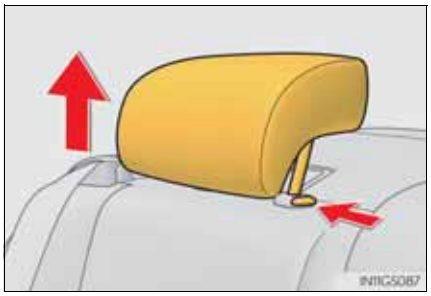
Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt

Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.



Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchor

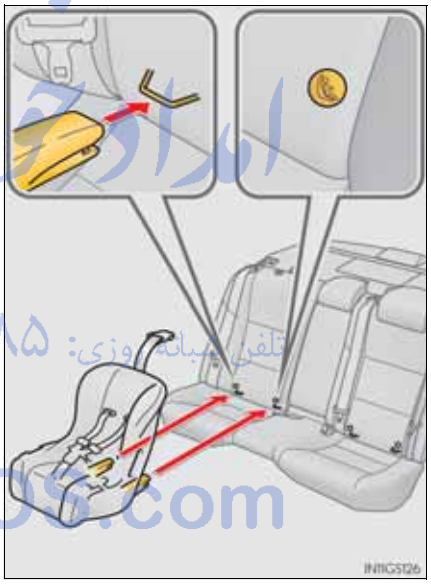
1 Remove the head restraint.



2 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.

3 Latch the buckles onto the exclusive fixing bars.

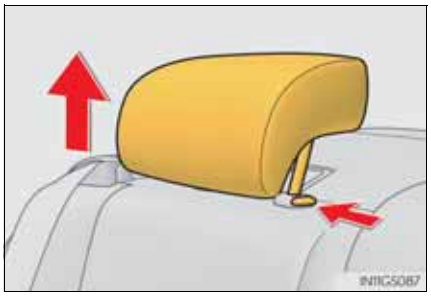
If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchor bracket.



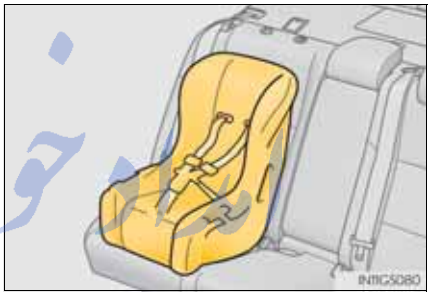
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن پشتیبانی فروش:
FarmaSOS.com

Child restraint systems with a top strap

1 Rear outboard seats:
Remove the head restraint.

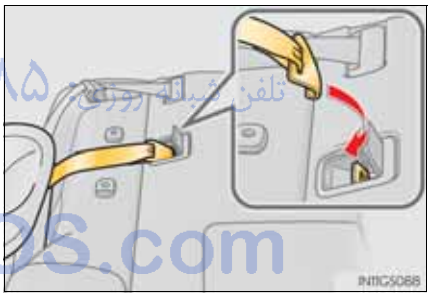


2 Secure the child restraint system using the seat belt or ISO-FIX rigid anchors.



3 Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.



FarmaSOS.com

■ When installing a child restraint system

You need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional:

Locking clip for child restraint system
(Part No. 73119-22010)

CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of a sudden braking or an accident.

- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).



- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

- When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible.
  Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

● Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.
(→P. 56)



The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



There is a sticker on the passenger side of the instrument panel and a label on both sides of the passenger side sun visor, both indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat.
Details of the label on the passenger side sun visor are shown in the illustration below. The label includes informa-

▶ Type A

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

⚠ WARNING AVERTISSEMENT WARNUNG AVVISO ADVERTENCIA WAARSCHUWING	
	(GB) **DO NOT** place a rear facing child seat on the front seat unless the passenger airbag is deactivated. **DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY** can occur. See owner's manual.
	(F) **NE JAMAIS** placer un siège enfant positionné dos à la route sur le siège avant, sauf si l'airbag passager est désactivé. Risque de **MORT OU BLESSURE GRAVE.** Voir le manuel du propriétaire.
	(D) **KEINEN** rückwärtsgerichteten Kindersitz auf dem Vordersitz verwenden, außer der Beifahrer-Airbag ist deaktiviert. **TOD ODER SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN** können die Folge sein. Siehe Betriebsanleitung.
	(I) **NON** posizionare il seggiolino per bambini rivolto in senso opposto a quello di marcia sul sedile anteriore se l'airbag del passeggero non e'stato disattivato. Rischio di **MORTE O LESIONI GRAVI.** Consultare il manuale di uso e manutenzione.
	(E) **NO** coloque una silla para niños en sentido contrario al de la marcha del vehículo en el asiento del acompañante, excepto si el airbag del pasajero estuviera desactivado. Riesgo de **MUERTE O HERIDAS GRAVES.** Consulte el manual del propietario.
	(NL) **GEEN** tegen de rijrichting in geplaatst kinderzitje op de voorstoel plaatsen, tenzij de passagiersairbag gedeactiveerd is. **DOOD OF ZWARE VERWONDINGEN** kunnen het gevolg zijn. Zie instruktieboekje.

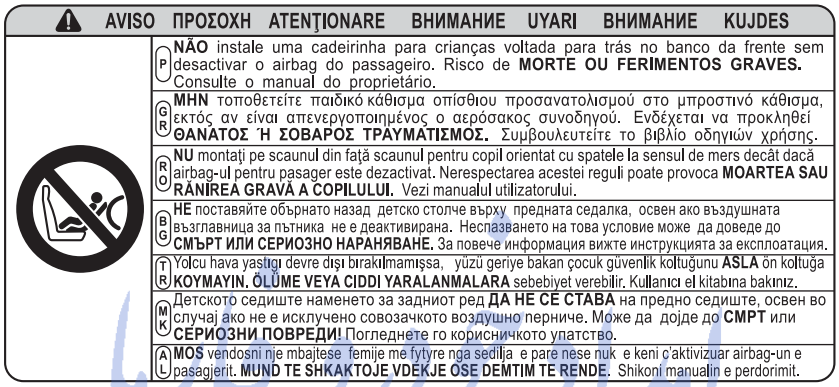
ITN18P324

FreeSOS.com

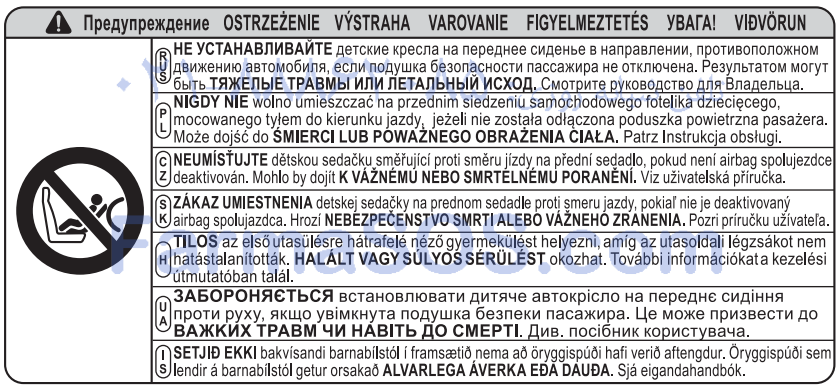
⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

▶ Type B



▶ Type C



⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

▶ Type D

⚠ ĮSPĖJIMAS HOIATUS BRĪDINĀJUMS ADVARSEL VAROITUS VARNING ADVARSEL	
	(LT) **NETVIRTINKITE** į galą atsuktos vaikiškos automobilinės kėdutės ant priekinės keleivio sėdynės jei neišjungta oro pagalvė - **GALITE RIMTAI AR MIRTINAI** sužaloti kėdutėje sėdintį vaiką. Žr. Instrukciją automobilio savininkui.
	(EST) **ÄRGE** asetage seljaga sõidusuunas olevat lapse turvatooli esiistmele, välja arvatud juhul, kui kaassõitja turvapadi on välja lülitatud. Tagajärjeks võib olla **SURM VÕI TÕSINE VIGASTUS**. Vaadake omaniku käsiraamatut.
	(LV) **NENOVIETOJIET** uz aizmuguri vērstu bērna sēdeklīti uz priekšējā sēdekļa, izņemot, ja ir dezaktivizēts pasažiera gaisa spilvens. Tas var izraisīt **NĀVI VAI NOPIETNU SAVAINOJUMU**. Skatiet lietotāja rokasgrāmatu.
	(DK) Placer **ALDRIG** et bagudvendt barnesæde på forsædet, uden at passagersædets airbag er frakoblet. Risiko for **DØD ELLER ALVORLIG PERSONSKADE**. Se instruktionsbog.
	(FIN) **ÄLÄ** aseta etuistuimelle selkä menosuuntaan asennettavaa lasten turvaistuinta silloin, kun matkustajan turvatyynyä ei ole kytketty pois toiminnasta. Seurauksena voi olla **KUOLEMA TAI VAKAVA LOUKKAANTUMINEN**. Katso lisäohjeet omistajan käsikirjasta.
	(S) **DU FÅR ALDRIG** placera en bakåtvänd barnstol i framsätet, om inte passagerar krockkudden är avaktiverad. **DÖDSFALL ELLER ALLVARLIGA PERSONSKADOR** kan inträffa. Se instruktionsbok.
	(N) **IKKE** plasser et bakovervendt barnesete i passasjersetet foran med mindre kollisjonsputen er deaktivert. Dette kan medføre **ALVORLIG PERSONSKADE**. Se brukerhåndboken for mer informasjon.

IN11GS094

▶ Type E

⚠ אזהרה UPOZORENJE OPOZORILO Upozorenje UPOZORENJE Upozorenje KUJDES	
	(IL) **איך לחבר מושב בטיחות לילד על המושב הקדמי עם הפנים לאחור, אלא אם פעולת כרית האוויר בצד הנוסע הושבתה. קיימת סכנת מוות או פציעה חמורה. עיין המדריך למשתמש.**
	(HR) Dječju sjedalicu namijenjenu za stražnje sjedalo NE postavljajte na sjedalo suvozača osim ako ste isključili prednji zračni jastuk. U suprotnom može doći do **POGIBIJE ILI TEŠKIH OZLJEDA.** Proučite priručnik za korisnika.
	(SLO) **NE NAMEŠČAJTE** otroškega sedeža, v katerem sedi otrok s hrbtom obrnjen v smer vožnje, na sprednji sedež, če sovoznikova varnostna blazina ni izklopljena. Lahko bi prišlo do **RESNE POŠKODBE ALI SMRTI**. Prosimo, preberite navodila za uporabo.
	(SRB) Ne postavljajte dečije auto sedište koje gleda nazad na prednje sedište ukoliko vazdušni jastuk za suvozača nije isključen. U slučaju nesreće mogu nastupiti smrt ili ozbiljne povrede. Obavezno pročitajte uputstvo za upotrebu.
	(H) Dječju sjedalicu koja gleda prema nazad NE postavljajte na prednje sjedište ukoliko zračni jastuk suvozača nije isključen. Može doći do **SMRTI ILI OZBILJNIH** povreda. Pogledajte Upute za rukovanje.
	(MNE) Ne postavljajte dječije auto-sjedište koje gleda nazad na prednje sjedište ukoliko vazdušni jastuk za suvozača nije isključen. U slučaju nesreće mogu nastupiti smrt ili ozbiljne povrede. Obavezno pročitajte uputstvo za upotrebu.
	(AL) **MOS** vendosni nje mbajtese femije me fytyre nga sedilja e pare nese nuk e keni c'aktivizuar airbag-un e pasagjerit. **MUND TE SHKAKTOJE VDEKJE OSE DEMTIM TE RENDE.** Shikoni manualin e perdorimit.

IN11GS095a

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for the child restraint system installation.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or a sudden braking.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden braking or an accident.

FarmaSOS.com

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhale.

CAUTION

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the trunk lid is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine on for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

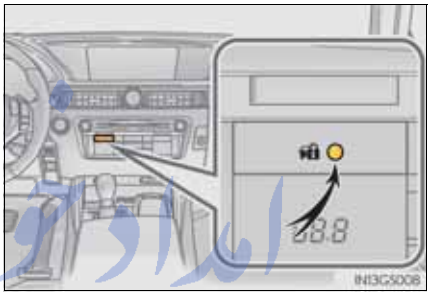
Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.



امداد خودرو ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

■ Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571(Head Office)
or 471-8572(Research & Development Group), JAPAN
TEL. +81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: TMIMB-3
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: March 23, 2010

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

امداد خودرو ما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaOS.com

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMIMB-3 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMIMB-3 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMIMB-3 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMIMB-3 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMIMB-3 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMIMB-3 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav I direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMIMB-3 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMIMB-3 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMIMB-3 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMIMB-3 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMIMB-3 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

امداد خودرو فارنا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarnaCar.com

Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMIMB-3 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMIMB-3 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMIMB-3 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMIMB-3 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMIMB-3 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMIMB-3 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMIMB-3 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMIMB-3 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMIMB-3 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMIMB-3 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMIMB-3 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMIMB-3 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

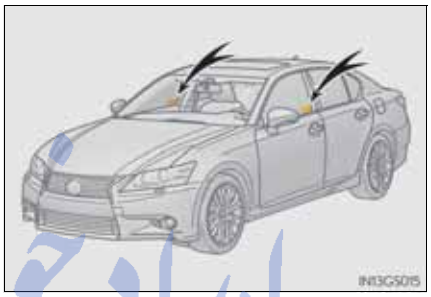
Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Double locking system

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the window glass of both front doors.



Setting the double locking system

Turn the engine switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.

Using the entry function:
Touch the sensor area on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.

Using the wireless remote control:
Press twice within 5 seconds.

Canceling the double locking system

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle.

Using the wireless remote control: Press .

CAUTION

■ Double locking system precaution

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Alarm*

The alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.
The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The door will lock again automatically.)
- A trunk is opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key.
- The hood is opened.
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination. (if equipped)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Setting the alarm system

Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.



The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

*: If equipped

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors or open the trunk using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof (if equipped) are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

امداد خودرو فارا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

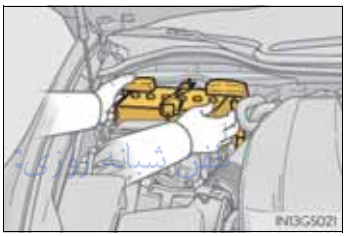
- The doors are unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P. 826)



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ فارما شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

■ Alarm-operated door lock

When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.

■ Customization

The alarm can be set to deactivate when the mechanical key is used to unlock.
(Customizable features: →P. 855)

⚠ NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away. (if equipped)

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

■ Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P. 86)

■ Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to stop the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

Press the switch again to re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.



FamaSOS.com

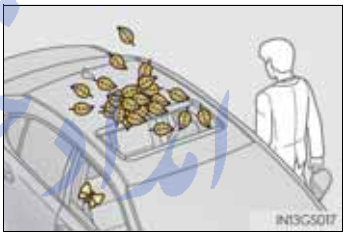
■ Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is deactivated.

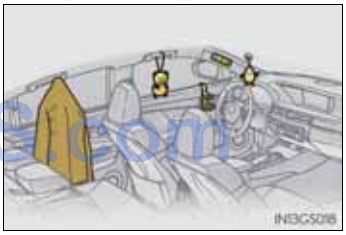
■ Intrusion sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- A window or the moon roof is open.
  In this case, the sensor may detect the following:
  - Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
  - Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
  - The movement of people outside the vehicle



- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.



- Places with extreme vibrations or noises, or situations in which the vehicle is subject to repeated impacts or vibrations:
  - When parked in a parking garage
  - When the vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
  - When ice adhering to the vehicle is removed
  - When the vehicle is in an automatic or high-pressure car wash
  - When in a hail or lightning storm

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Tilt sensor detection considerations (if equipped)

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To ensure the intrusion sensor function correctly

- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Instrument cluster 2

2. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators..... 94
Gauges and meters..... 98
Multi-information display. 101
Head-up display..... 109

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all warning lights and indicators illuminated.

◆ Instrument cluster



The units used on the speedometer and some indicators may differ depending on the target region.

FarmaSOS.com

◆ Center panel



Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems.

*1  Brake system warning light (→P. 749)

*1  Charging system warning light (→P. 750)

*1  Malfunction indicator lamp (→P. 750)

*1  SRS warning light (→P. 750)

*1  ABS warning light (→P. 750)

*1  Electric power steering system warning light (→P. 751)

*1, 2  (if equipped) "PCS" warning light (→P. 751)

*1  Slip indicator (→P. 751)

*1, 2  (if equipped) "AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 751)

*2  Parking brake indicator (→P. 751)

*1  Brake system warning light (→P. 751)

 Open door warning light (→P. 752)

 Low fuel level warning light (→P. 752)

 Seat belt reminder light (→P. 752)

*1  Master warning light (→P. 752)

*1  Tire pressure warning light (→P. 753)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P. 222)


Tail light indicator (→P. 228)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 228)



(if equipped)
Automatic High Beam indicator (→P. 233)


(if equipped)
Front fog light indicator (→P. 239)


(if equipped)
Rear fog light indicator (→P. 239)


Cruise control indicator (→P. 254)


(if equipped)
Radar cruise control indicator (→P. 258)



Cruise control "SET" indicator (→P. 254)



(if equipped)
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) indicator (→P. 276)


(if equipped)
Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator (→P. 285)

*1


(if equipped)
"AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 230)

*1, 2

Slip indicator (→P. 333, 339)

*1


VSC OFF indicator (→P. 334)

*1, 3


(if equipped)
"PCS" warning light (→P. 342)


Parking brake indicator (→P. 224)

*1



“PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator
(→P. 56)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*3: The light comes on when the system is turned off. The light flashes faster than usual to indicate that the system is operating.

CAUTION

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately if this occurs.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



The units used on the speedometer may differ depending on the target region.

① Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

② Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

③ ECO lamp and SPORT lamp

Changes colors according to driving mode

④ Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data (→P. 102)

⑤ Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

⑥ Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

⑦ Shift position and shift range

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 214)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

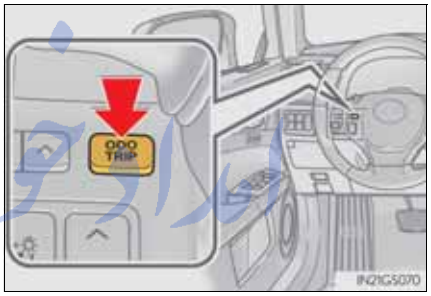
⑧ Odometer and trip meter display

Odometer:
Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter:
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters “A” and “B” can be used to record and display different distances independently.

Changing the display

Switches between odometer and trip meter displays. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the button will reset the trip meter.

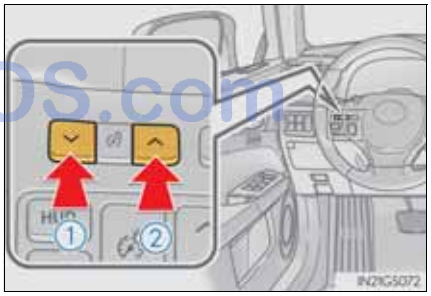


Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.

① Darker

② Brighter



FarmaSOS.com

■ The meters and display illuminate when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Instrument panel brightness adjustment

The instrument panel brightness levels when the tail lights are on and off can be adjusted individually. However, when the surroundings are bright (daytime, etc.), turning on the tail lights will not change the instrument panel brightness.

■ Limitation of brightness adjustment

The brightness of the instrument panel lights is automatically adjusted based on the light sensor detecting how bright the surroundings are. However, if the instrument panel brightness has been manually set to either the brightest or darkest setting, the automatic adjustment will not be performed.

■ ECO lamp and SPORT lamp

- When sport mode is selected, SPORT lamp (red) will illuminate.
- When all of the following conditions are satisfied and Eco-friendly driving, ECO lamp (blue) will illuminate. (ECO lamp will become brighter the more Eco-friendly driving you perform. Also, while the acceleration exceeds Zone of Eco driving, ECO lamp turns off. (→P. 109) However, when Eco drive mode is selected, while the acceleration exceeds Zone of Eco driving, ECO lamp does not turn off.):
  - Driving with the shift lever in D
  - Paddle shift switch is not operated.
  - Either normal mode or Eco drive mode is selected.
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or below.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. on/off operation of ECO lamp) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 857)

⚠ NOTICE

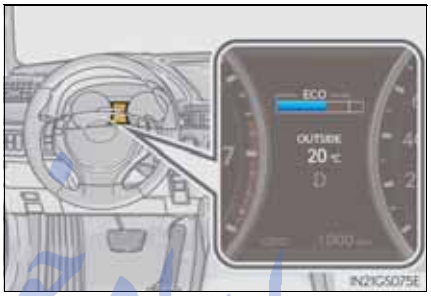
■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 829)

FarmaSOS.com

Display contents

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data including the current outside air temperature.



- Eco Driving Indicator (→P. 104)
- Outside temperature display (→P. 104)
- Trip information (→P. 104)

  Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising related information
- Tire inflation pressure (if equipped) (→P. 106)
- Drive monitor (→P. 106)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor display* (if equipped) (→P. 286)
- Dynamic radar cruise control display* (if equipped) (→P. 286)
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) display* (if equipped) (→P. 278)
- Warning messages (→P. 757)

  Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems. Display can be switched by pressing the "DISP" button. (→P. 104)

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsiSOS.com

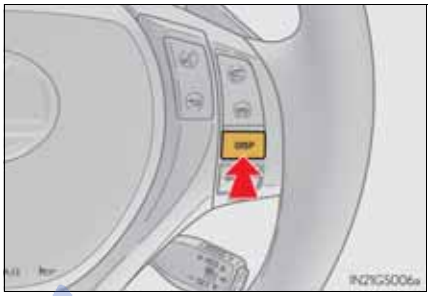
*: Automatically displayed when the system is used. Display can be switched by pressing the “DISP” button.
(→P. 104)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Trip information

■ Switching the display

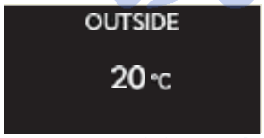
Items displayed can be switched by pressing the “DISP” button.



■ Eco Driving Indicator

→P. 109

■ Outside temperature



Displays the outside air temperature

The temperature range that can be displayed is from
-40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F)

■ Current fuel consumption



Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

■ Average fuel consumption after refueling

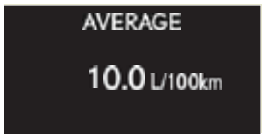


Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Average fuel consumption



Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset

- The function can be reset by pressing the “DISP” button for longer than 1 second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ Average vehicle speed



Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was last started.

The function can be reset by pressing the “DISP” button for longer than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

■ Driving range

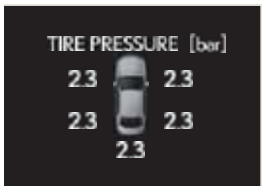


Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
  When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵-۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

■ Tire inflation pressure (if equipped)



Displays inflation pressure of each tire.

For the vehicles with a compact spare tire: The inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be displayed.

Drive monitor

Outside temperature, average fuel consumption after refueling or driving range can be selected and displayed.

If displayed on the drive monitor, other trip information or warning messages can be displayed simultaneously.



For display and selection procedures, follow the “Setting up the displays”.

The information displayed on the drive monitor will not be displayed on the trip information screen.

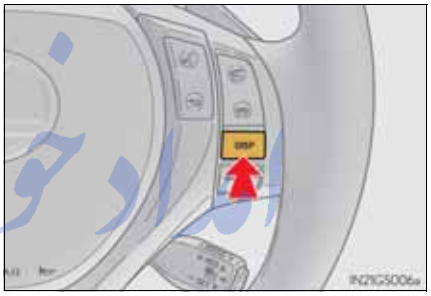
FarnaSOS.com

Setting up the displays

1 While the vehicle is stopped, press the “DISP” button until the “Settings” screen appears.



2 Press and hold the “DISP” button until the screen changes.



3 Press and hold the “DISP” button after selecting the desired setting item by pressing the “DISP” button.



FarmaSOS.com

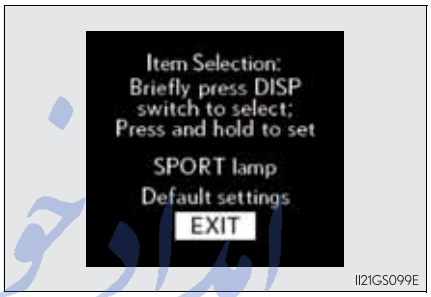
4 Press and hold the “DISP” button after selecting the desired setting by pressing the “DISP” button.

The display goes back to step 3.



5 Press and hold the “DISP” button after selecting the “EXIT” by pressing the “DISP” button.

The display goes back to step 1. (The display goes back to step 1 automatically in few seconds without proceeding step 5.)



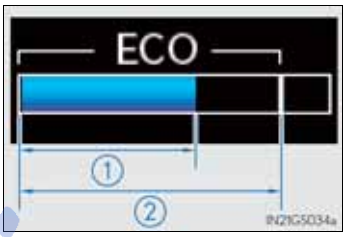
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ System check display

After turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, “SYSTEM CHECK” is displayed while system operation is checked.

■ Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

Suggests Zone of Eco driving and Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.



① Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

If the acceleration exceeds Zone of Eco driving, the right side of Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display blinks.

② Zone of Eco driving

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate in the following conditions:

- The shift lever is anything other than D.
- Paddle shift switch is operated.
- Neither normal mode nor Eco drive mode is selected. (→P. 326)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

■ Outside temperature display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

■ Setting display automatic cancelation

In the following situations, setting display in which the settings can be changed through the “DISP” button will automatically be turned off.

- When a warning message appears while the setting display is displayed
- When the vehicle begins to move while the setting display is displayed

ایراد خودروها
FarmaSOS.com

■ Tire inflation pressure (if equipped)

- It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- "---" may be displayed if the tire position information cannot be determined due to unfavorable radio wave conditions.
- Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using a tire pressure gauge.

■ Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ Customization

Setting of available languages can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 857)

امداد خودرو فارما

⚠ CAUTION

■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.
For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Cautions during setting up the display

As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ During setting up the display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while setting up the display features.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Summary of functions

The head-up display can be used to project vehicle speed and other information onto the windshield.



① Head-up display

Display brightness will change automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding area.

② “HUD” button

③ Display brightness adjustment switch

Display brightness can be adjusted to the desired level.

④ Display position adjustment switch

⑤ “DISP” button

ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۰
FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

Head-up display contents

- Vehicle speed
- Tachometer
- Shift position and shift range

  Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 214)
- Eco Driving Indicator (→P. 109)
- Audio display

  Displays audio information for approximately 3 seconds when the audio system is operated
- Route guidance display (vehicles with navigation system) (→P. 116)

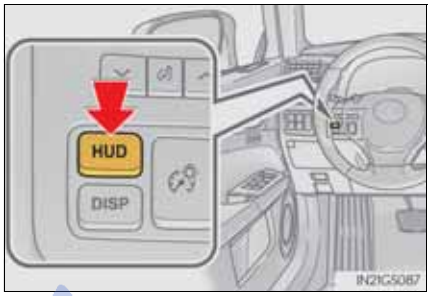
  When approaching an intersection while the navigation system is giving route guidance, an arrow will automatically be displayed to indicate the direction of travel.
- Lane departure warning display (LKA [Lane-Keeping Assist]) (if equipped) (→P. 767)
- Approach warning display (dynamic radar cruise control) (if equipped) (→P. 767)
- Pre-crash braking warning message (pre-crash safety system) (if equipped) (→P. 767)

ایران خودرو مارا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Switching the head-up display

■ “HUD” button

Pressing the switch turns the head-up display on/off and changes the vehicle speed display units as follows:



▶ Type A

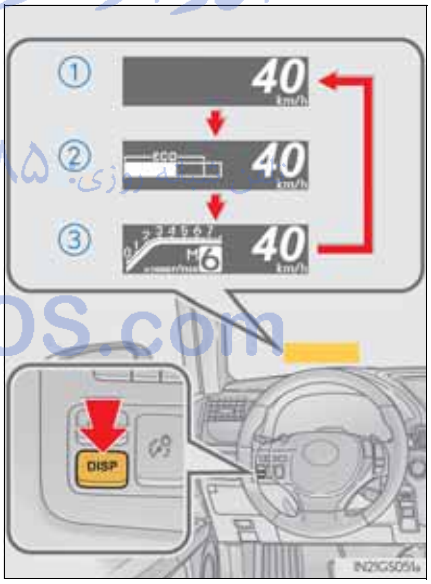
OFF → ON (km/h) → OFF

▶ Type B

OFF → ON (mph) →
ON (km/h) → OFF

■ “DISP” button

Pressing the button changes the display items (except vehicle speed).



① Off

② Eco Driving Indicator

③ Tachometer

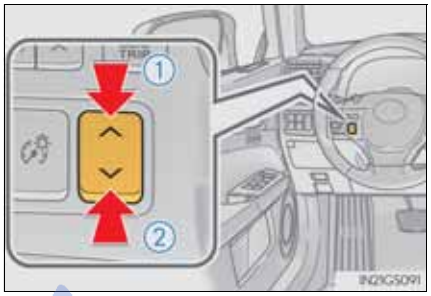
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Making the display easier to see

■ Adjusting the display position

① Higher

② Lower

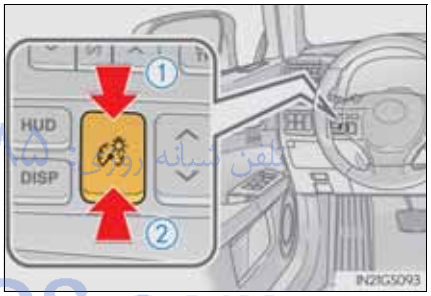


■ Setting the brightness

The brightness of the display is automatically adjusted in accordance with the brightness of the surrounding environment. However, the brightness can also be manually adjusted in 9 stages.

① Brighter

② Darker

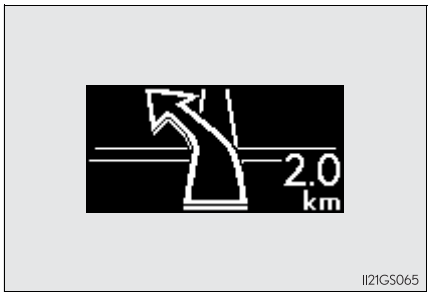


۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Route guidance display (vehicles with navigation system)

When the vehicle approaches an intersection, the direction the vehicle should go is guided by the arrow.

When the vehicle approaches an intersection, the route guidance will start and the distance* to the intersection will also be displayed.



*: The distance decreases in increments of 50 m (164 ft.) and the distance indication will disappear when the vehicle passes through the intersection.

امداد خودرو فارما

Display customization

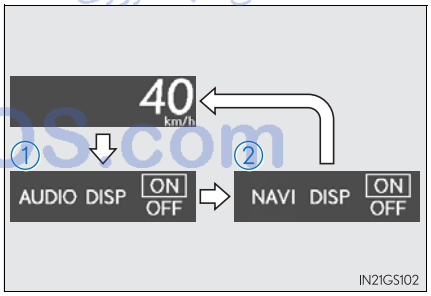
The following display can be shown or hidden.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

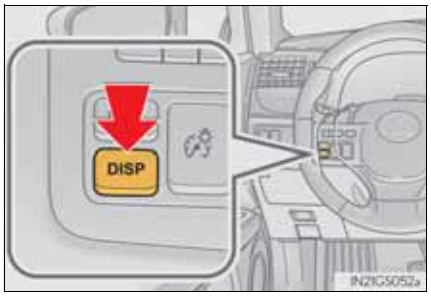
① Audio display

② Route guidance display (vehicles with navigation system)

FarmaSOS.com



■ Customizing the display



1 Press and hold the “DISP” button until the screen changes, then press and hold repeatedly until the item you wish to change is displayed.

Customization can be performed when the head-up display is on and the vehicle is traveling at less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

2 Press the “DISP” button to switch between on and off.

On and off will be switched between each time the button is pressed.

If the button is left alone without being operated for a short time, setting will be finished automatically.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Head-up display

- The head-up display may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses.
  Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.
- When the head-up display is turned off, it will remain off even if the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode after the engine switch has been turned off.

■ When the battery is disconnected

The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Before using the head-up display

Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to components

- Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.
- Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector.
  Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.
- Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector.
  Doing so could cause mechanical mal-



FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Operation of each component 3

3-1. Key information
Keys 118
3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk
Smart entry & start system 123
Wireless remote control 141
Doors 146
Trunk..... 150
3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats..... 157
Driving position memory.. 161
Head restraints 167
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 170
Inside rear view mirror 171
Outside rear view mirrors . 174
3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows..... 178
Moon roof 181

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Keys

The keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.

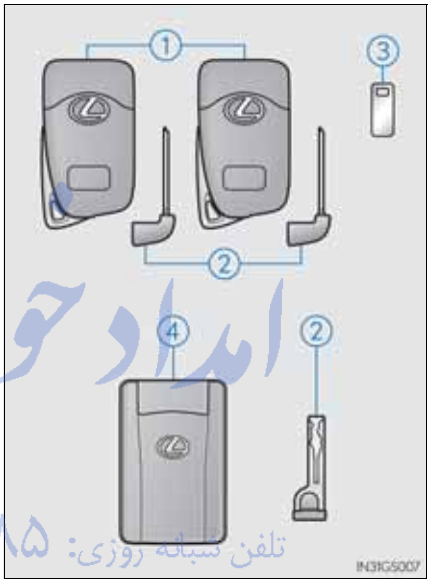
① Electronic keys
- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 123)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 141)

② Mechanical keys

③ Key number plate

④ Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

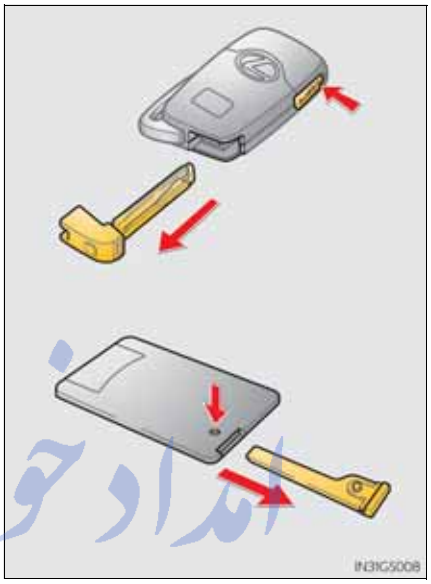
Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 123)



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.



The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 821)

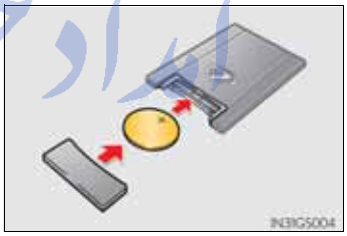
امداد خودرو ایران
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Card key (if equipped)

- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



■ When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch off, lock the glove box and armrest door as circumstances demand. (→P. 151, 616, 639)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ If you lose your mechanical keys

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional using the other mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

ایران خودرو تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and glass top ranges, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle, including the card key, to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ When an electronic key is lost

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that was provided with your vehicle.

■ Handling the card key

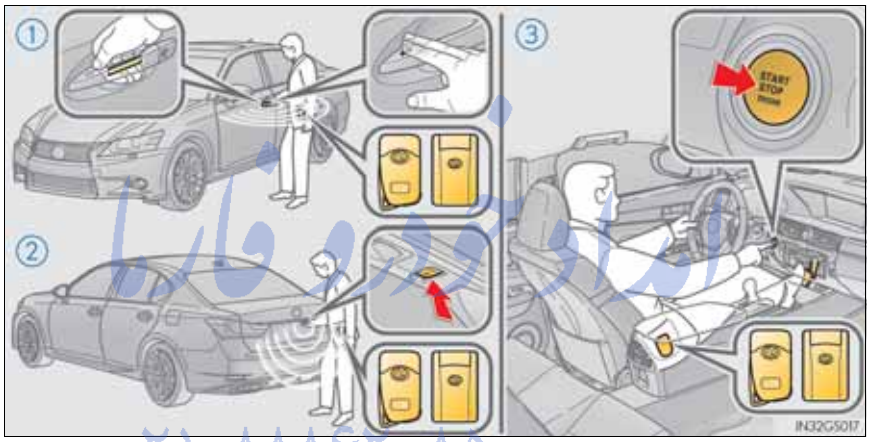
- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery.
  Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

FarmaSOS.com

Smart entry & start system

Function summary

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. (The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۳۰۸۵

① Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 124)

② Opens the trunk (→P. 124)

③ Starts the engine (→P. 207)

FarmaSOS.com

■ Operation signals

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ Welcome light illumination control

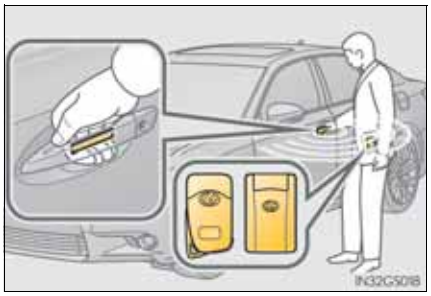
The front position, tail and license plate lights automatically turn on at night when the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if the light switch is in the “AUTO” position.

Unlocking and locking the doors

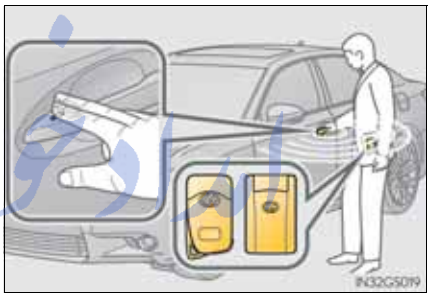
Grip the handle to unlock the doors.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.



Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the upper part of the door handle) to lock the doors.



لوازم خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۲-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSos.com

Opening the trunk

Press the button.

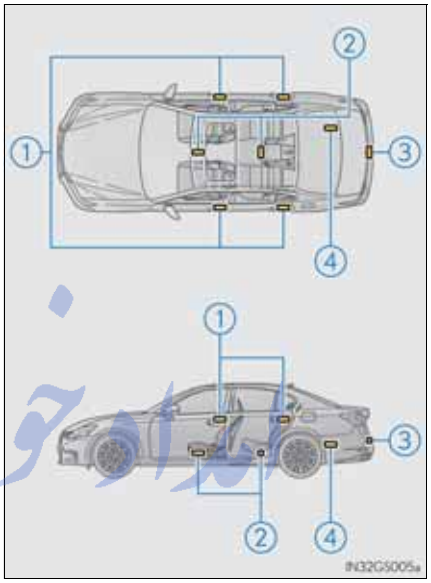
If the vehicle is equipped with power trunk lid, the trunk lid automatically opens fully.



Antenna location and effective range

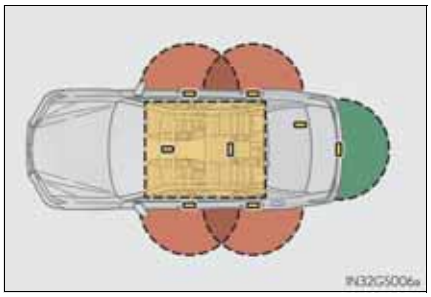
■ Antenna location

① Antennas outside the cabin
② Antennas inside the cabin
③ Antenna outside the trunk
④ Antenna inside the trunk



نمایندگی خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



● When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

● When opening the trunk

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of the trunk release button.

● When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

امداد خودرو ۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the upper part of the door handle

If the door will not lock even when the topside sensor area is touched, try touching both the topside and underside sensor areas at the same time.



■ Alarms and warning indicators

An alarm sounds and warning message displays shown on the multi-information display are used to protect against unexpected accidents or theft of the vehicle resulting from erroneous operation. When a warning message is displayed, take appropriate measures based on the displayed message. (→P. 757)

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds	The trunk was closed while the electronic key was still inside the trunk and all the doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm sounds continuously	The engine switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the engine switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm during the setting change (if equipped). (→P. 89)

3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 3.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking function	Beep
 (Left-hand drive vehicles)	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Pings once
 (Right-hand drive vehicles)	Holding a passenger's door handle unlocks all the doors.	
	Holding a door handle unlocks all the doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once

For vehicles with an alarm: To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)
In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 87)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Battery-saving function

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the vehicle battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

- In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
  - The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
  - The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

■ Electronic Key Battery-Saving Function

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.
While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



FarmaSOS.com

■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly. (Ways of coping: →P. 821)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle’s electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

امداد خودرو فارسا
FarmaSOS.com

■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is opened.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock or lock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

ایران خودرو دیزل
FamaCos.com

■ Note for locking the doors

- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
  - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 129)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again, or use the lock sensor on the lower part of the door handle.
- Fingernails may scrape against the door during operation of the door handle. Be careful not to injure fingernails or damage the surface of the door.

■ Note for the unlocking function

- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
  - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 129)
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.
- Fingernails may scrape against the door during operation of the door handle. Be careful not to injure fingernails or damage the surface of the door.

Farma808.com

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P. 855)

■ Alarm (if equipped)

Using the smart entry & start system to lock the doors will set the alarm system.
(→P. 86)

■ To operate the system properly

- Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

  Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)
- Do not leave the electronic key inside the luggage compartment.
  The key confinement prevention function may not operate, depending on the location of the key (close to a spare tire [if equipped], the inside edge of the luggage compartment), conditions (inside a metal bag, close to metallic objects) and the radio waves in the surrounding area. (→P. 152)

■ If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk: Use the mechanical key.
  (→P. 821)
- Starting the engine: →P. 822

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۳۶۲۶۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 779)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 695)
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Table lamps
  - Glass top ranges

■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 695

■ Customization

Settings (e. g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 855)

■ If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting

- Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk:
  Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P. 141, 821)
- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P. 822
- Stopping the engine: →P. 208

امداد خودرو فارسا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۱۸
FarsaSOS.com

■ Certification for the smart entry & start system

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this BC2EQ is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

TOKAI RIKA

OGUCHI-CHO, NIWA-GUN
AICHI-KEN, 480-0195 JAPAN
TEL:+81-587-95-0093
FAX:+81-587-95-5471

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Tokai Rika Co., Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 260, Toyota 3-chome, Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun, Aichi-ken, 480-0195, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Electronic Key
Product Model: BC2EQ

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

Safety: EN60950-1
EMC: EN301 489-1 & -3
Spectrum: EN300 220-2, EN300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA
* Member states with restrictive use	None

Date: 25 April 2011

Signature: Yoshinobu Yokoyama

Position of the signatory: Yoshinobu Yokoyama
General Manager,
Security Electronic Engineering Div.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this B92UM is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

TOKAI RIKA
OGUCHI-CHO, NIWA-GUN
AICHI-KEN, 480-0195 JAPAN
TEL:+81-587-95-0093
FAX:+81-587-95-5471

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Tokai Rika Co., Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 260, Toyota 3-chome, Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun, Aichi-ken, 480-0195, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Tuner
Product Model: B92UM

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

Safety: EN60950-1
EMC: EN301 489-1 & -3
Spectrum: EN300 220-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA
* Member states with restrictive use	None

Date: 22 April 2011

Signature: Masakazu Goto

Position of the signatory: Masakazu Goto
General Manager,
Electronics Engineering Div.

ایران خودرو
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
PamaSOS.com

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571 [Head Office]
or 471-8572 [Research & Development Group] JAPAN
TEL : +81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: TMLF10-2
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN60950-1
-EMC requirements:	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: July 16, 2010

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMLF10-2 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMLF10-2 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMLF10-2 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMLF10-2 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMLF10-2 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMLF10-2 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav I direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMLF10-2 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMLF10-2 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMLF10-2 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMLF10-2 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMLF10-2 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMLF10-2 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMLF10-2 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMLF10-2 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMLF10-2 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMLF10-2 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMLF10-2 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMLF10-2 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMLF10-2 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMLF10-2 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMLF10-2 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMLF10-2 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMLF10-2 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

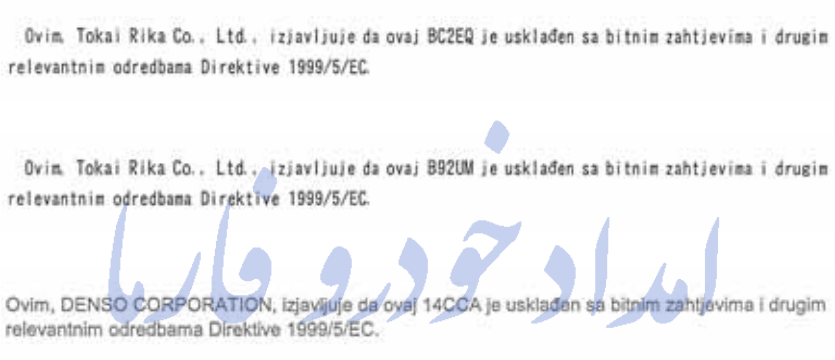
ایراد خودرو فارسی
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsiSOS.com

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 14CCA is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

-Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.

-Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

▶ For vehicles sold in Montenegro



امداد خودرو فاریا
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FaraSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

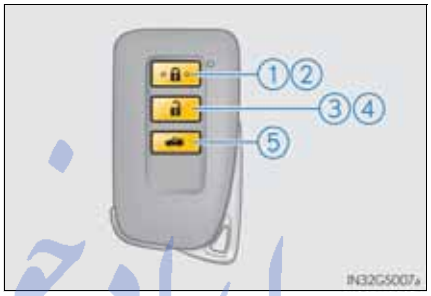
- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P. 125)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of emitting the radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details on disabling the entry function.

Wireless remote control

Function summary

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle.



1. Locks all the doors
2. Closes the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*
3. Unlocks all the doors
4. Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*
5. Opens the trunk (press and hold)

   If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk lid, the trunk lid automatically opens fully.

*: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Operation signals

Doors:
The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

Windows and moon roof:
A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

■ Welcome light illumination control

→P. 123

■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ Security feature

→P. 123

■ Alarm (if equipped)

Using the wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 86)

■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 130

■ If the wireless remote control does not operate properly

Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk: Use the mechanical key.
(→P. 821)

■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 134

■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 695

■ Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. wireless remote control system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 855)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Certification for wireless remote control

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this BC2EQ is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.



TOKAI RIKA

OGUCHI-CHO, NIWA-GUN
AICHI-KEN, 480-0195 JAPAN
TEL:+81-587-95-0093
FAX:+81-587-95-5471

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Tokai Rika Co., Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 260, Toyota 3-chome, Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun, Aichi-ken, 480-0195, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Electronic Key
Product Model: BC2EQ

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

Safety: EN60950-1
EMC: EN301 489-1 & -3
Spectrum: EN300 220-2, EN300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA
* Member states with restrictive use	None

Date: 25 April 2011

Signature: Yoshinobu Yokoyama

Position of the signatory: Yoshinobu Yokoyama
General Manager,
Security Electronic Engineering Div.

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this B92UM is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

TOKAI RIKA
OGUCHI-CHO, NIWA-GUN
AICHI-KEN, 480-0195 JAPAN
TEL:+81-587-95-0093
FAX:+81-587-95-5471

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Tokai Rika Co., Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 260, Toyota 3-chome, Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun, Aichi-ken, 480-0195, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Tuner
Product Model: B92UM

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

Safety: EN60950-1
EMC: EN301 489-1 & -3
Spectrum: EN300 220-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA
* Member states with restrictive use	None

Date: 22 April 2011

Signature: Masakazu Goto

Position of the signatory: Masakazu Goto
General Manager,
Electronics Engineering Div.

ایران خودرو
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarnaSOS.com

▶ For vehicles sold in Montenegro

Ovim Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj BC2EQ je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj B92UM je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When closing the windows or moon roof using wireless remote control

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window or moon roof is being operated.
- To prevent inadvertent power windows and moon roof operation, never let a small child have and use the wireless remote control.

■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window or moon roof fully closes.

FarmaSOS.com

Doors

Unlocking and locking the doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switches.

Entry function

→P. 123

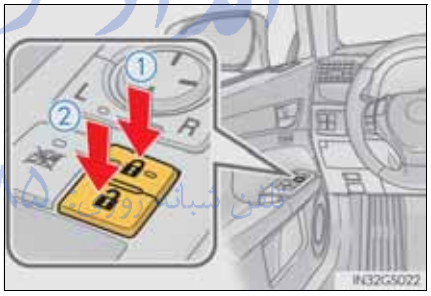
Wireless remote control

→P. 141

Door lock switches

① Locks all the doors

② Unlocks all the doors

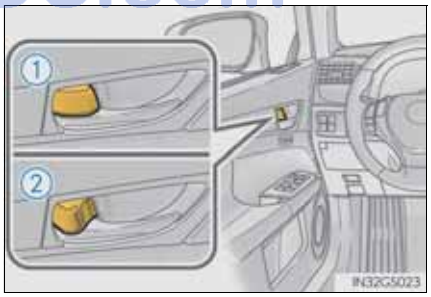


Inside lock buttons

① Locks the door

② Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.



ایراد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

① Unlock

② Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.



FarmaSOS.com

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P. 855.

Function	Operation
“Auto unlock by shift to P”	All doors are automatically unlocked when shifting the shift lever to P.
“Auto unlock by driver door”	All doors are automatically unlocked when driver’s door is opened.

■ Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 821)

■ If a wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 855)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۵ ۸۸۸۶۲ ۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant throwing out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Trunk

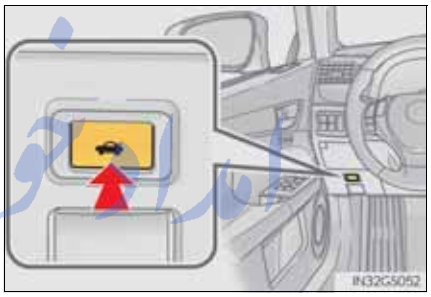
The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, entry function or wireless remote control.

If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk lid, the trunk can be closed using the trunk closer.

Opening the trunk from inside the vehicle

Press the opener switch.

If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk lid, the trunk lid automatically opens fully.



Opening the trunk from outside the vehicle

- Entry function

→P. 123

- Wireless remote control

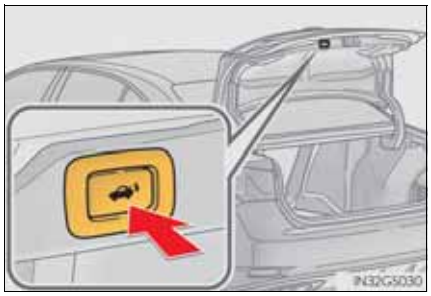
→P. 141

FarmaSOS.com

Trunk closer switch (vehicles with power trunk lid)

Pressing the switch closes the trunk lid automatically. (A buzzer sounds.)

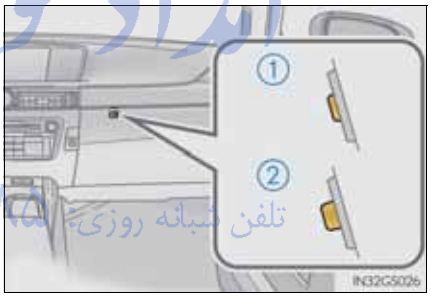
Pressing the switch while the trunk lid is closing opens the trunk lid again.



Luggage security system

The trunk opener switch can be temporarily disabled to protect luggage stored in the trunk against theft.

Turn the main switch in the glove box off to disable the trunk opener.



① On

② Off

The trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or the entry function.

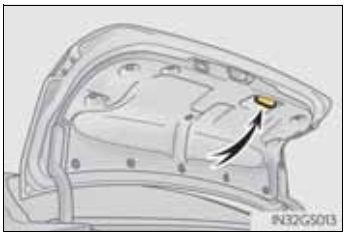
ایراد خودرو فارسی
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

■ Trunk light

The trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.

■ Trunk handle

Use the trunk handle when closing the trunk.



■ Trunk easy closer (vehicles with power trunk lid)

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

■ Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside

- When all doors are being locked, closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm.
  In this case, the trunk lid can be opened pressing the trunk release button on the trunk lid.
- Even when the spare electronic key is put in the trunk with all the doors locked, the key confinement prevention function can be activated so the trunk can be opened. In order to prevent theft, take all electronic keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Even when the electronic key is put in the trunk with all the doors are locked, the key may not be detected depending on the places and the surrounding radio wave conditions. In this case, the key confinement prevention function cannot be activated, causing the doors to lock when the trunk is closed. Make sure to check where the key is before closing the trunk.
- The key confinement prevention function cannot be activated if any one of the doors is unlocked. In this case, open the trunk using the trunk opener.

FarmasUS.com

■ Overload protection function (vehicles with power trunk lid)

The trunk lid will not operate when excessive load is present on the top of the trunk lid.

■ Fall-down protection function (vehicles with power trunk lid)

While the trunk lid is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the trunk lid from rapidly falling down.

■ Jam protection function (vehicles with power trunk lid)

While the trunk lid is closing automatically, the trunk lid will stop closing and open if something gets caught.

■ Using the mechanical key

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P. 822)

■ When leaving a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

→P. 120

امداد خودرو فارما

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Before driving

- Make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving and hit near-by objects or luggage in the trunk may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Do not allow children to enter the trunk.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could overheat or suffocate.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.
  Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Important points while driving

Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the trunk

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to fall closed again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The trunk lid may fall if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.



- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk handle is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.



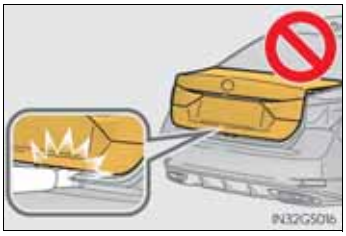
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to fall closed again after it is opened.

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Trunk easy closer (vehicles with power trunk lid)

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the trunk easy closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious



■ Power trunk lid (if equipped)

Observe the following precautions when operating the power trunk lid. Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- If the trunk closer switch is pressed while the trunk lid is opening during automatic operation, the trunk lid stops opening. Take extra care when on an incline, as the trunk lid may open or close suddenly.
- On an incline, the trunk lid may fall after it opens automatically. Make sure the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- In the following situations, the power trunk lid may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the trunk lid has to be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the stopped trunk lid may suddenly fall, causing an accident.
  - When the trunk lid contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. The power trunk lid may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the trunk lid may fall closed again after it is opened.

FarmasOft.com

CAUTION

■ Jam protection function (vehicles with power trunk lid)

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the trunk lid fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

NOTICE

■ To prevent trunk easy closer malfunctions (vehicles with power trunk lid)

Do not apply force to the trunk lid while the trunk easy closer is operating.

■ To prevent damage to the power trunk lid (vehicles with power trunk lid)

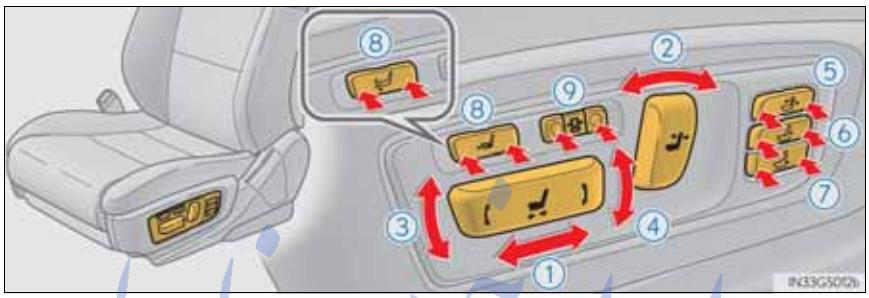
- Make sure that there is no luggage or snow on the trunk lid before operating the power trunk lid. In addition, make sure that there is no ice between the trunk lid and frame that prevents movement of the trunk lid. Operating the power trunk lid when excessive load is present on the trunk lid may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the trunk lid while the power trunk lid is operating.

FarmaSOS.com

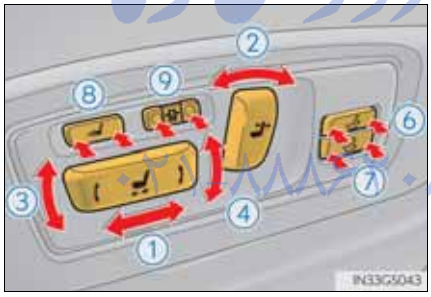
Front seats

Adjustment procedure

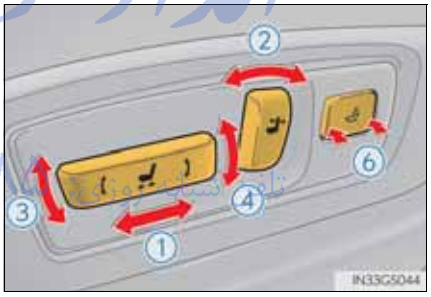
▶ Type A



▶ Type B



▶ Type C



FarmaSOS.com

① Seat position adjustment switch

② Seatback angle adjustment switch

③ Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment switch

④ Vertical height adjustment switch

⑤ Seatback upper angle adjustment switch (if equipped)

⑥ Lumbar support adjustment switch

⑦ Pelvic support adjustment switch (if equipped)

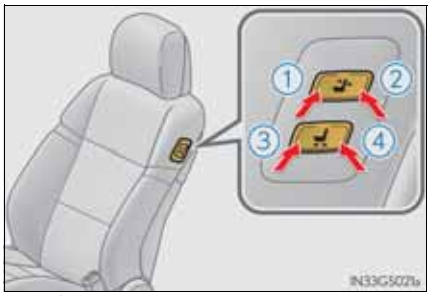
⑧ Seat cushion length adjustment switch (if equipped) / Calf support angle adjustment switch (if equipped for front passenger's side)

⑨ Seatback side support adjustment switch (if equipped)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Seat operation switches on the side of the front passenger's seat (if equipped)

① Tilts the seatback forward
② Tilts the seatback backward
③ Moves the seat forward
④ Moves the seat backward



■ Power easy access system

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. The passenger's seat moves when the passenger's door is opened. (→P. 166)

⚠ CAUTION

■ When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat (if equipped)

Do not operate the front passenger's seat when a passenger is seated in it. In addition, do not let anyone sit down in the front passenger's seat while the seat is being operated. The front passenger may catch their legs between the instrument panel and seat, resulting in injury.

■ When adjusting the seat positions or the calf support (if equipped)

Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

■ When using the calf support (if equipped)

- Do not operate the calf support when the vehicle is moving.
  Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not sit on the calf support of the passenger seat.
  Doing so may cause seat belts to be worn improperly, which may lead to serious injury or death in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not step on the calf support.
  Doing so could damage the calf support, or could cause you to seriously injure yourself by falling over.
- Stow the calf support when you get in or out of the vehicle or when the calf support is not in use to avoid stumbling over it.
- Do not allow anyone to put their hands or feet under the passenger seat when stowing the calf support.

FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat (if equipped)

Before operating the front passenger's seat, make sure that there is no luggage or any other objects on the seat or in the footwell that could prevent its operation.
Such items may result in excess force being applied, causing damage to the seat and/or the luggage.

■ To prevent a calf support malfunction (if equipped)

- Do not place any objects in the front passenger footwell that could prevent the operation of the calf support.
- Do not place heavy luggage on the calf support.
- Do not place anything under the calf support when in use.
  There is a possibility that something may get caught and cause damages when stowing the calf support.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

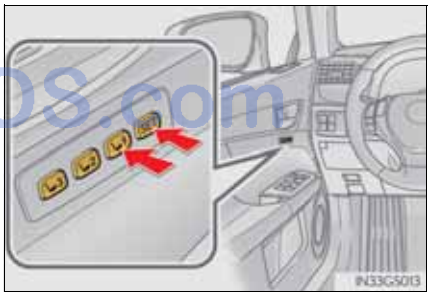
Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be memorized and recalled by pressing a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.
Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

The same buttons are found on the front passenger's side, allowing the position of the front passenger's seat to be memorized (if equipped).

Entering a position to memory

1. Check that the shift lever is in P.
2. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
3. Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions. (When memorizing the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the desired positions.)
4. While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

   If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



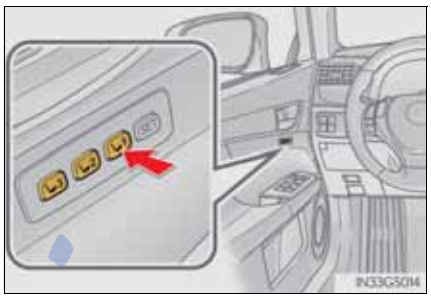
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Recalling the memorized position

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

3 Press button “1”, “2” or “3” to recall the desired position.



Vehicles with front passenger’s seat calf support:
The memorized position will only be recalled if the calf support is in a position higher than the memorized position. It will not move in an upward direction.

■ When you want to stop the position recall operation part-way through

Perform any of the following operations:

- Press the “SET” button.
- Press button “1”, “2” or “3”.
- Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall).

■ The adjusted positions that can be memorized

▶ Vehicles without seatback side support adjustment switch

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumber support switch can be memorized.

▶ Vehicles with seatback side support adjustment switch

All adjusted positions can be memorized.

■ Automatic calf support adjustment

While the memorized position is being recalled, if it appears that the front edge of the cushion will make contact with the area surrounding the instrument panel, the calf support will be automatically stowed.

ایراد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation (driver's side only)

A desired driving position can be recalled linked with the unlocking of the door.

■ Setting procedure

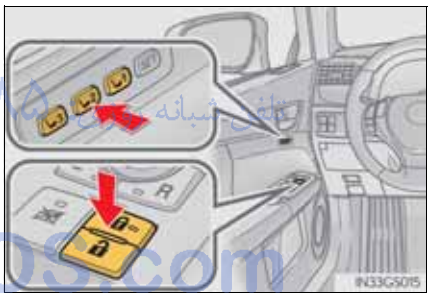
Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carrying only the key (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position, shift the shift lever to P and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and recall the position which you want to link.

2 While pressing the button to recall the position, press the driver's door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.



The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

FarmaSos.com

■ Cancelation procedure

Carry only the key to which you want to cancel the linked door unlock operation.
If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

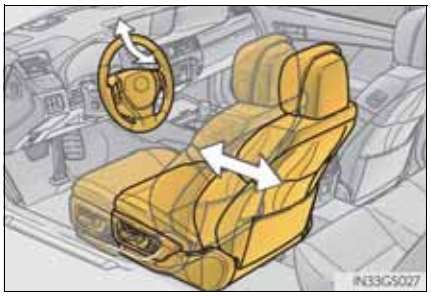
1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

2 While pressing the “SET” button, press the driver’s door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Power easy access system

The auto away/return function enables easy access by activating when the driver or front passenger attempts to enter or exit the vehicle.



■ Auto away function when exiting the vehicle (driver's/front passenger's seat)

▶ Driver's seat

When all of the following actions have been performed, the steering wheel will move up and back to the point farthest away from the driver and the seat will move backward:

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.

▶ Front passenger's seat (if equipped)

If the lumbar support, calf support (if equipped), etc. of the front passenger's seat has been adjusted, the seat will return to its original state if the front passenger's door is opened while the vehicle is stopped to allow easy exit from the vehicle.

■ Auto return function when entering the vehicle (driver's seat only)

When either of the following actions has been performed, the steering wheel will move toward the driver and seat will move forward:

- The engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ When driving position memory is linked with door unlock operation

If the driver's door is opened, the driver's seat will move toward the memorized position but stop slightly beforehand to allow easy access to the vehicle.
Turning the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or fastening the driver's seat belt moves the seat fully into the memorized position.

■ Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off

Driver's seat:
Memorized seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again. Memorized steering wheel position can be activated by pressing the engine switch.

Front passenger's seat:
Memorized positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the front passenger's door is opened by pressing button "1", "2" or "3".

■ Correct seat position

When the seat is in the most forward or most backward position, and the seat is being moved in those directions, the system may not correctly recognize the current position and the memorized position will not be correctly recalled.

■ The auto away function for exiting the driver's seat

If the seat is already close to the rearmost position, the auto away function may not operate when the driver exits the vehicle.

■ Customization

The distance that the driver's seat moves backward during the auto away function can be changed. (Customizable features: →P. 855)

FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

Front seats

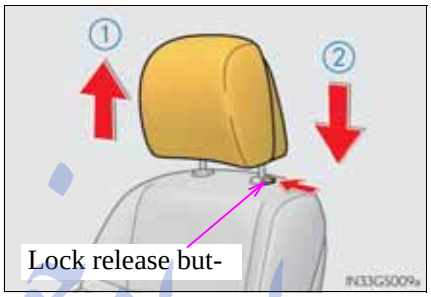
Vertical adjustment

① Up

Pull the head restraints up.

② Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



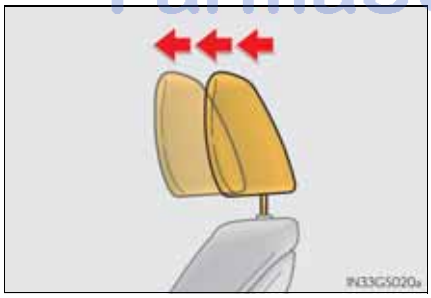
▶ Angle adjustment (if equipped)

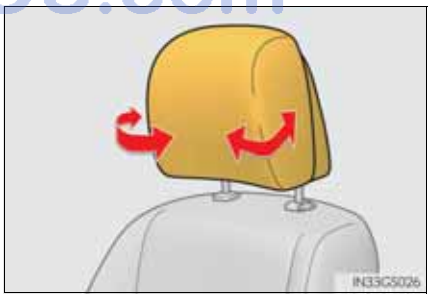
The position of the head restraint can be adjusted forward in 4 stages.

If the head restraint is pulled forward from the foremost position, it will return to the rearmost position.

▶ Side support adjustment (if equipped)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com





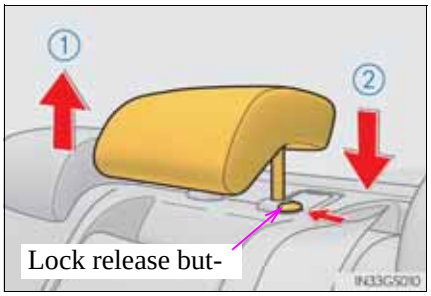
Rear seats

① Up

Pull the head restraints up.

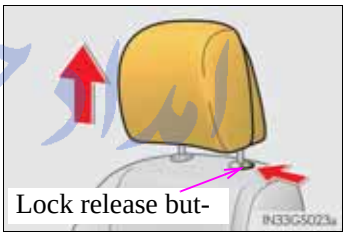
② Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



■ Removing the head restraints

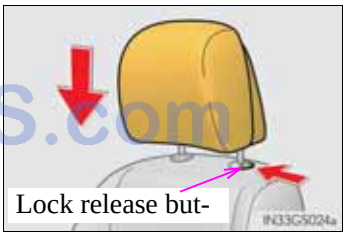
Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.



■ Installing the head restraints

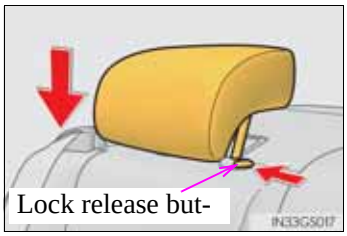
▶ Front seats

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.
Press and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.



▶ Rear seats

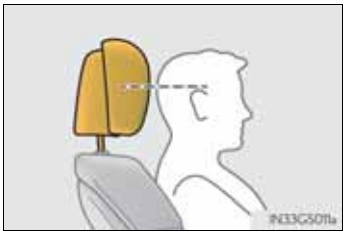
Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lowest lock position while pressing the lock release button.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



■ Adjusting the rear seat head restraint

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

CAUTION

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

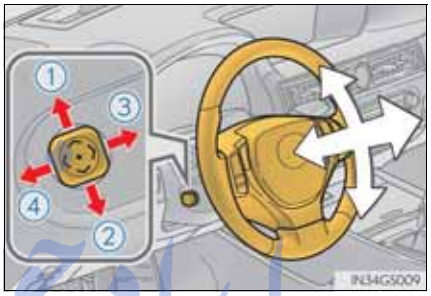
Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:

① Up

② Down

③ Toward the driver

④ Away from the driver



امداد خودرو فارما

■ The steering wheel can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of engine switch mode.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۳۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

■ Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P. 162)

FarmaSOS.com

■ Power easy access system

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P. 166)

⚠ CAUTION

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

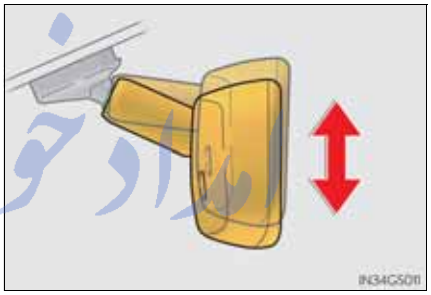
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



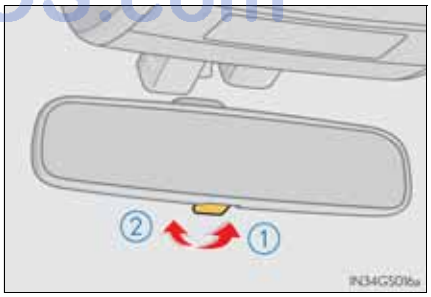
Anti-glare function

▶ Manual anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind can be reduced by operating the lever.

① Normal position

② Anti-glare position

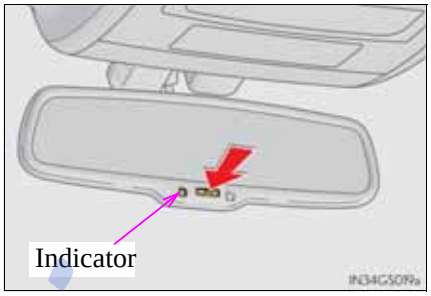


امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

Changing automatic anti-glare function mode



ON/OFF

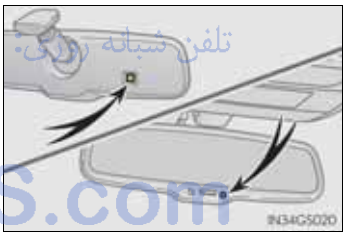
When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator illuminates.

The function will set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator also turns off.)

■ To prevent sensor error (vehicles with auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror)

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۳۶۲۶۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

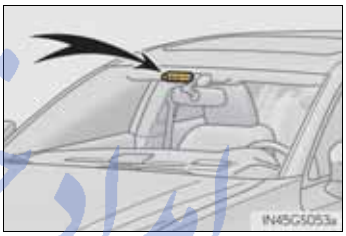
CAUTION

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Rear view mirror adjustment (vehicles with LKA [Lane-Keeping Assist])

To ensure that the LKA operates properly, make sure that it does not block the LKA camera sensor.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Outside rear view mirrors

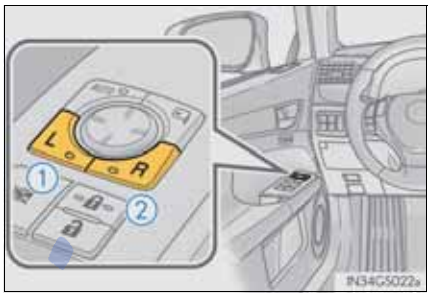
Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

① Left

② Right

Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.



2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

① Up

② Right

③ Down

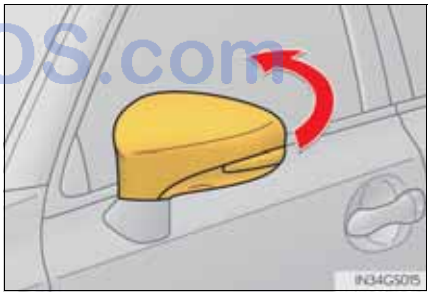
④ Left



۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی

Manually folding and extending the mirrors

Push the mirror back in the direction of the vehicle's rear.



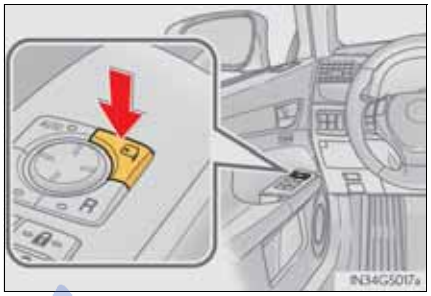
FarmaSOS.com

Automatically folding and extending the mirrors (if equipped)

■ Using the switch

Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.



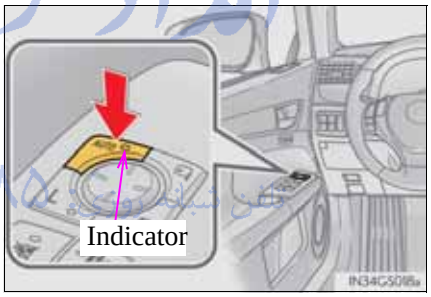
■ Setting automatic mode

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Press the “AUTO” switch to set automatic mode.

The indicator will come on.

Pressing the switch once more will return to manual mode.



FarmaSOS.com

■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ Linked mirror function when reversing

- When either “L” or “R” of the mirror select switch is selected, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. To disable this function, select neither “L” nor “R”.
- If the mirror angle adjustment switch is operated while the linked mirror function is in operation, the angle and position of the mirrors can be remembered, and the mirrors will operate at the angle adjusted to the last time the linked mirror function was operated.
  However, because the mirrors move based on the angle they are in when the linked mirror function is not operating, the mirror angle when the linked mirror function is operating will also be changed if the mirrors are adjusted while the function is not operating.

■ Rain clearing mirrors (if equipped)

When water droplets collects on the mirror surface, for example when it rains, the rain clearing (hydrophilic) effect of the mirrors causes the droplets to be spread out into a film making the rear view clearer. In the following cases, the rain clearing effect will be reduced temporarily, but will return after 1 or 2 days’ exposure to direct sunlight.

- After wiping dirt off the mirrors
- When the mirrors fog up
- After waxing your vehicle in an automatic car wash
- After your vehicle has been parked for a long period in underground parking lots etc. where there is no direct sunlight

■ When the mirrors are fogged up

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 430)

■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 162)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۷۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Auto anti-glare function (if equipped)

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 172)

■ Using automatic mode in cold weather

When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this event, remove any ice and snow from the door mirror, then either operate the mirror using manual mode or move the mirror by hand.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Important points while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

⚠ NOTICE

■ If the mirrors become iced up (vehicles with rain-clearing mirror)

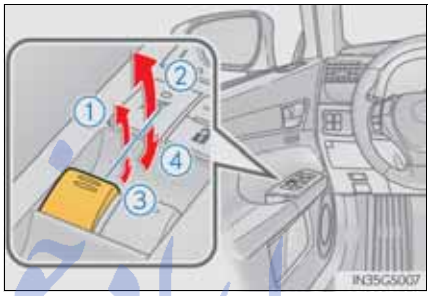
In order to retain the rain-clearing properties of the mirror, do not attempt to scrape the ice off. Instead, remove it by turning on the mirror defoggers or by applying warm water.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Power windows

Opening and closing procedures

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches. Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:



① Closing

② One-touch closing*

③ Opening

④ One-touch opening*

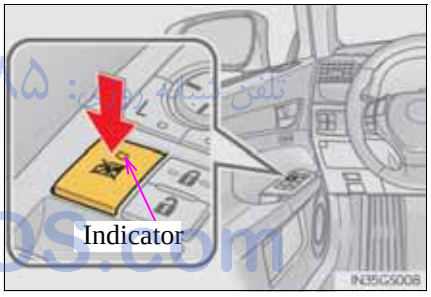
*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

Window lock switch

Press the switch to lock the passenger window switches.

The indicator will come on.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.



امداد خودرو فارا
۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FaraSOS.com

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ When the power window does not close normally

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation as explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

1. Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.
2. Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.
3. Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P. 821)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P. 141)

*: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ When the battery is disconnected

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

■ Power windows open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 855)

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Closing the windows

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
  Closing a power window on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

■ Jam protection function

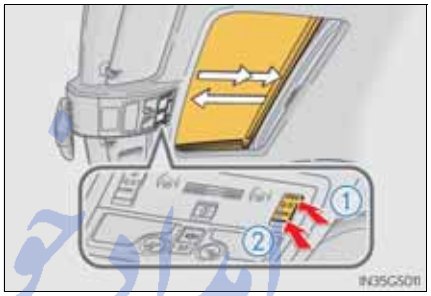
- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

Moon roof*

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Opening and closing the moon roof



① Opens the moon roof*

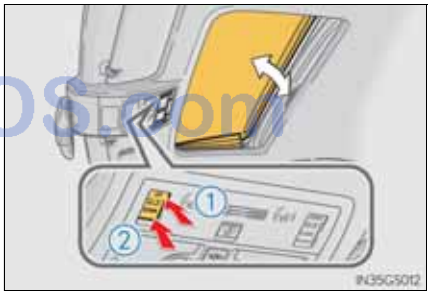
The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise.

Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

② Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either way of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

Tilting up and down



① Tilts the moon roof up*

② Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either way of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

*: If equipped

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ The moon roof can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ Door lock linked moon roof operation

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P. 821)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.*
  (→P. 141)

*: These settings must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

■ When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the “CLOSE” switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the “UP” switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

3 Release the “UP” switch once and then press and hold the “UP” switch again.*1
The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the “CLOSE” or “UP” switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۷۰۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Moon roof open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 855)

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Opening the moon roof

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Closing the moon roof

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
  Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱۸۸۸۴۲۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Driving 4

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle..... 186
Cargo and luggage 197
Trailer towing..... 198

4-2. Driving procedures
Engine (ignition) switch.... 207
Automatic transmission 214
Turn signal lever 222
Parking brake 224
Horn 227

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers
Headlight switch 228
Automatic High Beam 233
Fog light switch 239
Windshield wipers and washer 241
Headlight cleaner switch... 248

4-4. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap . 249

4-5. Using the driving support systems
Cruise control 254
Dynamic radar cruise control..... 258
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist).... 274
Lexus parking assist-sensor..... 284
Lexus parking assist monitor..... 297
Driving mode select switch326
Driving assist systems 331
Hill-start assist control..... 339
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)..... 341
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)352

4-6. Driving tips
Winter driving tips..... 359

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۳۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Starting the engine

→P. 207

Driving

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 214)

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, release the parking brake. (→P. 224)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Stopping

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P. 214)

Parking the vehicle

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P. 224)

3 Shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 214)

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

4 Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Starting off on a steep uphill

1 Make sure that the parking brake is set and shift the shift lever to D.

2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

3 Release the parking brake.

■ When starting off on a uphill

The hill-start assist control is available. (→P. 339)

■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Engine speed while driving

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When sport mode is selected (→P. 326)

FarmaSOS.com

■ Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (186 miles):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 800 km (500 miles):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 1000 km (621 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional perform the bedding down operation.

■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 838)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

● Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.

- Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
- When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
- Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.

● Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

امداد خودرو
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When driving the vehicle

- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 739
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 214)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shift changing, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۵-۲۱۸۸۸۴۲
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When shifting the shift lever

- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to D while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
  Shifting the shift lever to a gear other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.
Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Moderate levels of brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced front braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.
It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
  If this happens, do not continue to drive the vehicle. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

■ If the vehicle becomes stuck

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
Farmasos.com

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 782, 797)

ایران خودرو ولی
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer (AWD models), differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

⚠ CAUTION

■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the package tray
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
  - In front of the Remote Touch screen
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.
  Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

ایران خودرو
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

The strain of towing a trailer will have a negative impact on the running performance, handling, fuel consumption and endurance of your vehicle. Use the vehicle features in the correct manner and operate the vehicle with care for safer driving and optimal comfort. Damage and/or malfunctions that occur as a result of towing performed for commercial purposes are not covered by the Lexus warranty.

Ask your local authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details before towing, as there are additional legal requirements in some countries.

امداد خودرو فارس

Weight limits

Check the allowable towing capacity, GVM (Gross Vehicle Mass), MPAC (Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity), and permissible draw bar load before towing. (→P. 836)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Towing hitch/bracket

Lexus recommends the use of the Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. Other products of a suitable nature and comparable quality may also be used.

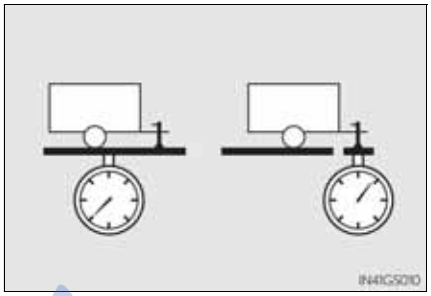
FarmaSOS.com

To prevent an accident

The handling of the vehicle will feel different when towing a trailer. Beware of the 3 most common causes of towing-related accidents: driver error, excessive speed, and overloading.

Important points regarding trailer loads

■ Total trailer weight and permissible drawbar load



① Total trailer weight

Weight of the trailer itself plus the trailer load should be within the maximum towing capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. (→P. 836)

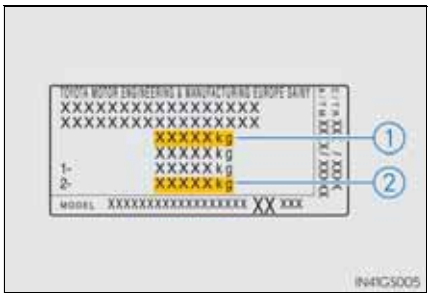
When the total trailer weight is greater than the vehicle weight, we recommend the use of a friction stabilizer (sway control device).

② Permissible drawbar load

Allocate the trailer load so that the drawbar load is greater than 25 kg (55.1 lb.) or 4% of the towing capacity. Do not let the drawbar load exceed the indicated weight. (→P. 836)

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۱-۸۸۳۶۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Information tag (manufacturer's label)



① Gross vehicle mass

The combined weight of the driver, passengers, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load should not exceed the gross vehicle mass by more than 100 kg (220.5 lb.). Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

② Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible axle capacity by 15% or more. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

The values for towing capacity were derived from testing conducted at sea level. Take note that engine output and towing capacity will be reduced at high altitudes.

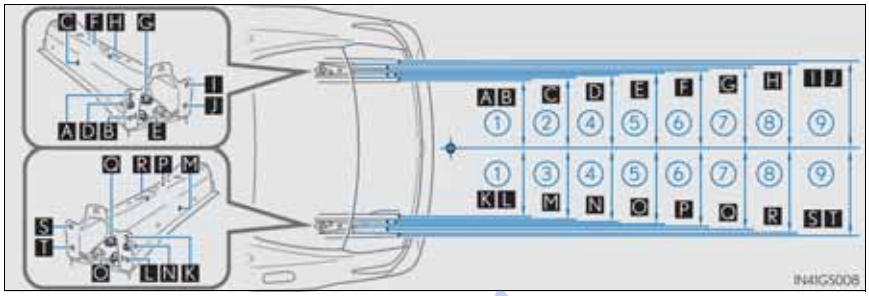
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When the gross vehicle mass limit or maximum permissible axle capacity is exceeded

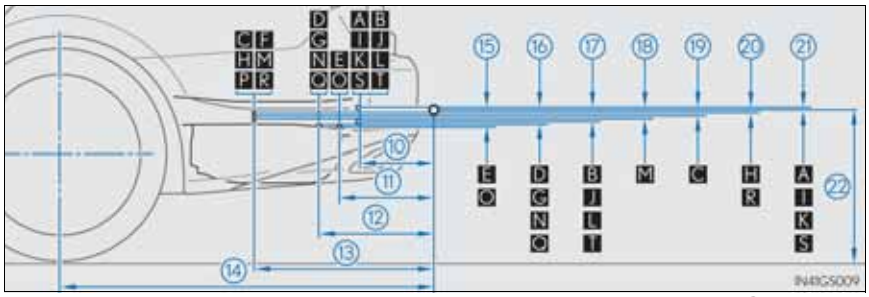
Do not exceed the established speed limit for towing a trailer in built-up areas or 100 km/h (62 mph), whichever is the lower.

Installation positions for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball



① 436 mm (17.2 in.)
② 455 mm (17.9 in.)
③ 454 mm (17.9 in.)
④ 475 mm (18.7 in.)
⑤ 476 mm (18.7 in.)
⑥ 500 mm (19.7 in.)
⑦ 520 mm (20.5 in.)
⑧ 543 mm (21.4 in.)
⑨ 560 mm (22.0 in.)

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



⑩ 289 mm (11.4 in.)
⑪ 322 mm (12.7 in.)
⑫ 374 mm (14.7 in.)
⑬ 592 mm (23.3 in.)
⑭ 1201 mm (47.3 in.)
⑮ 61 mm (2.4 in.)
⑯ 56 mm (2.2 in.)
⑰ 37 mm (1.5 in.)
⑱ 27 mm (1.1 in.)
⑲ 18 mm (0.7 in.)
⑳ 12 mm (0.5 in.)
㉑ 8 mm (0.3 in.)

㉒ 401 mm (15.8 in.)*1, 3
408 mm (16.1 in.)*1, 4
410 mm (16.1 in.)*1, 5
406 mm (16.0 in.)*2, 3
412 mm (16.2 in.)*2 4
414 mm (16.3 in.)*2, 5

*1: 2WD models
*2: 4WD models
*3: 225/50R17 tires
*4: 235/45R18 tires
*5: 235/40R19 tires

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Tire information

- Increase the tire inflation pressure to 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) greater than the recommended value when towing. (→P. 850)
- Increase the air pressure of the trailer tires in accordance with the total trailer weight and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

■ Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that vehicles fitted with new power train components should not be used for towing trailers for the first 800 km (500 miles).

■ Safety checks before towing

- Check that the maximum load limit for the towing hitch/bracket hitch ball is not exceeded. Bear in mind that the coupling weight of the trailer will add to the load exerted on the vehicle. Also make sure that you will not be towing a load that exceeds the maximum permissible axle capacity.
- Ensure that the trailer load is secure.
- Supplementary outside rear view mirrors should be added to the vehicle if the traffic behind cannot be clearly seen with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

■ Maintenance

- Maintenance must be performed more frequently when using the vehicle for towing due to the greater weight burden placed on the vehicle compared to normal driving.
- Retighten all bolts securing the hitching ball and bracket after towing for approximately 1000 km (600 miles).

ایراد خودرو ما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ When the rear bumper strengthening material is aluminum

Ensure the steel bracket part does not come directly in contact with that area.
When steel and aluminum come into contact, there is a reaction similar to corrosion, which will weaken the section concerned and may result in damage. Apply a rust inhibitor to parts that will come in contact when attaching a steel bracket.

Guidance

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

■ Checking connections between trailer and lights

Stop the vehicle and check the operation of the connection between the trailer and lights after driving for a brief period as well as before starting off.

■ Practicing driving with a coupled trailer

- Get the feel for turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer coupled by practicing in an area with no or light traffic.
- When reversing with a coupled trailer, hold the section of the steering wheel nearest to you and rotate clockwise to turn the trailer left or counterclockwise to turn it right. Always rotate a little at a time to prevent steering error. Have someone guide you when reversing to lessen the risk of an accident.

ایراد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
Farma808.com

- Increasing vehicle-to-vehicle distance

  At a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the distance to the vehicle running ahead of you should be equivalent to or greater than the combined length of your vehicle and trailer. Avoid sudden braking that may cause skidding. Otherwise, the vehicle may spin out of control. This is especially true when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

- Sudden acceleration/steering input/cornering

  Executing sharp turns when towing may result in the trailer colliding with your vehicle. Decelerate well in advance when approaching turns and take them slowly and carefully to avoid sudden braking.

- Important points regarding turning

  The wheels of the trailer will travel closer to the inside of the curve than the wheels of the vehicle. To make allowance for this, take the turns wider than you would normally do.

- Important points regarding stability

  Vehicle movement resulting from uneven road surfaces and strong crosswinds will affect handling. The vehicle may also be rocked by passing buses or large trucks. Frequently check behind when moving alongside such vehicles. As soon as such vehicle movement occurs, immediately start to decelerate smoothly by slowly applying the brakes. Always steer the vehicle straight ahead while braking.

- Passing other vehicles

  Consider the total combined length of your vehicle and trailer and ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is sufficient before executing lane changes.

- Transmission information

  To maintain engine braking efficiency, when using engine braking, when driving on a long steep downgrade, do not use the

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

transmission in D. Transmission shift gear position must be in "4" in the M mode.
(→P. 218)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ If the engine overheats

Towing a loaded trailer up a long, steep incline in temperatures exceeding 30°C (85°F) may result in the engine overheating. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the engine is overheating, turn the air conditioning off immediately, leave the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place. (→P. 829)

■ When parking the vehicle

Always place wheel chocks under the wheels of both the vehicle and trailer. Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid accident or injury

- Do not tow a trailer when the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle.
- Do not tow the vehicle when the tire installed is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

■ Vehicle speed in towing

Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.

■ Before descending hills or long declines

Reduce speed and downshift. However, never downshift suddenly while descending steep or long downhill grades.

■ Operation of the brake pedal

Do not hold the brake pedal depressed often or for long periods of time. Doing so may result in the brake overheating or reduce braking effects.

NOTICE

■ For vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit (if equipped)

Do not tow anything if a tire that has been repaired using the emergency tire puncture repair kit is installed. The load on the tire may cause unexpected damage to the tire.

ایراد خودرو فارسی
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۴۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsiSOS.com

Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

1. Check that the parking brake is set.
2. Check that the shift lever is set in P.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal.

    will be displayed on the multi-information display.

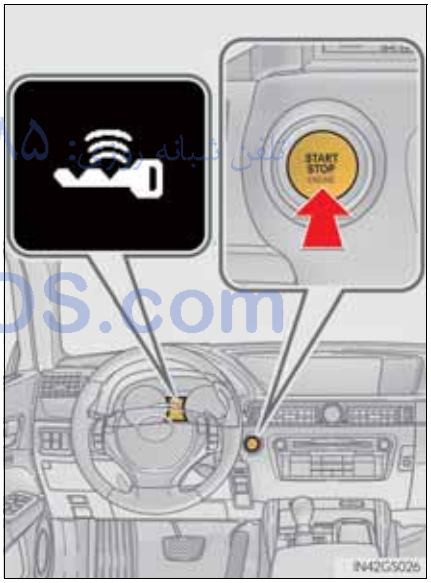
   If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

4. Press the engine switch.

   The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

   Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

   The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Stopping the engine

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

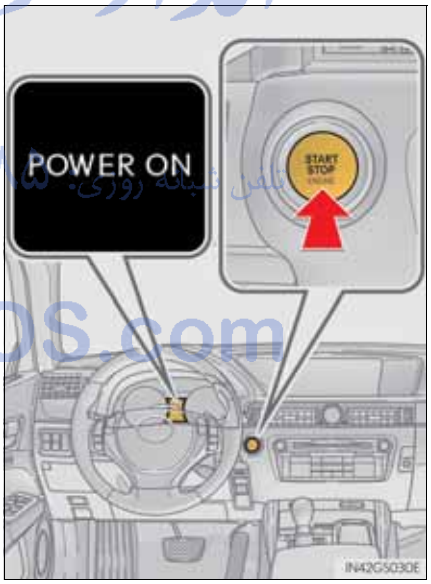
3 Set the parking brake. (→P. 225)

4 Press the engine switch.

5 Release the brake pedal and check that “POWER ON” on the multi-information display is off.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

The multi-information display will not be displayed.

ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

“POWER ON” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

“POWER ON” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will be

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

3 Check that “POWER ON” and “Turn Power OFF” are displayed alternately on the multi-information display and then press the engine switch once.

4 Check that “POWER ON” and “Turn Power OFF” on the multi-information display are off.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the engine switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 134

■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 130

■ Notes for the entry function

→P. 131

■ If the engine does not start

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 80) Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Check that the shift lever is securely set in P. The engine may not start if the shift lever is displaced out of P. “Shift to P position to Start” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

■ Steering lock

After turning the engine switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the engine switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ When the steering lock cannot be released

"Steering Lock active" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Check that the shift lever is set in P. Press the engine switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.



■ Steering lock motor overheating prevention

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ When "Check Entry & Start System" will be displayed on the multi-information display

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ If the electronic key battery is depleted

→P. 815

■ Operation of the engine switch

- When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the engine may not start or the engine switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting

→P. 821

ایران خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while driving

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Stopping the engine in an emergency

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 739)

However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

ایران خودرو
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If “POWER ON” is displayed on the multi-information display, the engine switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch off.
- Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

■ When starting the engine

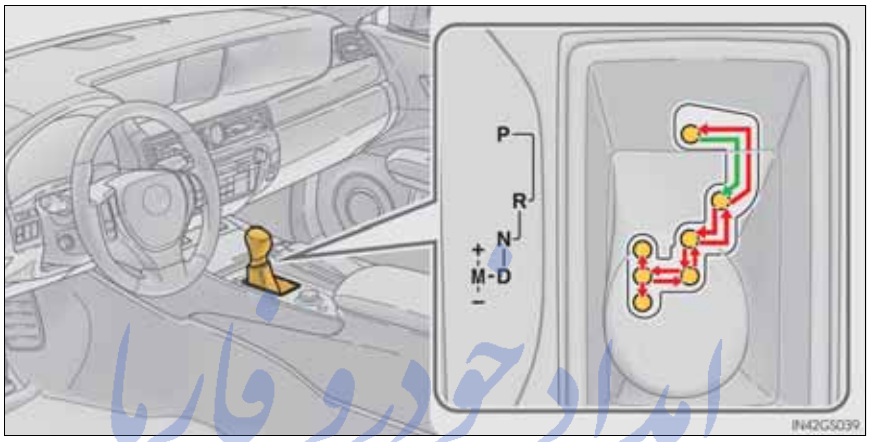
- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

FarmaSOS.com

Shifting the shift lever



While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
M	M mode driving*2 (→P. 219)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noises, set the shift lever in D for normal driving.

*2: Any gear range can be fixed when driving in M mode.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting the driving mode

■ Sport mode/Eco drive mode

→P. 326

■ Snow mode

Snow mode can be selected to suit the conditions when driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Press the switch.

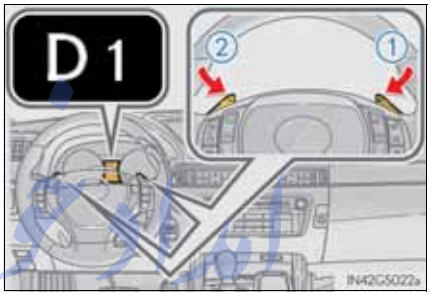
Press the switch again to return to normal mode.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting shift ranges in the D position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the “-” paddle shift switch. The shift range can then be selected by operating the “-” and “+” paddle shift switches. Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



① Upshifting

② Downshifting

The selected shift range, from D1 to D5, will be displayed in the meter.

To return to normal D position driving, the “+” paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

■ Shift ranges and their functions

Meter display	Function
D2 - D5	A gear in the range between 1 and the selected gear is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D1	Setting the gear at 1

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting gears in the M position

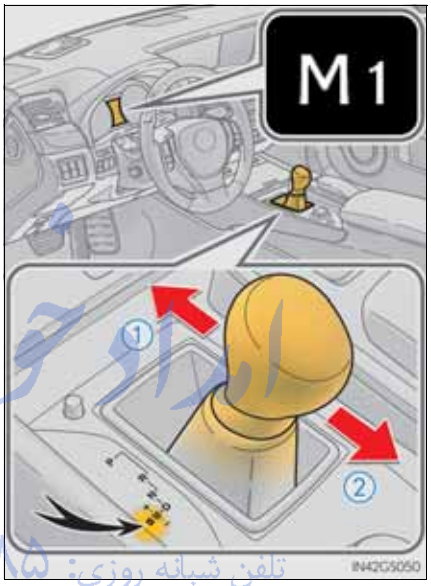
To enter M mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gears can then be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.

① Upshifting

② Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear, from M1 to M6, will be fixed and displayed in the meter.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situation:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When the automatic transmission fluid or engine coolant temperature is low.
- When automatic transmission fluid temperature is high.
- When the needle of the tachometer is in the red zone (the range which exceeds the allowable revs of the engine).

In the following situations, the gear will not shift even if the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

- “1st Gear not available due to slippery road surface” is displayed on the multi information display.
- The vehicle speed is low (upshift only).

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ When the “-” paddle shift switch is operated in the D position

A shift range will be automatically selected. The highest gear of the first shift range will be one gear lower than the gear in use during normal D position driving.

■ Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the “+” paddle shift switch is operated when the shift range is in range 5
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to other than D

■ To protect automatic transmission

“Transmission Fluid High Temperature” is displayed on the multi-information display and a function is adopted that automatically selects a higher shift range when the fluid temperature is high. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ Snow mode automatic deactivation

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the engine switch is turned off after driving in snow mode.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

→P. 817

FarnaSOS.com

■ AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.

The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in D. (Shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

⚠ CAUTION

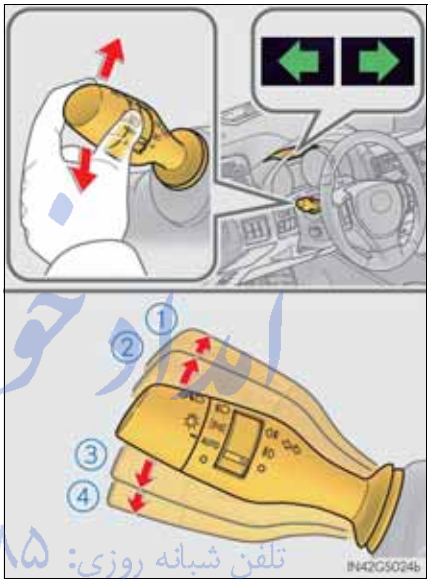
■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Operating instructions

The lever will return to its original position after operation.



① Right turn

② Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

③ Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

④ Left turn

■ If the turn signals do not stop flashing after turning left or right, or if you want to stop them flashing

Operate the lever in the opposite direction to either position ② or ③.
If you move the lever to either position ① or ④, the selected turn signals will flash.

ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
Farma808.com

■ Turn signals can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If the indicator flashes faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed

Operate the lever again.

■ Customization

The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed.
(Customizable feature →P. 855)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

A selections can be made as desired from the following modes.

Manual mode

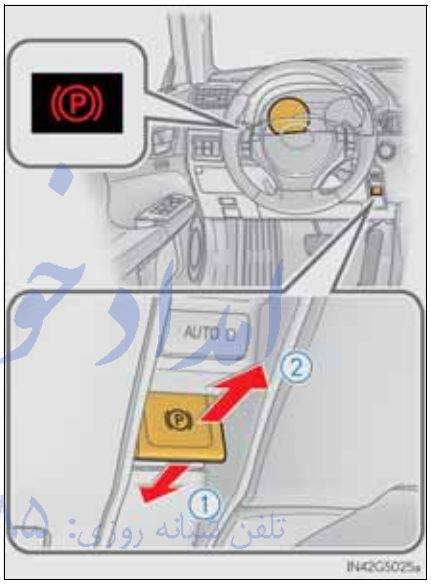
① Sets the parking brake

The parking brake indicator light will come on. (→P. 226)

Press and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

② Releases the parking brake

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Automatic mode

The parking brake is set or released automatically according to shift lever operation.

Turns automatic mode on/off

- When the shift lever is moved out of P, the parking brake will be released.
- When the shift lever is moved into P, the parking brake will be set.

  Operate the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.



امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

■ Parking brake operation

- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.
- If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ Parking brake operation sound

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Parking brake indicator light

- Depending on the engine switch mode, the parking brake indicator light will come on and stay on as described below:

  IGNITION ON mode: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
  Not in IGNITION ON mode: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the engine switch is turned off with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning message will turn on or flash. (→P. 749, 757)
Depending on the condition, the parking brake indicator light may flash.

■ Usage in winter time

→P. 359

⚠ NOTICE

■ When parking the vehicle

Before you leave the vehicle, set the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ When the system malfunctions

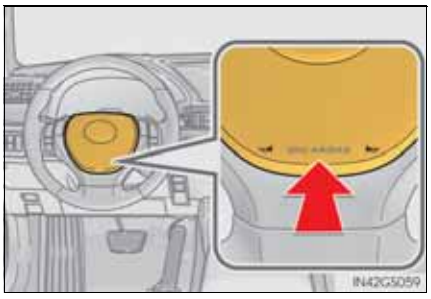
Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction

Use the parking brake release tool to manually release the parking brake. (→P. 818)
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



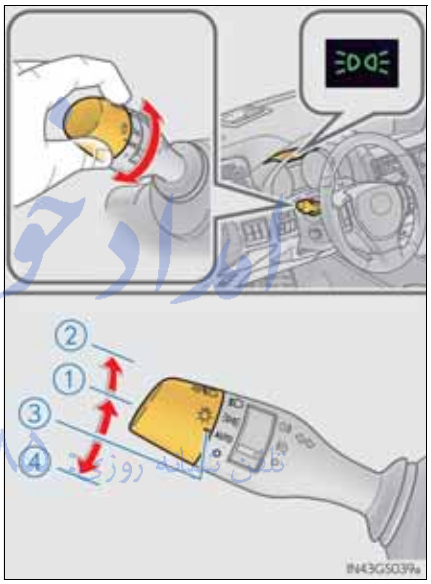
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Operating instructions

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:



① The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

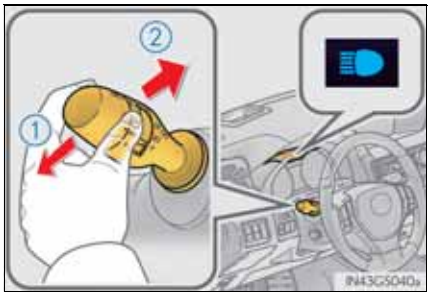
② The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

③ AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.
(When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

④ The daytime running lights turn on.

FarmaSOS.com

Turning on the high beam headlights



① With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

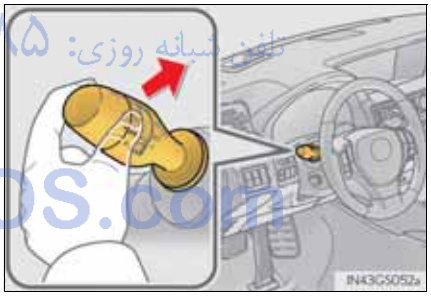
Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

② Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Follow me home system

This system allows the headlights and front position lights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is off.



Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch is in AUTO or ○ after turning the engine switch off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it again to turn off the lights.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۱۵
FarmaSOS.com

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) (if equipped)

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) secures excellent visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of the light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire's angle as controlled by steering input.

AFS operates at speeds of 10 km/h (6 mph) or higher.

■ Deactivating AFS

Turn on the AFS OFF switch.

The indicator turns on when the AFS is deactivated.



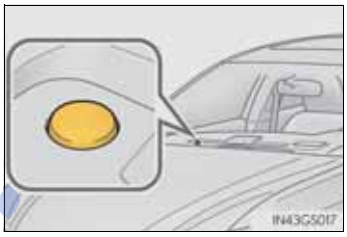
ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Daytime running light system

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the front position lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ Headlight control sensor

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ Automatic light off system

- When the light switch is in : The headlights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.
- When the light switch is in AUTO: The headlights and all lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to or .

If any of the doors or trunk lid is kept open, the lights automatically turn off after 20 minutes.

■ Light reminder buzzer

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

ایران خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

■ If the “AFS OFF” indicator flashes

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 862)

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

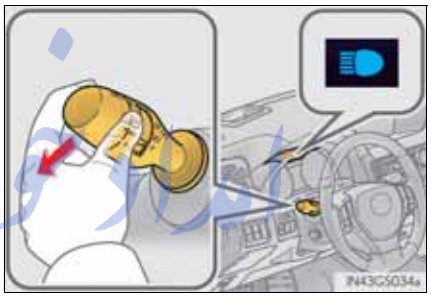
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Automatic High Beam*

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle camera sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

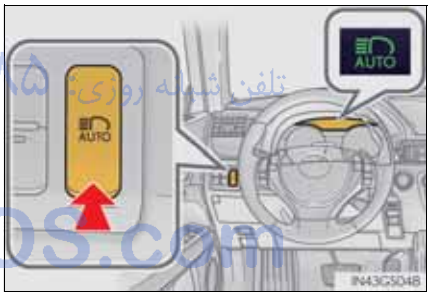
Activating the Automatic High Beam system

1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in AUTO or position.



2 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active.



FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):

- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are few streetlights on the road ahead.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

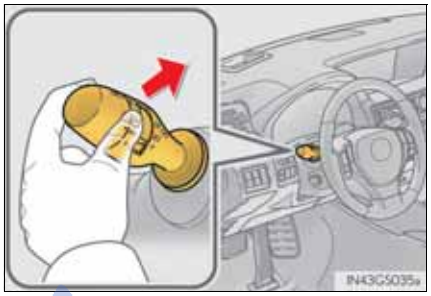
Turning the high beam on/off manually

■ Switching to low beam

Pull the lever to original position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

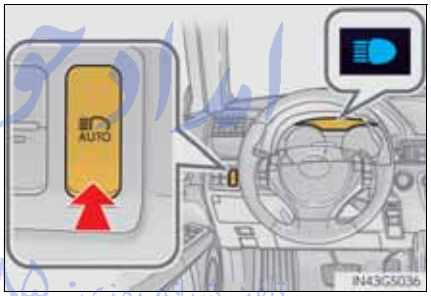


■ Switching to high beam

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



FarmaSOS.com

■ The Automatic High Beam can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Camera sensor detection information

- High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
  - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another
  - When oncoming or preceding vehicles are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- House lights, street lights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - The movement and direction of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle only has operational lights on one side
  - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle is a two-wheeled vehicle
  - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

- In the situations below, the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose nearby pedestrians to the high beam. Therefore, you should consider turning the high beams on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.
  - In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
  - The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc.
  - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
  - The inside rear view mirror or camera sensor is deformed or dirty.
  - Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
  - Vehicles ahead have headlights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or have are not aimed properly.
  - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
  - When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks etc.).
  - When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
  - There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
  - The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
  - The vehicle is listing or titling, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed etc.
  - The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

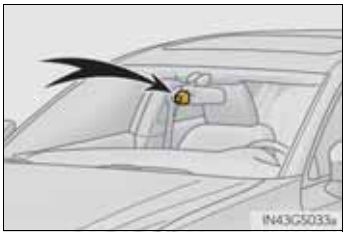
Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ Notes when using the Automatic High Beam system

Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.



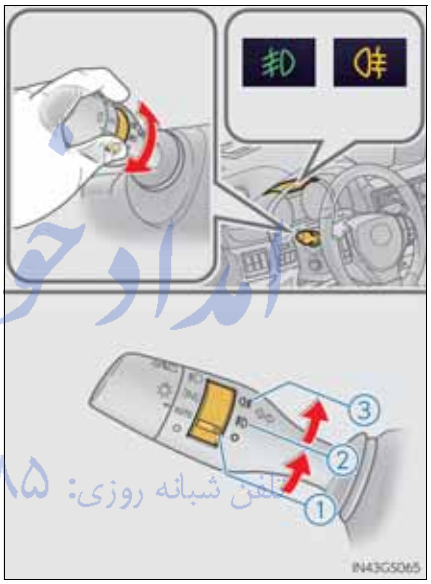
- Do not touch the camera sensor.
- Do not subject the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor to a strong impact.
- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not spill liquid onto the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor.
- Do not apply window tinting or stickers to the camera sensor or the area of windshield near the camera sensor.
- Do not place items on the dashboard. There is a possibility that the camera sensor will mistake items reflected in the windshield for streetlights, the headlights of other vehicles, etc.
- Do not install a parking tag or any other accessories near or around the inside rear view mirror and the camera sensor.
- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.
- Do not replace windshield with non-genuine windshield.
  Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

Fog light switch

The fog lights secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

▶ Front and rear fog light switch



① Turns the front and rear fog lights off

② Turns the front fog lights on

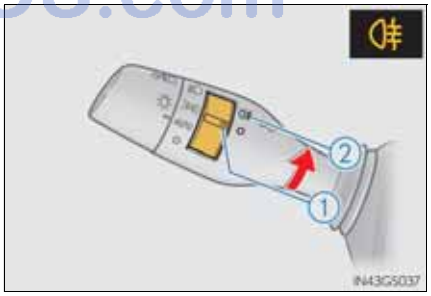
③ Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog light off.

امداد خودرو فارس
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Rear fog light switch



① Turns the rear fog light off

② Turns the rear fog light on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog light off.

■ Fog lights can be used when

▶ Vehicles with a front and rear fog light switch

Front fog lights: The headlights or the front position lights are turned on.
Rear fog light: The front fog lights are turned on.

▶ Vehicles with a rear fog light switch

The headlights or the front position lights are turned on.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

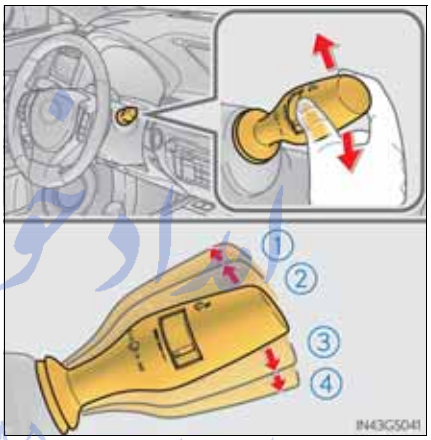
Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the wiper lever

Operate the lever as follows to operate the wipers. The lever will return to its original position after operation.

▶ Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster

① ○ Up 2 levels
② △ Up 1 level
③ ▽ Down 1 level
④ ⧖ Down 2 levels



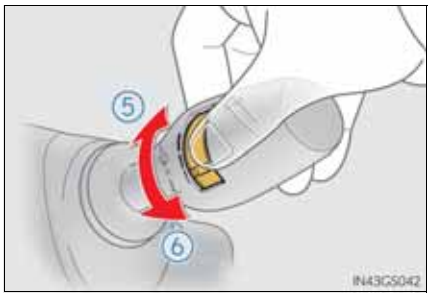
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Operation / Status before opera-	○	△	▽	⧖
Off	Temporary operation	Temporary operation	Intermittent operation	High speed operation
Intermittent operation	Off	Off	Low speed operation	High speed operation
Low speed operation	Off	Intermittent operation	High speed operation	High speed operation
High speed operation	Off	Low speed operation	No change	No change

Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.

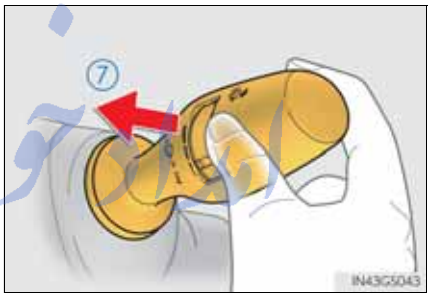
⑤ Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

⑥ Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency



⑦ Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Rain-sensing windshield wipers

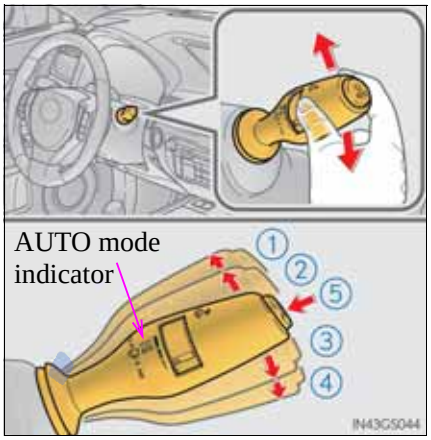
① Up 2 levels

② Up 1 level

③ Down 1 level

④ Down 2 levels

⑤ AUTO AUTO mode on/off switch



With AUTO selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

AUTO mode indicator will turn on when AUTO mode is selected.

Status before \ Operation		①	②	③	④
Off		Temporary operation	Temporary operation	Low speed operation	High speed operation
Low speed operation		Off	Off	High speed operation	High speed operation
High speed operation		Off	Low speed operation	No change	No change
AUTO mode	Intermittent operation	Off	Temporary operation*	Low speed operation	High speed operation
	Continuously		No change		

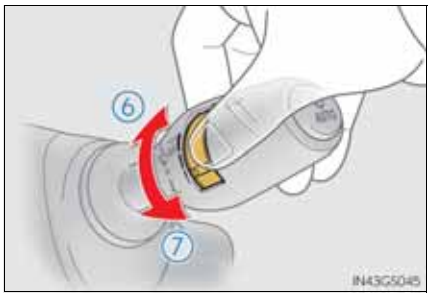
*: After temporary operation, the mode will return to AUTO mode.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

When AUTO mode is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted by turning the switch ring.

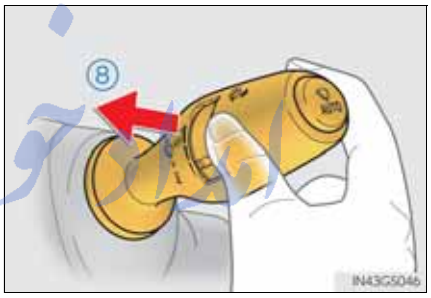
⑥ Increases the sensitivity

⑦ Decreases the sensitivity



⑧ Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

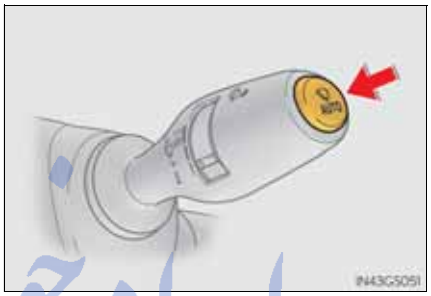


امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Switching between the intermittent windshield wipers and rain-sensing windshield wipers (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

The wipers can be used as intermittent windshield wipers, which operate regardless of vehicle speed or amount of raindrops.

Press and hold AUTO until the AUTO mode indicator stops flashing.



If AUTO is pressed and held until the AUTO mode indicator stops flashing again, it will return to its previous state.

The wiper can be switched when the vehicle is stopped and the wiper is off.

امداد خودرو فارا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FaraSOS.com

■ The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Dripping prevention wiper sweep

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

However, the last sweep will not happen if the vehicle is traveling above 170 km/h (106 mph).

■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation

Vehicle speed affects the following even when the wipers are not in AUTO mode.

- Intermittent wiper interval
- Wiper operation when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs)

With low speed windshield wiper operation selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.

■ Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper is turned to AUTO mode while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 85°C (185°F) or higher, or -30°C (-22°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO mode.

■ When the windshield wipers are in temporary operation

AUTO mode cannot be activated even if AUTO is pressed.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

■ When standing the windshield wipers up

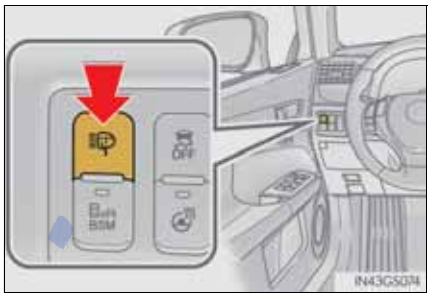
Raise the wipers in line with the windshield. (→P. 362)
Failure to do so may result in damage to the wipers and/or the hood.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Headlight cleaner switch

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.

Press the switch to clean the headlights.



■ The headlight cleaners can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

■ Windshield washer linked operation

When the windshield washer is operated with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights on, the headlight cleaners will operate once. (→P. 241)

ایراد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱-۸۸۸۶۰۸۵۵
FarsaSOS.com

⚠ NOTICE

■ When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not press the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Close all the doors and windows, and turn the engine switch off.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

■ Fuel types

EU area:
Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228, Research Octane Number of 95 or higher

Except EU area:
Unleaded gasoline, Research Octane Number of 95 or higher

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

NOTICE

■ Refueling

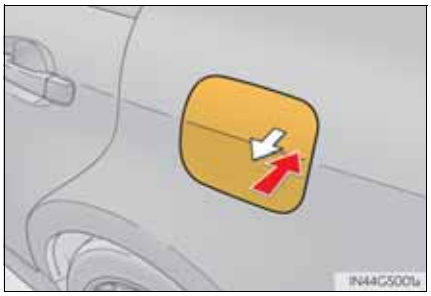
Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

امداد خودرو ما
FarmaSOS.com

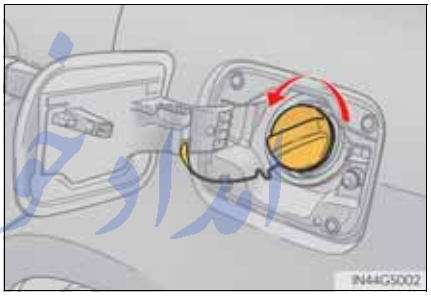
Opening the fuel tank cap

1 With the doors unlocked, press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

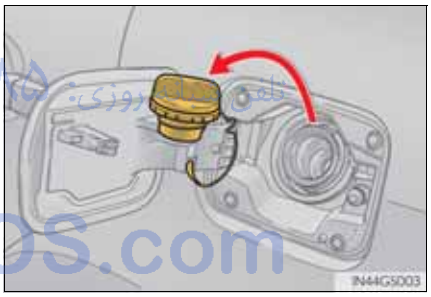
Push until you hear a click and take your hand away to slightly open the fuel filler door. Then open the door fully by hand.



2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.



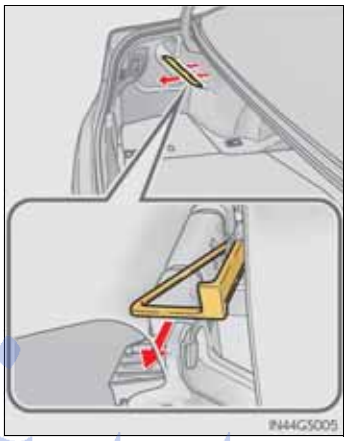
3 Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ If the fuel filler door cannot be opened

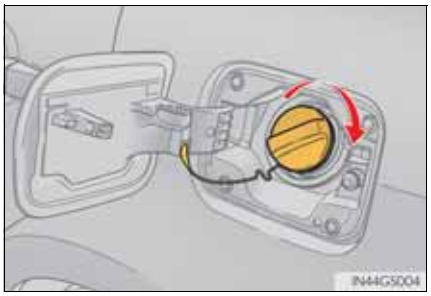
Remove the cover inside the trunk and pull the lever to open the fuel filler door if the fuel filler door cannot be opened pressing the rearward of the fuel filler door.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

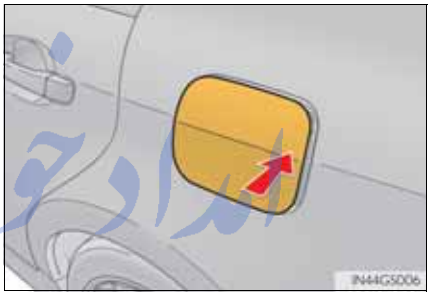
Closing the fuel tank cap

1 After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



2 Close the fuel filler door, and press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door until you hear a click.

When you lock the doors, the fuel filler door will lock also.



FarmaSOS.com

■ Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

■ Fuel filler door lock condition

The fuel filler door may not be locked even when the vehicle's doors are locked in the following conditions:

- When operating the door lock button inside the vehicle
- When the fuel filler door is closed after the vehicle's doors are locked

⚠ CAUTION

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Cruise control*

Summary of functions

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

① Indicators

② Cruise control switch



امداد خودرو فارما

Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

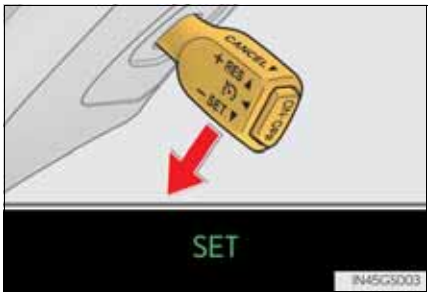


۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲ ۸۵ :شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

2 Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

“SET” indicator will come on.

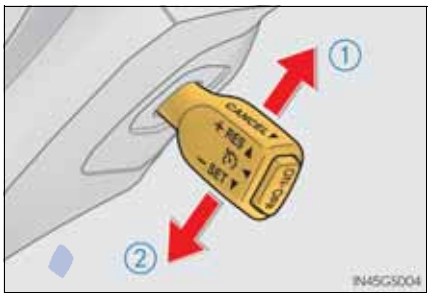
The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



*: If equipped

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.



① Increases the speed

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

② Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۳۸۳۶۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ Automatic cruise control cancelation

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.

■ If the warning message for the cruise control is shown on the multi-information display

Press the “ON-OFF” button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

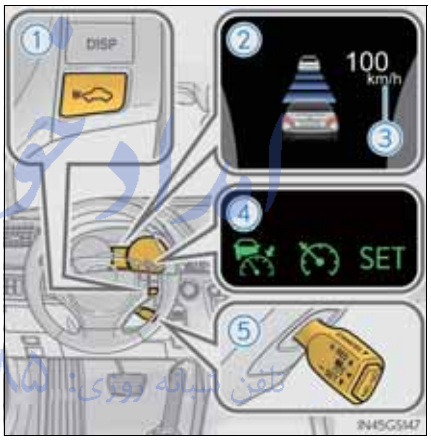
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Dynamic radar cruise control*

Summary of functions

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.

① Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
② Display
③ Set speed
④ Indicators
⑤ Cruise control switch



۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن سامانه دوری
FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on.

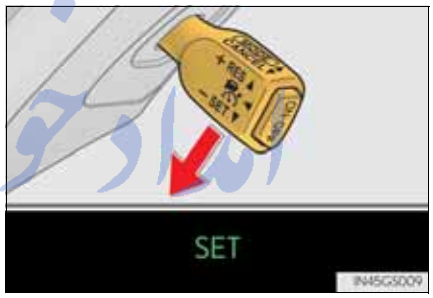
Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



2 Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

“SET” indicator will be displayed.

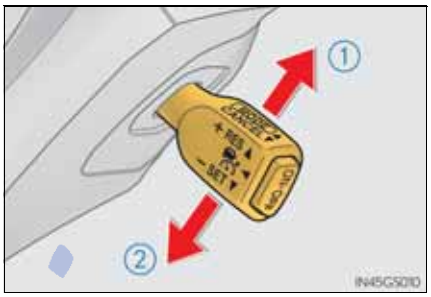
The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



① Increases the speed

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

- When the set speed is shown in “MPH”

  Fine adjustment: By approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) each time the lever is operated

  Large adjustment: By approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) for each 0.3 seconds the lever is held

- When the set speed is shown in “km/h”

  Fine adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) each time the lever is operated

  Large adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) for each 0.3 seconds the lever is held

امداد خودرویار
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

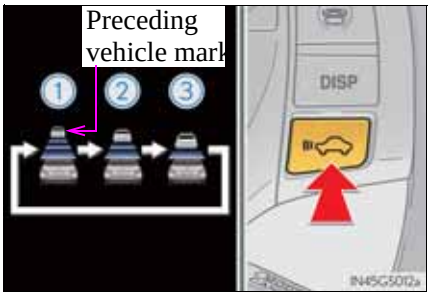
In the constant speed control mode (→P. 265), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



① Long

② Medium

③ Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

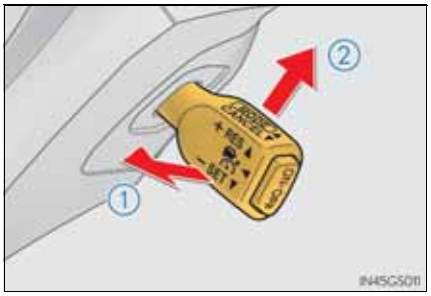
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

امداد خودروها
FarmaSOS.com

Canceling and resuming the speed control



① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

② Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

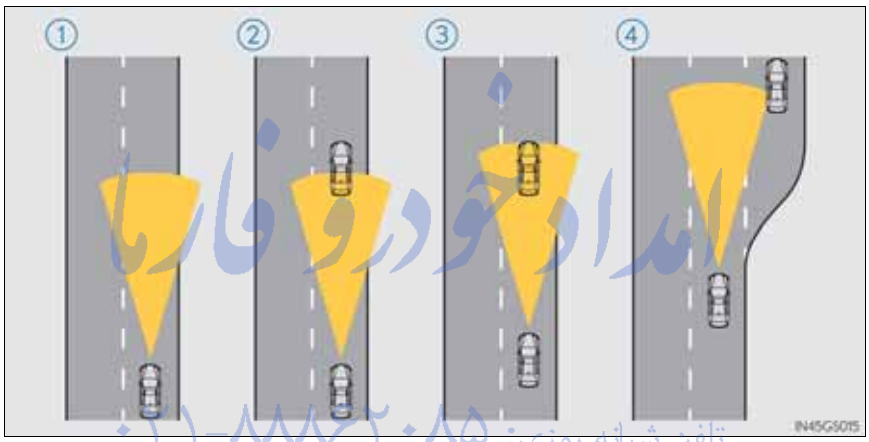
Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 120 m (400 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

① Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

② Example of deceleration cruising
When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

③ Example of follow-up cruising

When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

④ Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

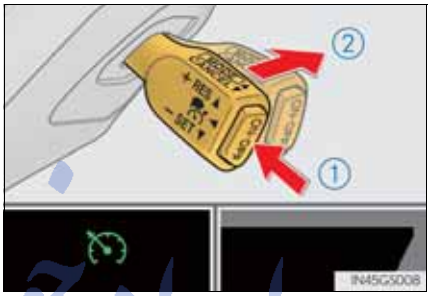
■ Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to dirt etc.



① Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

② Switch to constant speed control mode.
(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately one second.)

Constant speed control mode indicator will come on.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the engine switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۸۸۸۴۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Adjusting the speed setting:
→P. 255

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 255

■ Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

■ Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wipers are in AUTO mode or the high speed wiper operation).
- When snow mode is set.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Automatic cancelation of constant speed control

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.

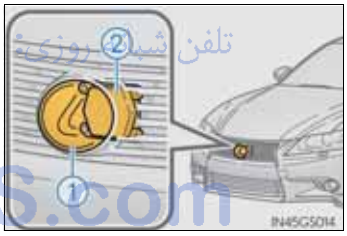
■ When the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) will be activated

Using the radar cruise control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, lane keeping assistance control is activated.

■ Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.

① Grille cover
② Radar sensor



ایراد خودروفارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

■ Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 760)

■ Certification

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR004 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að DNMWR004 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR004 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR004 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR004 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR004 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝ ΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR004 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR004 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR004 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR004 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR004 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

FamaSOS.com

Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR004 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR004 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret DNMWR004 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR004 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR004 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR004 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR004 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR004 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR004 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Ar šo, DENSO CORPORATION, deklarē, ka DNMWR004 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR004 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes etc.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ To avoid inadvertent cruise control activation

Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 264) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively.

Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

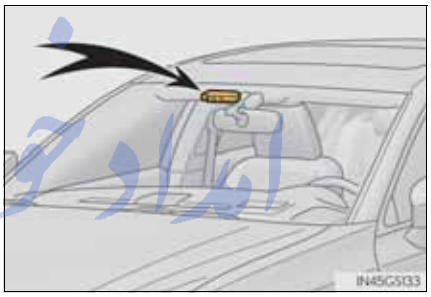
ایراد خودرو ما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)*

Summary of functions

While driving on a freeway or motor highway that has lane markers and no sharp curves, the system recognizes the lanes using a camera located above the inside rear view mirror as a sensor to assist the driver with staying in the lane. The LKA system has two functions.

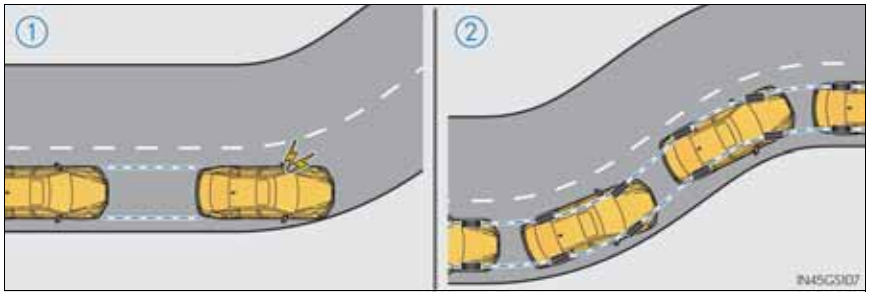
Camera sensor



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

Functions included in the LKA



① Lane departure warning function

If the system judges that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, it alerts the driver using beeping, screen displays and a sensory warning* given via the steering wheel.

*: A slight steering torque is applied for a short period of time in the direction of the center of the lane.

② Lane keeping assist function

- This function will be active when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode of the cruise control (→P. 258) is set with vehicle speed above approximately 72 km/h (45 mph) and while the lane departure warning function is active.
- When the lane keeping assist function is active, a slight steering torque will be applied, to help the driver maintain the vehicle inside the lane.

The lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled if the steering wheel is not operated, or if you continue driving with your hands lightly touching the steering wheel. (→P. 279)

FarmaSOS.com

Turning the LKA system on

Press the “LKA” switch to activate the system.

“LKA” indicator will come on.

Press the switch again to turn the LKA system off.

The LKA system will revert to off each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Operating conditions for each function

■ Lane departure warning function

- When the vehicle speed is approximately 48 km/h (30 mph) or more
- When the lane width is more than approximately 2.8 m (9.1 ft.)
- When driving on a straight road or through a curve with a radius of more than approximately 120 m (394 ft.)

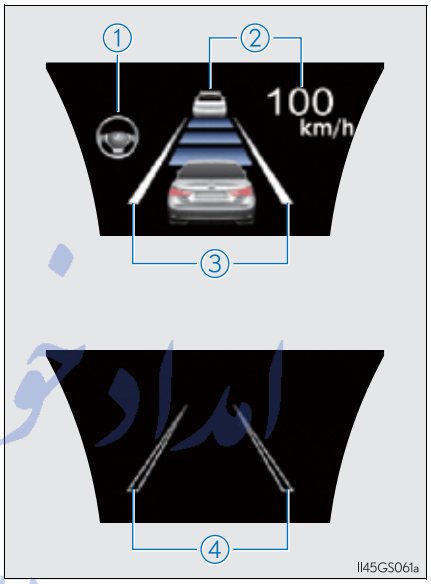
■ Lane keeping assist function

- When the vehicle speed is between approximately 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph)
- When the vehicle-to-vehicle distance mode of the radar cruise control is on, and the set vehicle speed is approximately 72 km/h (45 mph) or more (the function will not operate when the radar cruise control is in set speed mode)
- When the lane width is between approximately 2.8 and 4.0 m (9.1 and 13.1 ft.)
- When driving on a straight road or through a curve with a radius of more than approximately 230 m (755 ft.)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۴۸۳۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Indication on the multi-information display

When the LKA system is on, the lane line display and steering wheel display are shown.



① Lane keeping assist function operation indication

Steering wheel displayed:
Indicates that the function is currently operating. (If the lane departure warning operates at this time, the steering wheel flashes orange.)
Steering wheel not displayed:
Indicates that the function is not currently operating. (When the lane keeping assist function is canceled, the buzzer will beep twice.)

② Dynamic radar cruise control display

③ Lane departure warning function indication (when the inside of the white line is white):

The function has recognized lane markers. (If the lane departure warning operates at this time, the lines flash orange.)

④ Lane departure warning function indication (when the inside of the white line is black):

A lane marker is not recognized by the system, or the LKA system functions are temporarily canceled.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Temporary cancelation of the LKA system functions

If any of the following occurs, the LKA system functions will be temporarily canceled. The functions will resume after the necessary operating conditions have returned.

- The steering wheel is turned as far as necessary to cause the vehicle to change lanes.
- When the system detects no-handed driving. (The lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled, but the lane departure warning function will continue.)
- The turn signal lever is operated.
- The vehicle speed deviates from the operating range of the LKA system functions. (The buzzer will beep twice when the lane keeping assist function is being canceled.)
- When the lane lines cannot be recognized while driving. (The buzzer will beep twice when the lane keeping assist function is being canceled.)
- The wiper switch is set on high speed mode or is set on AUTO mode with wipers operating at high speed. (The lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled, but the lane departure warning function will continue.)
- If the vehicle crosses a line for approximately half a minute or more. (The lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled, but the lane departure warning function will continue.)
- When the lane departure warning function is activated.
  The lane departure warning function will not operate again for a several seconds after it has been activated, even if the vehicle leaves the lane again.

■ The lane departure warning

It may be difficult to feel the sensory warning depending on the road conditions.

■ No-handed driving warning

If the steering wheel is not operated for approximately 15 seconds on a straight road or approximately 5 seconds on a curve, the buzzer will beep twice, indicators on the multi-information display will flash, and the lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled. If you drive the vehicle with your hands lightly touching the steering wheel, this may also be detected as no-handed driving.

FarmaSOS.com

■ After the vehicle has been parked in the sun

The LKA system functions may not be available and a warning message (→P. 767) will be displayed for a while after driving has started. In such cases, turn the LKA system off and turn it on again after normal temperature returns. When the temperature in the cabin decreases and the temperature around the camera sensor (→P. 274) becomes suitable for its operation, the functions will begin to operate.

■ If there are lane markers on only one side of the vehicle

The lane keeping assist function will not operate. Also, the lane departure warning will not operate for the side on which lane markers could not be recognized.

■ Conditions in which the function may not operate correctly

In the following conditions, the LKA system functions may not operate, or it may not be possible to ensure adequate performance. Also, the camera sensor may be unable to recognize lane lines causing the lane departure warning function to operate incorrectly, or the lane keeping assist function may not operate properly. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- When driving through an area with no lane markers, such as a tollbooth, a crossing or before a ticket checkpoint
- When driving on a sharp curve
- When lanes are extremely narrow or extremely wide
- When the vehicle leans to one side an unusual amount due to a heavy load or improper tire inflation pressure
- When the following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short
- When the lane markers are yellow (These may be more difficult for the system to recognize compared to white markers.)
- When the lane markers are broken, “Raised pavement marker” or stones
- When lane markers are obscured or partially obscured by sand, dirt, etc.
- When there are shadows on the road running parallel with lane markers, or if a shadow covers the lane markers
- When driving on a particularly bright road surface, such as concrete
- When driving on a road surface that is bright due to reflected light
- When driving in a location where the light level changes rapidly, such as the entrance to or exit from a tunnel
- When sunlight or the headlights of oncoming vehicles are shining directly into the camera lens

FarmaSOS.com

- When driving on roads that are branching or merging
- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, previous rainfall, standing water, etc.
- When the vehicle experiences strong up-and-down motion such as when driving on an extremely rough road or on a seam in the pavement
- When headlight brightness at nighttime is reduced due to dirt on the lenses, or when the headlights are misaligned
- When driving with a strong crosswind
- When driving on winding roads or roads that are uneven
- When driving on rough or unpaved roads

■ When changing the tires

Depending on the tires used, sufficient performance may not be maintainable.

■ Warning messages for LKA

Warning messages are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 760, 767)

CAUTION

■ Before using the LKA system

Do not rely solely on the LKA system. The LKA system does not drive the vehicle automatically, nor does it reduce the amount of care you need to take. As such, the driver must always assume full responsibility for understanding his/her surroundings, for operating the steering wheel to correct the driving line, and for driving safely.
Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an accident.

■ To avoid operating the LKA by mistake

Switch the LKA off using the “LKA” switch when not in use.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Situations unsuitable for LKA

Do not use LKA in any of the following situations.
Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- When driving with snow tires, tire chains, a spare tire, or similar equipment
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low
- When there are objects or structures along the roadside that might be misinterpreted as lane markers (such as guardrails, curb, reflector posts, etc.)
- When driving on snowy roads
- When pavement lane markers are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, etc.
- When there are visible lines on the pavement from road repairs, or if the remains of old lane markers are still visible on the road
- When driving on slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- When driving in a lane other than the driving or passing lanes on a freeway or highway
- When driving on a road with lane closures due to maintenance, or when driving in a temporary lane
- When towing a trailer

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to or incorrect operation of the LKA system

- Do not modify the headlights or attach stickers to the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension, or replace them with non-genuine parts.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or the grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.).
- Do not modify the sun visor or replace it with anything other than a genuine Lexus product.
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

■ Camera sensor (→P. 274)

Observe the following to ensure that the LKA system functions correctly.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  Performance could be affected if the windshield is dirty, or if raindrops, condensation or ice are adhering to the windshield.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near the camera sensor.
- Do not install or place anything near the camera.



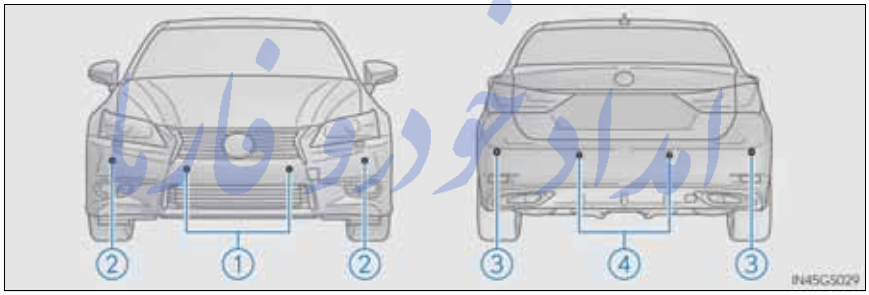
- When adjusting the rear view mirror, make sure that it does not block the camera lens.
- Do not attach window tinting to the windshield.
- Do not install an antenna in front of the camera lens.
- If the windshield is fogged up, use the windshield defogger to remove fog from the windshield.
  When it is cold, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up. This will have a negative effect on the images.
- Do not place anything on the dashboard.
  The camera sensor may recognize the image reflected on the windshield as lane markers by mistake.
- Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
  When cleaning the inside of the windshield, be careful not to get any glass cleaner etc. on the lens. Also, do not touch the lens.
  For lens repair, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the camera sensor or remove it. The direction of the camera sensor is precisely adjusted.
- Do not subject the camera sensor to strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the camera sensor.

امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

Lexus parking assist-sensor*

The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the multi-information display, Remote Touch screen and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

■ Types of sensors



① Front center sensors
② Front corner sensors
③ Rear corner sensors
④ Rear center sensors

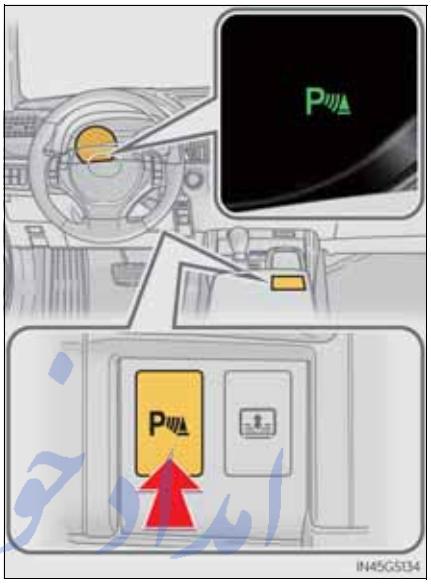
ایرادخودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor switch

Turns the Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

When on, the indicator light comes on and the buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the multi-information display and Remote Touch screen depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.

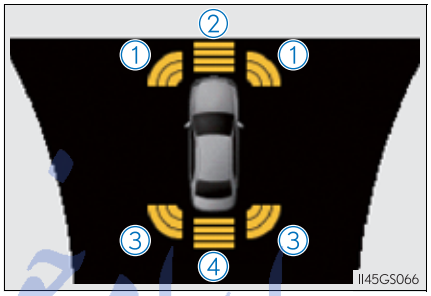
■ Multi-information display

① Front corner sensor detection

② Front center sensor detection

③ Rear corner sensor detection

④ Rear center sensor detection



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Remote Touch screen

▶ For 8-inch display

① When the parking assist monitor system is not displayed

A graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 292)

② When the rear view monitor system is displayed (insert display)

A simplified image is displayed on the right upper corner of the Remote Touch screen when an obstacle is detected.



▶ For 12.3-inch display

A graphic will be shown on the side display

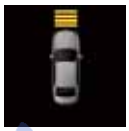
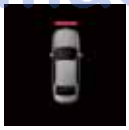
A graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 292)



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

■ Front center sensor

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Remote Touch screen		
		8-inch display	8-inch display (insert display)	12.3-inch display
100 cm (3.3 ft.) to 50 cm (1.6 ft.)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking slowly)	 (continuous)
50 cm (1.6 ft.) to 37.5 cm (1.2 ft.)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)
37.5 cm (1.2 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)	 (continuous)
Less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)

FarmaSOS.com

■ Corner sensors

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Remote Touch screen		
		8-inch display	8-inch display (insert display)	12.3-inch display
60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)
45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)	 (continuous)
Less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)

FarmaSOS.com

■ Rear center sensor

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Remote Touch screen	
		8-inch display (insert display)	12.3-inch display
150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)	 (continuous)	 (blinking slowly)	 (continuous)
60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)
45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 35 cm (1.1 ft.)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)	 (continuous)
Less than 35 cm (1.1 ft.)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۳۰۸۵۰
FarmaSOS.com

■ Buzzer operation and distance to an obstacle

A buzzer sounds when the corner sensors and rear center sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously:
  - Front center sensors: Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
  - Corner sensors: Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
  - Rear center sensors: Approximately 35 cm (1.1 ft.)
- When 2 or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.

امداد خودرو فارما

Detection range of the sensors

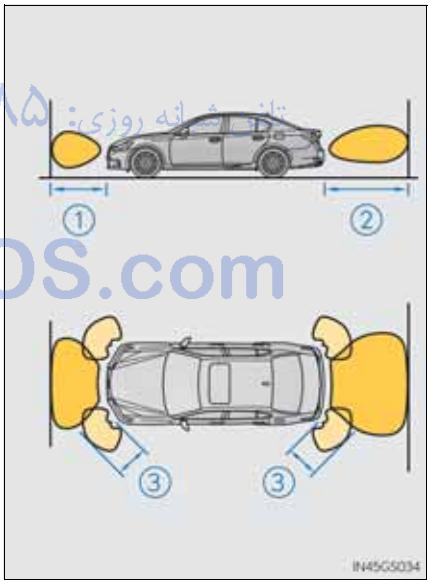
① Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

② Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

③ Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Setting up Lexus parking assist-sensor

You can change the warning beep volume and Remote Touch screen operating conditions.

1 Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch. (→P. 368)

2 Select “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.

3 Select “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.

4 Select “Lexus park assist” on the “Vehicle settings” screen.

① Alert volume setting

② Display on/off

③ Alert distance setting

Make sure to save after changing settings.



آیاد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Alert volume setting

The alert volume can be adjusted.

1 Select “1” to “5” on the “LEXUS park assist settings”.

2 Select “OK”.

■ Display on/off setting

On or off can be selected for Lexus parking assist-sensor display.

1 Select “Display off”.

When the “Display off” indicator is turned on, the display of Lexus parking assist-sensor will be off. Select “Display off” again to turn the display of Lexus parking assist-sensor on.

2 Select “OK”.

■ Alert distance setting

Front or rear center sensors display and tone indication can be set.

1 Select “Front” or “Rear”.

Long distance or short distance can be selected.

2 Select “OK”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ The Lexus parking assist-sensor can be operated when

- Front center sensors:
  - The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in a position other than P.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Front corner sensors:
  - The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in a position other than P or R.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Rear corner and rear center sensors:
  - The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in R.

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor display

When an obstacle is detected while the rear view monitor system, is in use, the warning indicator will appear in the top right of the screen even if the display setting has been set to off.

■ Sensor detection information

- The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's front corner and rear bumpers.
- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of the sensor to correctly detect obstacles. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor. (Wiping the sensors will resolve this problem.)
  - The sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
    In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the screen may show an abnormal display, or obstacles may not be detected.
  - The sensor is covered in any way.
  - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
  - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
  - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
  - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
  - The sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
  - The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or wireless antenna.
  - Towing eyelets are installed.
  - The bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
  - The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
  - In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
  - The area directly under the bumpers is not detected.
  - If obstacles draw too close to the sensor.
  - A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.
  - People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shape, signs and other objects may be judged by the sensor to be closer than they are.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
  - Sharply-angled objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle
- The following situations may occur during use.
  - Depending on the shape of the obstacle and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
  - Obstacles may not be detected if they are too close to the sensor.
  - There will be a short delay between obstacle detection and display. Even at slow speeds, there is a possibility that the obstacle will come within the sensor's detection areas before the display is shown and the warning beep sounds.
  - Thin posts or objects lower than the sensor may not be detected for collision when approached, even if they have been detected once.
  - It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of audio system or air flow noise of air conditioning system.

■ If a message is displayed on the multi-information display

→P. 760, 766

ایران خودرو دیزل
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When using the Lexus parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensors' detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas.

NOTICE

■ When using Lexus parking assist-sensor

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction etc. Have the vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- The Lexus parking assist-sensor operation display flashes, and a beep sounds when no obstacles are detected.
- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.
- If the bumper collides with something.
- If the display shows continuously without a beep.
- If a display error occurs, first check the sensor.
  If the error occurs even if there is no ice, snow or mud on the sensor, it is likely that the sensor is malfunctioning.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Lexus parking assist monitor

The parking assist monitor assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while backing up, for example while parking.

The parking assist monitor assists with the following 2 backing-up operations:

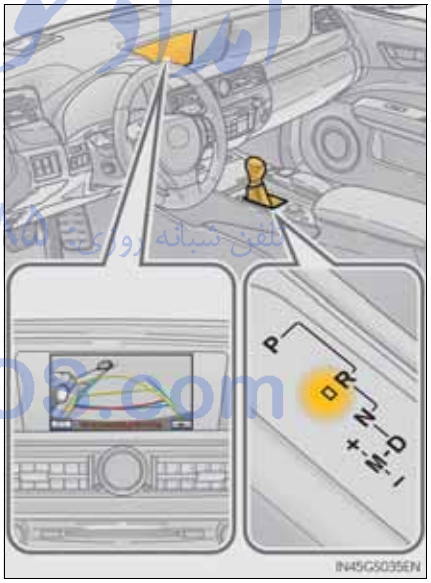
- Perpendicular parking (parking in a garage, etc.)
- Parallel parking (parking at the side of the road, etc.)

The screen illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the screen.

Parking assist monitor will activate when the shift lever is in R.

If you move the lever out of R, the parking assist monitor will be deactivated.

When the shift lever is shifted to the R position and any mode button (such as “MENU”) is pressed, the parking assist monitor is canceled, and the screen is switched to the mode of the button that was pressed.



FarmaSOS.com

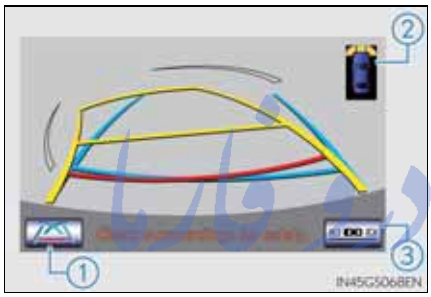
Using the Lexus parking assist monitor

■ Screen display

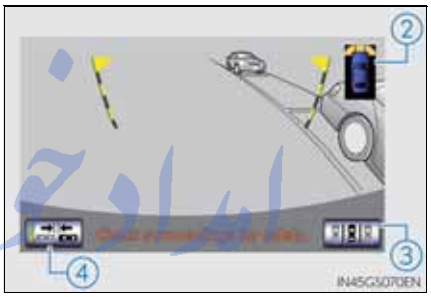
The parking assist monitor screen will be displayed if the shift lever is shifted to R while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

The parking assist monitor displays the last-used parking mode first.

▶ Perpendicular parking



▶ Parallel parking



① Display mode switch screen button

Switches the display mode. (→P. 299)

② Lexus parking assist-sensor display*

If an obstacle is detected while the Lexus parking assist-sensor is on, a display is shown in the top right corner of the screen.

*: Except for 12.3-inch display

③ Parking mode switch screen button

Switches the parking mode (between perpendicular parking and parallel parking assist screens)

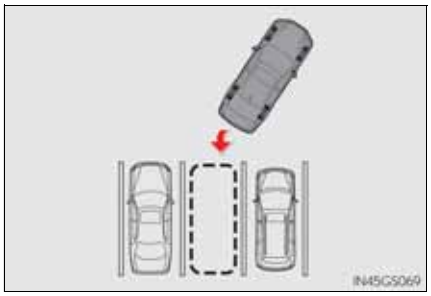
④ Narrow mode screen on-off button

Switch the narrow mode on and off. (→P. 313)

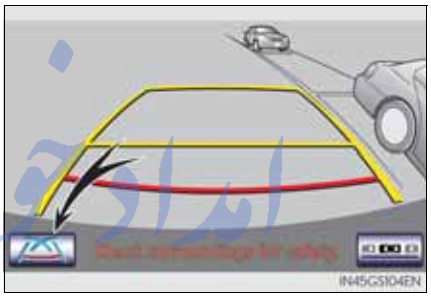
ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Using the system when perpendicular parking

Use any of the following modes when perpendicular parking (for example, when parking in a garage).



Each time you select the display mode switch screen button, the display mode switches in the following order:

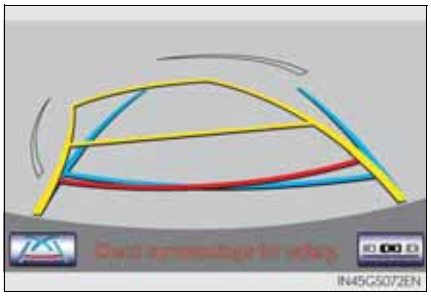


Estimated course line display mode → Parking assist guide line display mode → Course line deletion mode → Estimated course line display mode

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

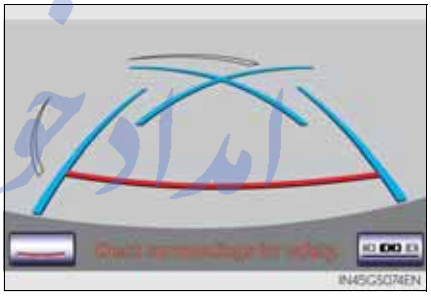
- Estimated course line display mode (→P. 302)

  Estimated course lines are displayed which move in accordance with the operation of the steering wheel.



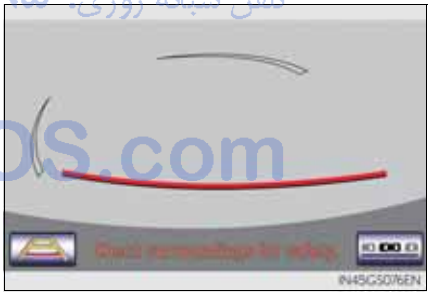
- Parking assist guide line display mode (→P. 304)

  The steering wheel return points (parking assist guide lines) are displayed.



- Course line deletion mode

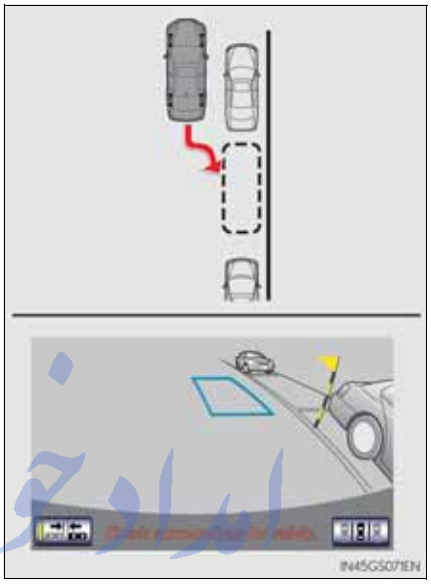
  Distance guide lines only are displayed.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Using the system when parallel parking

Screen display and beep sounds provide an estimation of the point at which you should turn the steering wheel when parallel parking. If the position the vehicle is to be parked in is narrower than usual, narrow mode can be used.

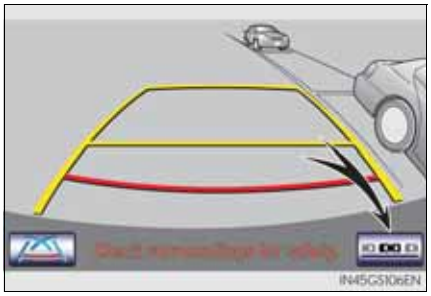


Each time you select the narrow mode screen on-off button, the narrow mode and the normal mode are switched.



■ Switching the parking mode screen

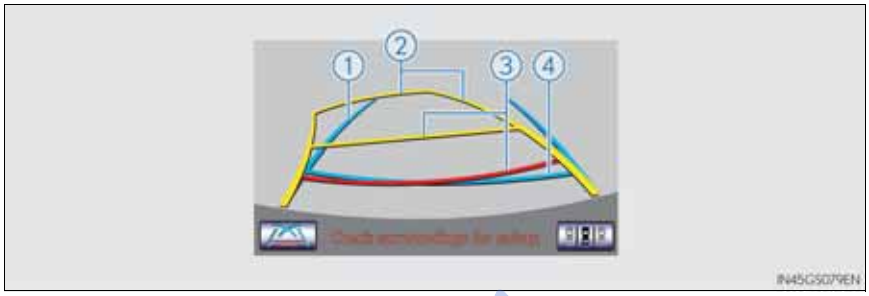
Each time you select the parking mode switch screen button, the perpendicular parking mode and parallel parking mode are switched.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Perpendicular parking (estimated course line display mode)

■ Screen description



① Vehicle width extension guide line

The line indicates a guide path when the vehicle is being backed straight up.
The displayed width is wider than the actual vehicle width.
The line aligns with the estimated course lines when the steering wheel is straight.

② Estimated course lines

The lines show an estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

③ Distance guide line

The line moves, together with the estimated course lines, in sync with the steering wheel. The line shows points approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) and approximately 1 m (3 ft.) (yellow) from the center of the edge of the bumper.

④ Distance guide line

The line shows distance behind the vehicle, a point approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (blue) from the edge of the bumper.

ایران خودرو مارکت
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Parking operation

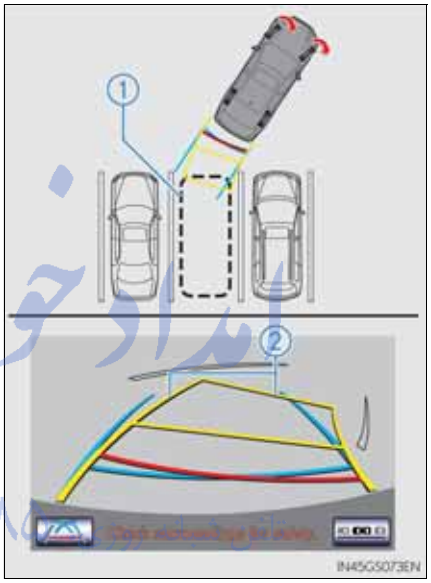
When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

1 Shift the shift lever to the R position.

2 Turn the steering wheel so that the estimated course lines are within the parking space, and back up slowly.

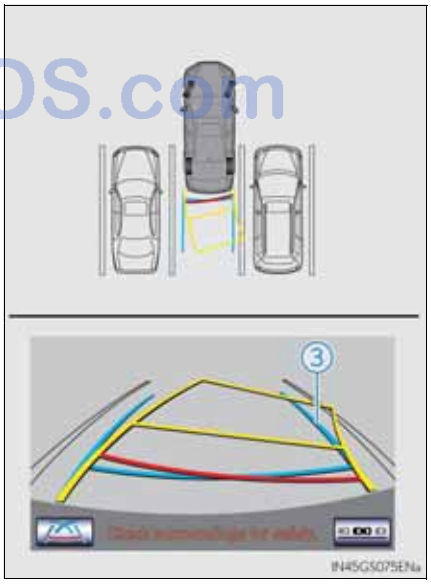
① Parking space

② Estimated course lines



3 When the rear position of the vehicle has entered the parking space, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle width extension guide lines are within the left and right dividing lines of the parking space.

③ Vehicle width extension guide line



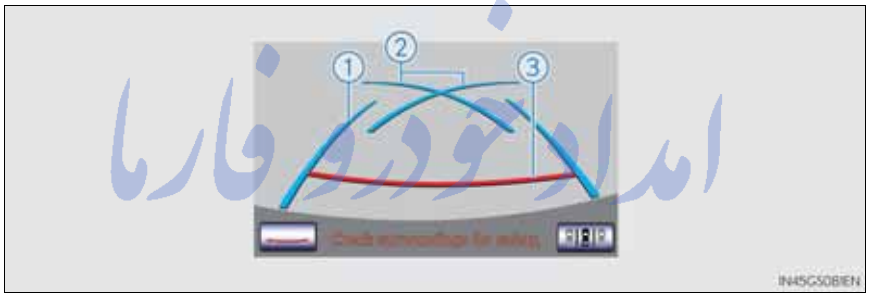
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۰
FarmaSOS.com

4 Once the vehicle width extension guide lines and the parking space lines are parallel, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

Perpendicular parking (parking assist guide line display mode)

■ Screen description



① Vehicle width extension guide lines
These lines indicate a guide path when the vehicle is being backed straight up. The displayed width is wider than the actual vehicle width.

② Parking assist guide lines
These lines indicate the path of the smallest turn possible behind the vehicle.
These lines also indicate the approximate position of the steering wheel when parking.

③ Distance guide line
This line (red) indicates points approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) behind the rear bumper of your vehicle.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Parking operation

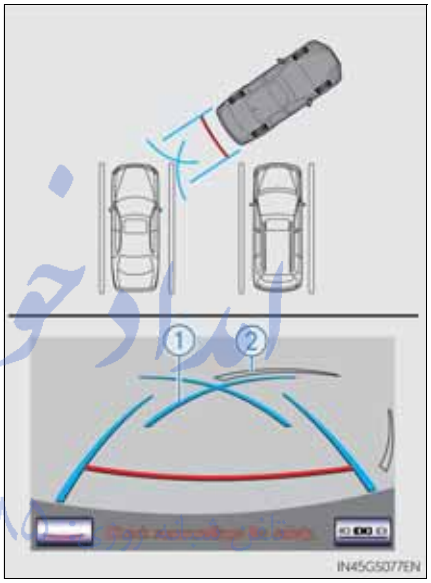
When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

1 Shift the shift lever to the R position.

2 Back up until the parking assist guide line meets the edge of the left-hand dividing line of the parking space.

① Parking assist guide line

② Parking space dividing line



3 Turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, and back up slowly.

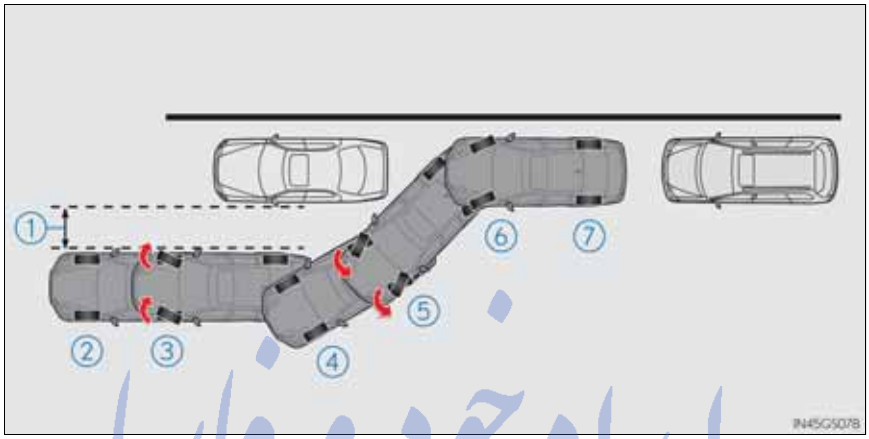
4 Once the vehicle is parallel with the parking space, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

FarmaSOS.com

Parallel parking

■ Vehicle movement procedure



امداد خودرو فارما

1 Approx. 1 m (3 ft.)

2 Keeping parallel with the road, stop the vehicle leaving a gap of approximately 1 m (3 ft.) between your vehicle and the parked vehicle (Step 1 in “Parking operation”).

3 Back up until the black and yellow vertical pole just overlaps the rear end of the parked vehicle. Then stop the vehicle (Step 4 in “Parking operation”).

Leaving the vehicle stopped, move the steering wheel until the blue outline meets the desired parking space, and back up while keeping the steering wheel in that position (Step 5 in “Parking operation”).

4 A curved blue line is displayed. Keep the steering wheel in the same position and back up until the curved blue line meets the right corner of the parking space (Step 7 in “Parking operation”).

5 When it meets the right corner of the parking space, turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction as far as it will go (Step 8 in “Parking operation”).

FarmaSOS.com

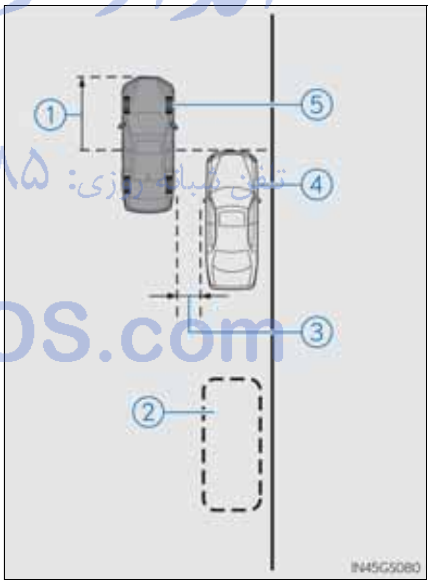
⑥ Keeping the steering wheel in that position, check your surroundings visually and using mirrors, and back up using the distance guide lines etc. as a reference (Step 9 in “Parking operation”).

⑦ When the vehicle is approximately in the desired parking location, parallel parking assist is complete (Step 10 in “Parking operation”).

■ Parking operation

The following example describes the procedure for pulling into a parking space on the right. For pulling into a parking space on the left, substitute left for right and vice versa in all steps.

1 Stop the vehicle in the position as described below, and straighten the steering wheel.



① Roughly half a vehicle’s length

② Desired parking space

③ Approx. 1 m (3 ft.)

④ Parked vehicle

⑤ Your vehicle

A position in which you are parallel with the road (or the side of the road), and in which there is approximately 1 m (3 ft.) of space between your vehicle and the parked vehicle

A position in which you are half a vehicle’s length ahead of the parked vehicle

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه‌روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

2 Shift the shift lever to the R position.

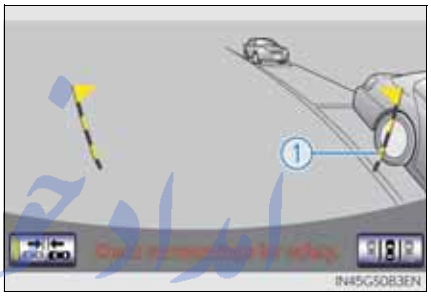
3 Make sure the monitor displays the part behind the rear tires of the parked vehicle, and select .

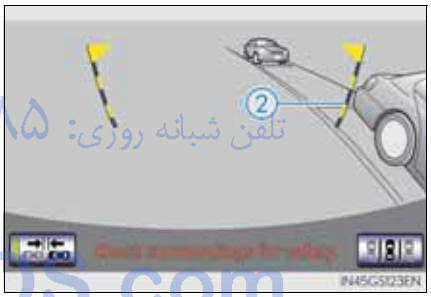
If the area is not displayed, move the vehicle to forward.

4 With the steering wheel straight, back up slowly to a position at which the black and yellow vertical pole just overlaps the rear end of the parked vehicle. Then stop the vehicle.

① Black and yellow vertical pole

② Back the vehicle up to here





امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

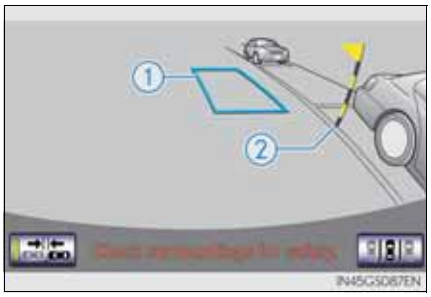
5 Turn the steering wheel with the vehicle stopped until the blue outline meets the desired parking space.

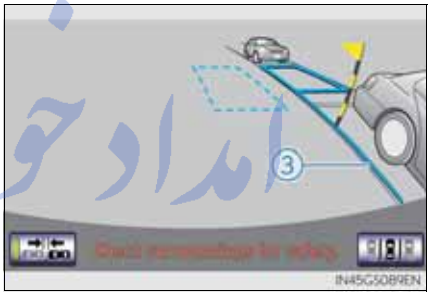
① Blue outline

② Black and yellow vertical pole

③ Extended line

If the extended line from the blue outline is displayed, the parallel parking assist is operational.

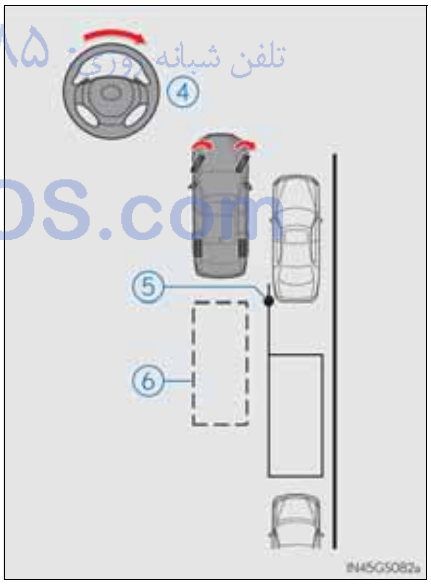




④ Turn the steering wheel right

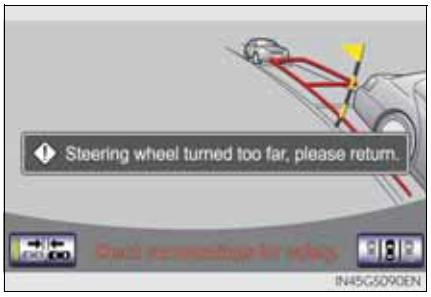
⑤ Black and yellow vertical pole

⑥ Blue outline



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

6 Keep the steering wheel in its current position and backing up.



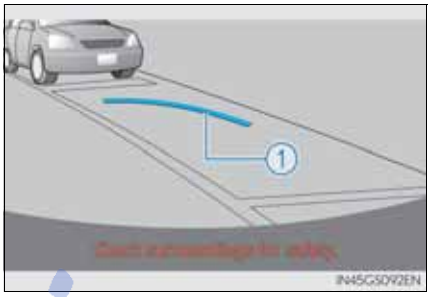
The parallel parking assist will be canceled if the steering wheel is moved while backing up. Shift the shift lever out of the R position, and restart from the step 1.

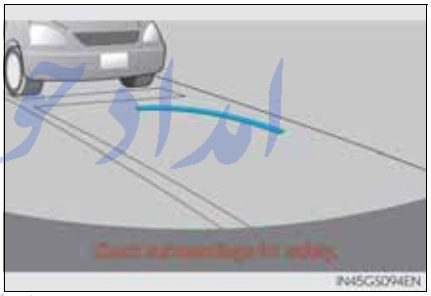
When backing up, be careful not to hit any obstacles with the right front corner of your vehicle. Back the vehicle up slowly.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

7 A curved blue line will appear on the screen. Keep the steering wheel in its current position and back up slowly. Stop when the curved blue line meets the corner of the desired parking space.

① Curved blue line





② Back up keeping the steering wheel in its current position

③ Curved blue line

④ Curved blue line meets the corner here

If you back up too quickly, you may lose synchronization with the parallel parking assist.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

8 Leaving the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left.

Be sure to turn the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

9 When the screen changes, keep the steering wheel in its current position and back up.

When backing up, be careful not to hit any obstacles with the right front corner of your vehicle. Back the vehicle up slowly.

10 When the vehicle is parallel with the road or the shoulder, straighten the steering wheel.
Check your surroundings visually and with the mirrors, then back up using the distance guide lines as a reference, and stop.

When the vehicle is approximately in the desired parking location, the parallel parking assist is complete.

- Parallel parking assist mode information
  - There is a possibility that parallel parking guidance may not be given when backing up at a very slow speed.
  - If the trunk is opened, the parallel parking assist will be interrupted by a message being displayed on the screen. Stop the vehicle, shift the shift lever out of the R position, and restart the operation from the step 1.
- Canceling parallel parking assist

  Select  .
- Vehicles with Lexus parking assist-sensor

  If Lexus parking assist-sensor detects an object while you attempt to park in a parking space on the left, the black and yellow vertical pole could be obscured by Lexus parking assist-sensor display. In this event, turn Lexus parking assist-sensor switch off (→P. 285), and operate the vehicle while checking the safety of the surrounding area direct visually and with mirror. After the operation, turn the switch on.

FarmaSOS.com

- If the message “Steering wheel turned too far, please return.” is displayed

  The steering wheel has been turned too far, and the system cannot function. Return the steering wheel to its original position.
  If the message is displayed before the outline is positioned over the desired parking space, it is likely that the vehicle is too far away from the shoulder. Check that there is a gap of approximately 1 m (3 ft.) between your vehicle and the parked vehicle.

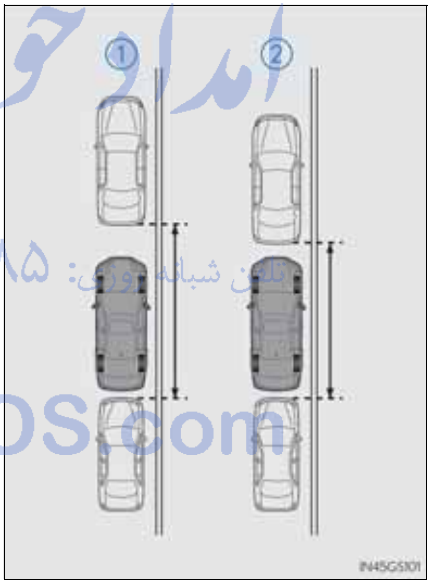
■ Narrow mode

If the position the vehicle is to be parked in is narrower than usual, narrow mode can be used.

① Normal mode

② Narrow mode

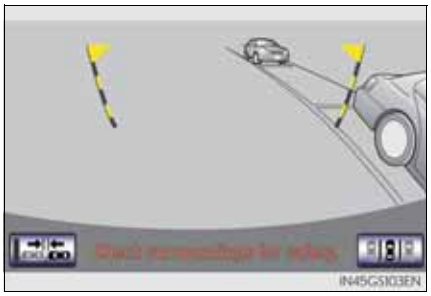
The engine switch is turned off when the parking assist monitor is canceled with narrow mode, the caution screen is displayed first when the parallel parking assist is selected next time.



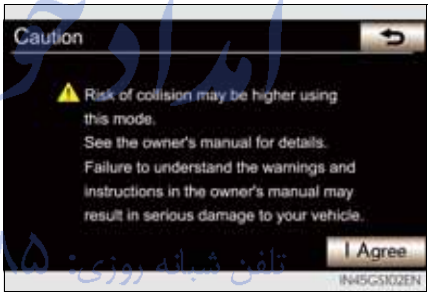
FarmaSOS.com

● Operating narrow mode

1 Select  while in parallel parking assist mode.

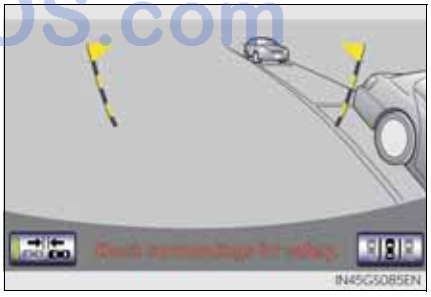


2 Confirm the warning on the caution screen. If you agree, select "I Agree". To cancel narrow mode, select  .



3 When the system is switched to narrow mode, the indicator on  will be turned on.

Select  again to switch the system to the normal mode.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

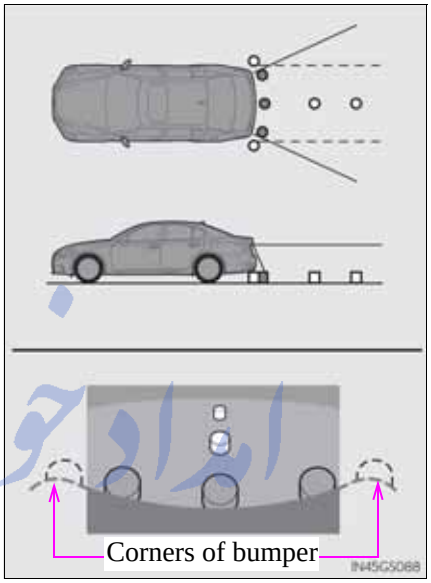
Lexus parking assist monitor precautions

■ Area displayed on screen

The parking assist monitor displays an image of the view from the bumper of the rear area of the vehicle.

To adjust the image on the parking assist monitor screen. (→P. 372)

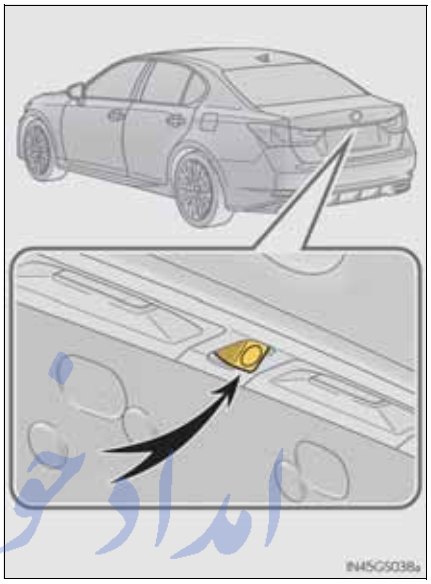
- The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation conditions.
- Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- Items which are located higher than the camera may not be displayed by the monitor.



ایرادخودرو
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Lexus parking assist monitor camera

The camera for the parking assist monitor is located above the license plate.



● Using the camera

If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse.

■ Differences between the screen and the actual road

The distance guide lines and the vehicle width extension guide lines may not actually be parallel with the dividing lines of the parking space, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

The distances between the vehicle width extension guide lines and the left and right dividing lines of the parking space may not be equal, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

The distance guide lines give a distance guide for flat road surfaces. In any of the following situations, there is a margin of

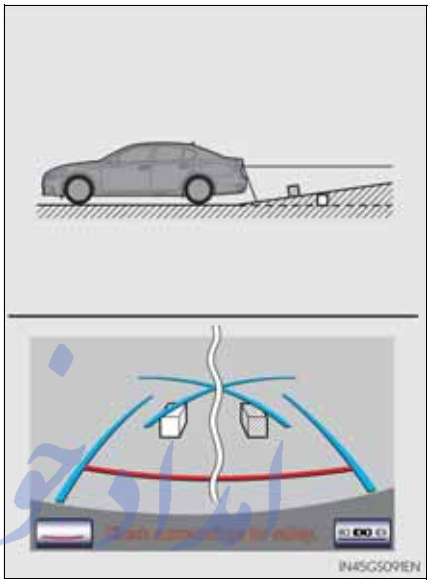
امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance/course on the road.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

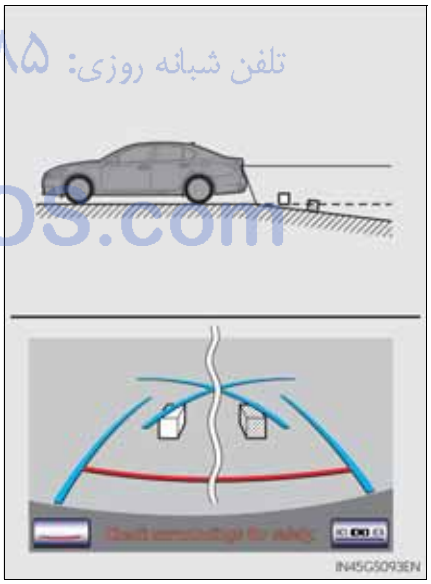
- When the ground behind the vehicle slopes up sharply

The distance guide lines will appear to be closer to the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be farther away than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guidelines and the actual distance/course on the road.



- When the ground behind the vehicle slopes down sharply

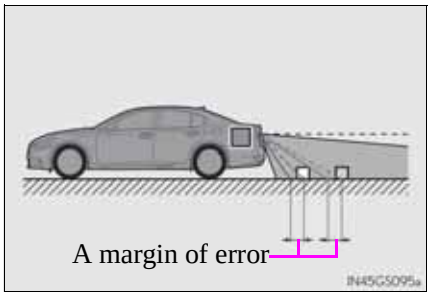
The distance guide lines will appear to be further from the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be closer than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guidelines and the actual distance/course on the road.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۵ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

- When any part of the vehicle sags

When any part of the vehicle sags due to the number of passengers or the distribution of the load, there is a margin of error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance/course on the road.

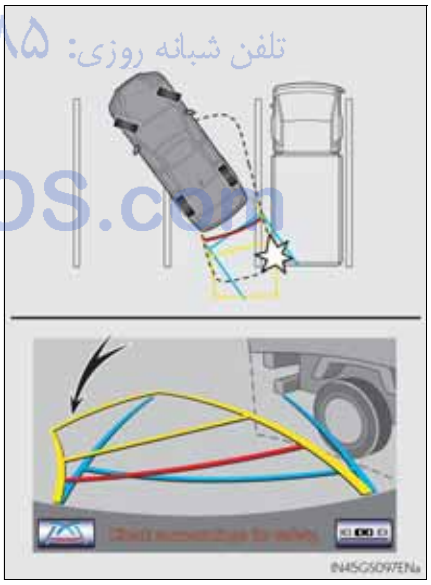


■ When approaching three-dimensional objects

The estimated course lines target a flat surfaced objects (such as the road). It is not possible to determine the position of three-dimensional objects (such as vehicles) using the estimated course lines and distance guide lines. When approaching a three-dimensional object that extends outward (such as the flatbed of a truck), be careful of the following.

- Estimated course lines

Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. In the case shown in the illustration, the truck appears to be outside of the estimated course lines and the vehicle does not look as if it hits the truck. However, the rear body of the truck may actually cross over the estimated course lines. In reality if you back up as guided by the estimated course lines, the vehicle may hit the truck.

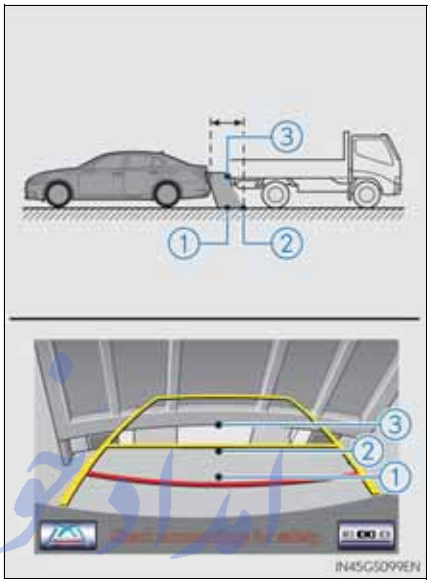


Estimated course lines

FarmaSOS.com

● Distance guidelines

Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. On the screen, it appears that a truck is parking at point ②. However, in reality if you back up to point ①, you will hit the truck. On the screen, it appears that ① is closest and ③ is furthest away. However, in reality, the distance to ① and ③ is the same and ② is farther than ① and ③.



امداد خودرو فارا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Things you should know

■ If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, refer to the likely cause and the solution, and re-check.

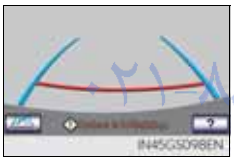
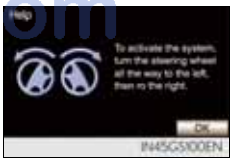
If the symptom is not resolved by the solution, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is difficult to see	• The vehicle is in a dark area • The temperature around the lens is either high or low • The outside temperature is low • There are water droplets on the camera • It is raining or humid • Foreign matter (mud etc.) is adhering to the camera • There are scratches on the camera • Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the camera • The vehicle is under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights etc.	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings. (Use the monitor again once conditions have been improved.) To adjust the image on the parking assist monitor screen. (→P. 372)

FarmaSOS.com

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is blurry	Dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud etc.) is adhering to the camera.	Rinse the camera lens with water and wipe it clean with a soft cloth. Wash with a mild soap if the dirt is stubborn.
The image is out of alignment	The camera or surrounding area has received a strong impact.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
The guide lines are very far out of alignment	The camera position is out of alignment.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
The estimated course lines move even though the steering wheel is straight	There is a malfunction in the signals being output by the steering sensor.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
Guide lines are not displayed	The trunk lid is open.	Close the trunk lid. If this does not resolve the symptom, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
"System is initializing." is displayed 	• The battery has been reinstalled. • The steering wheel has been moved while the battery was being reinstalled. • Battery power is low. • The steering sensor has been reinstalled. • There is a malfunction in the signals being output by the steering sensor.	Stop the vehicle, and turn the steering wheel as far as it will go to the left and right. If this does not resolve the symptom, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. • On the system initialization screen, select the "?" button to display the operating procedure. 

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When using the Lexus parking assist monitor system

When backing up, be sure to check visually behind and all around the vehicle before proceeding.

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- The parking assist monitor is a supplemental device intended to assist the driver when backing up. Never depend on the parking assist monitor entirely when backing up. Always make sure your intended path is clear. Use caution, just as you would when backing up any vehicle.
- Never back up while looking only at the screen.
  The image shown on the screen may differ from the actual state, and you could collide with another vehicle or obstacles if backing up looking only at the screen, possibly causing an accident. When backing up, be sure to check in front of and behind the vehicle, both directly and with mirrors.
- Be sure to back up slowly, depressing the brake pedal to control vehicle speed.
- If you seem likely to hit nearby vehicles, obstacles, people or mount the shoulder, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, then disable the assist system by select  on the screen to cancel the system.
- The instructions given are only guidelines.
  When and how much to turn the steering wheel will vary according to traffic conditions, road surface conditions, vehicle condition, etc. when parking. It is necessary to be fully aware of this before using the parking assist system.
- When parking, be sure to check that the parking space will accommodate your vehicle before maneuvering into it.
- Do not use system in the following cases:
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow
  - When using tire chains or emergency tires
  - When the trunk lid is not closed completely
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

- In low temperatures, the screen may darken or the image may become faint. The image could distort when the vehicle is moving, or you may become unable to see the image on the screen. Be sure to check direct visually and with mirror all around the vehicle before proceeding.
- If the tire sizes are changed, the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may change.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distances between objects and pedestrians that appear in the image displayed on the screen will differ from the actual distances. (→P. 316)

■ When using the perpendicular parking assist screen

- The position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may change in accordance with the number of passengers, the amount of cargo etc. Be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle direct visually and with mirror before proceeding.
- Estimated course line display mode: If the steering wheel is straight and the vehicle width extension guide lines and the estimated course lines are not in alignment, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- The vehicle width extension guide lines are wider than the actual width of the vehicle. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle direct visually and with mirror before proceeding.

■ When using the parallel parking assist screen

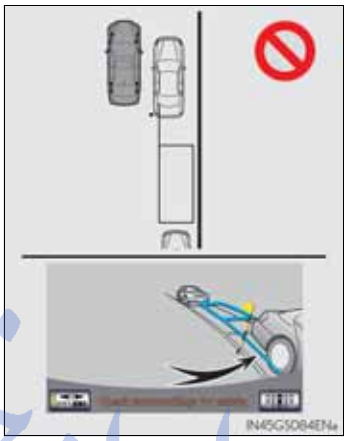
- Do not use the system if the display is incorrect due to an uneven (curvy/hilly) road or a non-straight road.
- Make sure to operate the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.
- Be sure to check that there are no obstacles inside the blue outline.
  If there are any obstacles inside the blue outline, do not use the parallel parking assist.
- When positioning the blue outline over the parking space, be sure to position it so that the extended blue line may not cross the tire of the vehicle parked in front of the empty space.

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

- If the extended line of the blue outline may be crossing the parked vehicle, your vehicle is too close. Check that there is a gap of approximately 1 m (3 ft.) between your vehicle and the parked vehicle.

  Extended line overlapping wheel



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

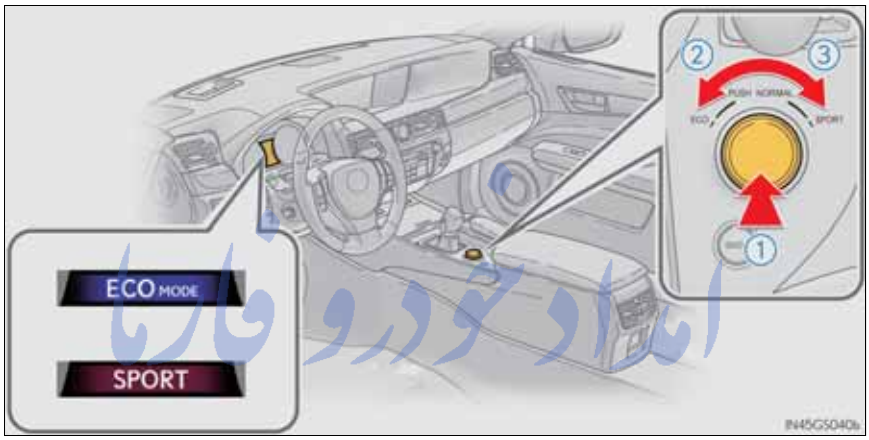
■ How to use the camera

- The parking assist monitor may not operate properly in the following cases, or if the precautions described below are not followed.
  - If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change.
  - As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
  - Do not strongly rub the camera lens. If the camera lens is scratched, it cannot transmit a clear image.
  - Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
  - If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
  - When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.
  - When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium light or mercury light etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.
- Do not expose the camera to strong impact as this could cause a malfunction. If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

FarmaSOS.com

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving condition.

Vehicles without AVS



① Normal mode

For normal driving

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when selected to Eco mode or sport mode.

② Eco drive mode

Use Eco mode to help achieve low fuel consumption during trips that involve frequent accelerating.

When the driving mode select switch is turned left, the “ECO MODE” indicator comes on in the multi-information display.

آماد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

③ Sport mode

Improves acceleration response by controlling the transmission and steering. Suitable for when precise handling is desirable, for example when driving on mountain roads.

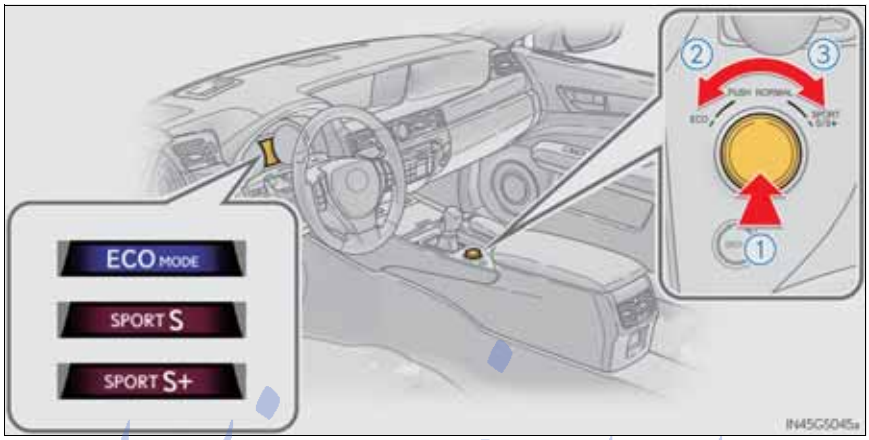
When the driving mode select switch is turned right, the “SPORT” indicator comes on in the instrument cluster.

Also, on vehicles equipped with a 12.3-inch display, the driving mode is also automatically displayed on the “Side Display”. (→P. 370)



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Vehicles with AVS



① Normal mode

For normal driving.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when selected to Eco mode or sport mode.

② Eco drive mode

Use Eco mode to help achieve low fuel consumption during trips that involve frequent accelerating.

When the driving mode select switch is turned left, the “ECO MODE” indicator comes on in the multi-information display.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

③ Sport mode

- SPORT S mode

Improves acceleration response by controlling the transmission. Suitable for when precise handling is desirable, for example when driving on mountain roads.

When the driving mode select switch is turned right while a made other than SPORT S mode is selected, the “SPORT S” indicator comes on in the instrument cluster.

Also, on vehicles equipped with a 12.3-inch display, the driving mode is also automatically displayed on the “Side Display”. (→P. 370)



- SPORT S+ mode

Improves steering performance and driving stability by simultaneously controlling the steering and suspension in addition to the transmission. Suitable for sporty driving.

When the driving mode select switch is turned right while SPORT S mode is selected, the “SPORT S+” indicator comes on in the instrument cluster.

Also, on vehicles equipped with a 12.3-inch display, the driving mode is also automatically displayed on the “Side Display”. (→P. 370)



امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency (→P. 409). To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ Automatic operation of the seat heater during Eco drive mode

If the driving mode select switch is switched to Eco drive mode in cold temperatures, the seat heater will be automatically operated to assist heating performance.

■ Sport mode automatic deactivation

Sport mode is automatically deactivated if the engine switch is turned off after driving in sport mode.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

◆ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

◆ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

◆ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

◆ VSC+ (Vehicle Stability Control+)

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS. Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

◆ TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

◆ Hill-start assist control

→P. 341

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

◆ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

◆ AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension system) (if equipped)

By independently controlling the damping force of the shock absorbers for each of the 4 wheels according to the road and driving conditions, this system combines riding comfort with superior steering stability, and ensures good vehicle posture. (→P. 328)

◆ VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control and EPS systems

Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, engine output, steering assist, and steering ratio

◆ PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) (if equipped)

→P. 343

◆ Emergency brake signal

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲ ۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

When the TRC/VSC systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC systems are operating.



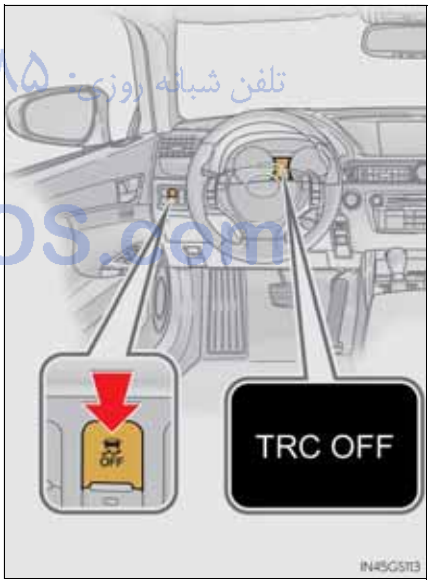
Disabling the TRC/VSC systems

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, the TRC and VSC systems may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

■ Turning off the TRC system only

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release the button.

The “TRC OFF” will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the button again to turn the system back on.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Turning off both TRC and VSC systems

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold the button for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the “TRC OFF” will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to turn the systems back on.



ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if the VSC OFF switch has not been pressed

TRC cannot be operated. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC and TRC systems

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ EPS operation sound

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Reactivation of the TRC/VSC systems

Even after the TRC/VSC systems have been turned off, turning the engine off and then on again will automatically reactivate the TRC/VSC systems.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Reactivation of the TRC system linked to vehicle speed

When only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases. However, when both TRC and VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result.* Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The effectiveness will improve after a short while.

*: If the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) system cannot operate in this case, a warning message will be shown on the multi-information display.

■ Operating conditions of emergency brake signal

When the following three conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The brake pedal is depressed in a manner that cause the system to judge from the vehicle deceleration that this is a sudden braking operation.

■ Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal

The emergency brake signal will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- Tires with inadequate gripping ability are used (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ TRC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC system is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Hill-start assist control

Assists with starting off and temporarily maintains braking power even if the foot is removed from the brake pedal when starting off on an incline or a slippery slope.

To engage hill-start assist control, further depress the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped completely.



A buzzer will sound once to indicate the system is activated. The slip indicator will also start flashing.

امداد خودرو فارما

■ Hill-start assist control operating conditions

- The system operates in the following situations:
  - The shift lever is in a position other than P.
  - The parking brake is not applied.
  - The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- Hill-start assist control cannot be operated while the slip indicator light is illuminated.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵

■ Hill-start assist control

FarmaSOS.com

- While hill-start assist control is operating, the brakes remain automatically applied after the driver releases the brake pedal. The stop lights and the high mounted stoplight turn on.
- Hill-start assist control operates for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.
- If the slip indicator does not flash and the buzzer does not sound when the brake pedal is further depressed, slightly reduce the pressure on the brake pedal (do not allow the vehicle to roll backward) and then firmly depress it again. If the system still does not operate, check that the operating conditions explained above have been met.

■ Hill-start assist control buzzer

- When hill-start assist control is activated, the buzzer will sound once.
- In the following situations, hill-start assist control will be canceled and the buzzer will sound twice.
  - No attempt is made to drive the vehicle within approximately 2 seconds of releasing the brake pedal.
  - The shift lever is moved to P.
  - The parking brake is applied.
  - The brake pedal is depressed again.
  - The brake pedal has been depressed for more than approximately 3 minutes.

■ If the slip indicator comes on

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Hill-start assist control

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

When the radar sensor detects that a frontal collision is highly likely or even unavoidable, safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact as well as vehicle damage.

The pre-crash safety system can be turned on and off as necessary by operating the switch. (→P. 344)

Pre-crash seat belts (front seat only)

If the pre-crash sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-crash safety system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs.
The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 40)

Pre-crash brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-crash braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to reduce the collision speed.

*: If equipped

ایراد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Suspension control (if equipped)

When the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the operation of AVS (→P. 334) optimally controls the damping force of the shock absorber.

Driver monitor system (if equipped)

When the system determines that there is a possibility of a collision, and either the driver is not facing forward or the driver's eyes are closed, PCS warnings are given in advance to warn the driver. If the system determines that the conditions to operate pre-crash alert braking have been met even when the possibility of a collision increases further, pre-crash alert braking will operate.

Disabling pre-crash safety system

① Enabled

② Disabled

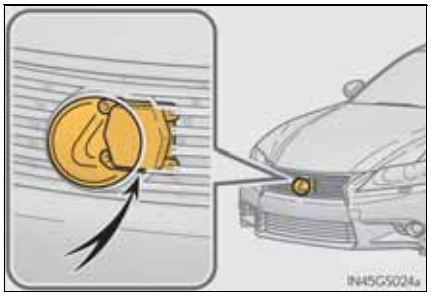
The "PCS" warning light comes on when pre-crash safety system is disabled.



امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Radar sensor

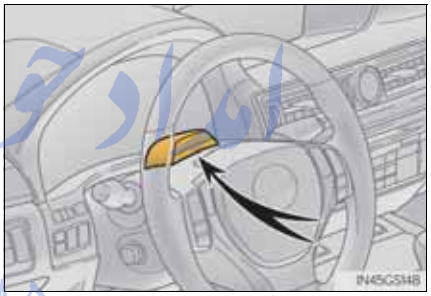
The radar sensor detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.



Driver monitor sensor (if equipped)

The driver monitor sensor detects the direction the driver is facing and whether the driver's eyes are open or closed.

The system determines whether the driver is facing forward and whether or not the driver's eyes are closed.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ The pre-crash safety system is operational when

The pre-crash safety system off button is not pressed and the following conditions are met:

- Pre-crash warning:
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 15 km/h (10 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle is greater than about 15 km/h (10 mph).
- Pre-crash seat belts (operating conditions A):
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Pre-crash seat belts (operating conditions B):
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 5 km/h (4 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Pre-crash brake assist:
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
- Pre-crash braking:
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 15 km/h (10 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 15 km/h (10 mph).
- Suspension control:
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 5 km/h (4 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

- Pre-crash alert braking:
  - The system determines that the driver is not facing forward, or that the driver's eyes are closed.
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 40 km/h (25 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 40 km/h (25 mph).
  - The steering is not being turned.

■ Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no danger of a collision

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn (left-hand drive vehicles) or right-turn (right-hand drive vehicles)
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
- When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When climbing a steep hill causes an overhead billboard or other metallic structure to appear directly in the vehicle's line of travel

When the system is activated in the situations described above, there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten it.

■ Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as traffic cones. There may also be occasions when the sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Situations in which the pre-crash safety system does not function properly

The system may not function effectively in situations such as the following:

- On roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces
- If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection
- If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle, such as when overtaking
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- When your vehicle is skidding such as the VSC system off
- When your vehicle is steeply inclined

■ Automatic cancelation of the pre-crash safety system

When a malfunction occurs due to sensor contamination, etc. that results in the sensors being unable to detect obstacles, the pre-crash safety system will be automatically disabled. In this case, the system will not activate even if there is a collision possibility.

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

"PCS" warning light will flash and warning messages will be displayed. (→P. 751, 759)

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Certification

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR004 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að DNMWR004 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR004 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR004 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR004 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR004 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝ ΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR004 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR004 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR004 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR004 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR004 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

FarmaSOS.com

Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR004 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR004 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret DNMWR004 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR004 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR004 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR004 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR004 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR004 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR004 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Ar šo, DENSO CORPORATION, deklarē, ka DNMWR004 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR004 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

ایران خودرو فایل
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Limitations of the pre-crash safety system

Do not overly rely on the pre-crash safety system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-crash safety system can function effectively. Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

■ Determining the direction the driver is facing and whether the driver's eyes are open or closed

The direction the driver is facing and whether the driver's eyes are open or closed may not be determined correctly if the following conditions exist:

- There is an object between the driver monitor sensor and the driver's face, such as when the sensor is blocked.
- A part of the driver's face is covered.
- The sensor or the driver's face is exposed to intense light such as sunlight.
- The driving posture is improper.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Handling the driver monitor sensor

Observe the following to ensure the driver monitor sensor can function effectively.

Failure to do so may result in a malfunction or may prevent the system from correctly determining the direction the driver is facing, resulting in an unexpected accident.

- Do not disassemble, damage, lift or pull on the sensor.
- Do not touch the sensor while driving.
- Do not wet or spill water on the sensor.
- Do not drop anything on or allow anything to hit against the sensor. Do not subject the sensor to an impact.
- Make sure that there are no scratches, dirt or stickers on the side of the sensor that faces the driver.
- Do not place any objects in front of the side of the sensor that faces the driver or cover the sensor.

امداد خودروها
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-crash safety system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-crash safety system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgment
  When attempting to estimate the likelihood of a collision, the only data available to the pre-crash safety system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-crash safety system's braking assist feature is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system by itself is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

FarmaSOS.com

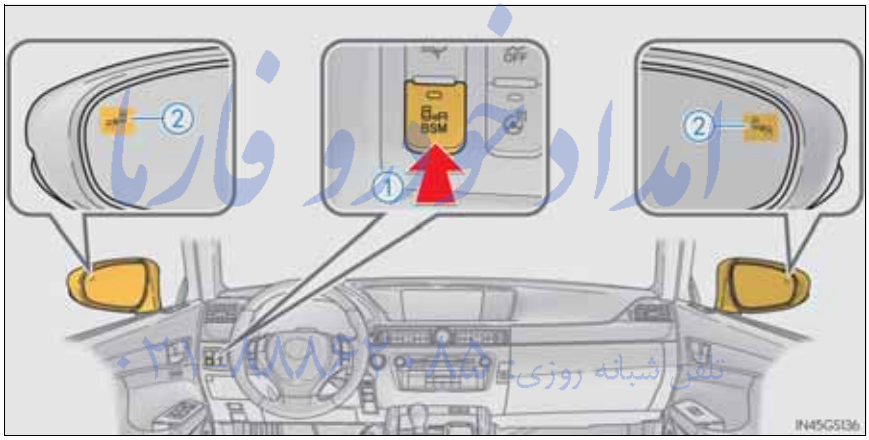
NOTICE

■ Precautions for cleaning the driver monitor sensor

- Gently wipe the sensor with a soft cloth to prevent damage.
- Wipe any excess dirt with a cloth dampened with neutral detergent, all liquids having been wringed out of the cloth. After that, wipe again with a dry cloth.
- Do not use benzene, thinner, glass cleaners, wax, etc.

The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that assists the driver to confirm safety when changing lanes.

The system uses radar sensors to detect vehicles that are traveling in an adjacent lane in the area that is not reflected in the outside rear view mirror (the blind spot), and advises the driver of the vehicles existence via the outside rear view mirror indicator.



امداد خودرو فارنا
FarnaSOS.com

① BSM main switch

Pressing the switch turns the system on or off. When the switch is set to on, the switch's indicator illuminates.

② Outside rear view mirror indicator

When a vehicle is detected in the blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on that side illuminates. If the turn signal lever is operated when a vehicle is in the blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator flashes.

*: If equipped

The Blind Spot Monitor detection areas

The blind spot that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.

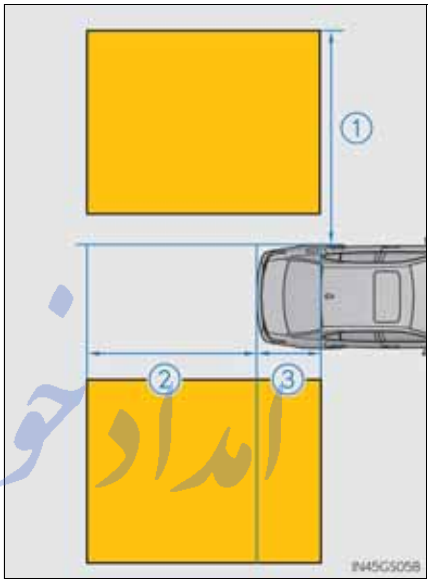
The range of the detection area extends to:

① Approximately 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from the side of the vehicle

The first 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle is not in the detection area

② Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

③ Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ The Blind Spot Monitor system is operational when

The BSM main switch is set to on and vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle when

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

■ Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor will not detect a vehicle

The Blind Spot Monitor system is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles driving 2 lanes across from your vehicle*

*: Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor system may not function correctly

● The Blind Spot Monitor system may not detect vehicles correctly in the following conditions:

- During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow etc.
- When ice or mud etc. is attached to the rear bumper
- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, standing water etc.
- When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- When a vehicle is in the detection area from a stop and remains in the detection area as your vehicle accelerates
- When driving up or down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, a dip in the road etc.
- When multiple vehicles approach with only a small gap between each vehicle
- When vehicle lanes are wide, and the vehicle in the next lane is too far away from your vehicle
- When the vehicle that enters the detection area is traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- Directly after the BSM switch is set to on
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer

● Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase under the following conditions:

- When there is only a short distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall etc.
- When there is only a short distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle
- When vehicle lanes are narrow and a vehicle driving 2 lanes across from your vehicle enters the detection area

■ The outside rear view mirror indicators visibility

When under strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

If a system malfunction is detected due to any of the following reasons, warning messages will be displayed: (→P. 762, 768)

● There is a malfunction with the sensors

● The sensors have become dirty

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

- The outside temperature is extremely high or low
- The sensor voltage has become abnormal

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Certification for the BSM

Continental

Chassis & Safety

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

We,

A.D.C. Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH,
Peter-Dornier-Strasse 10, 88131, Lindau, Germany

declare under our sole responsibility, that the product

BSDTX

manufactured by:

Conti Temic microelectronic GmbH,
Ringlerstraße 17, 85057 Ingolstadt, Germany

with intended use:

blind spot monitoring sensor for passenger cars and trucks

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose.
The product is in conformity with the following standards and/or normative documents

Essential requirements	Specifications / Standards
Safety (R&TTE, Article 3.1a)	EN 60950-1: 2006
EMC (R&TTE, Article 3.1a)	EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1
Efficient use of spectrum (R&TTE, Article 3.2)	EN 302 288-2, V1.3.2

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Subject products are manufactured and tested according to appropriate quality control procedures.
Modifications from tested type do not influence the characteristics of the radar system.

A.D.C. Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH, Lindau, 2011-05-05

Wolfgang Fey
Director Development

Dr. Frank Gruson
Frequency Management Worldwide

A.D.C.
Automotive Distance Control
Systems GmbH
Peter-Dornier-Strasse 10
88131 Lindau

Phone 08382 9699-0
Fax 08382 9699-19
www.continental-corporation.com

Registered Office:
Lindau
Registered Court:
Amtsgericht Kempten
HR B 6406
Vat-No DE 812185464
Tax-No 127 121 20175

Executive Board
Dr. Andreas Brand
Norbert Hammerschmidt
Wolfgang Fey

Bank Account at
Deutsche Bank AG,
Friedrichshafen
NBIC: 650 700 84
Account No. 34 000 82

PartaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

▶ For vehicles sold in Russia

type approval number РОСС DE.AB68.B03800



▶ For vehicles sold in Ukraine

type approval number UA1.030.0025321-11



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

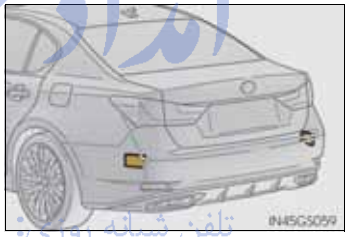
■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.
The Blind Spot Monitor is a supplementary system which alerts the driver that a vehicle is present in the blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor system. The system cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, therefore over reliance could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury. According to conditions, the system may not function correctly. Therefore the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

■ Handling the radar sensor

One Blind Spot Monitor sensor is installed inside the left and right side of the vehicle rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor system can function correctly.

- Keep the sensor and its surrounding area on the bumper clean at all times.



- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper to a strong impact. If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles that enter the detection area may not be detected. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not paint the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.*

  Ensure that all tires are the specified size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

*: Tire chains cannot be mounted on the 19 inch tires.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

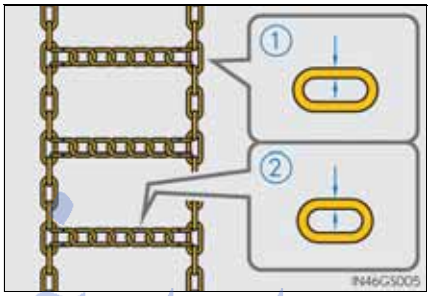
Selecting tire chains

▶ Vehicles without 19 inch tires

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.

① Side chain
(3 mm [0.12 in.] in diameter)

② Cross chain
(4 mm [0.16 in.] in diameter)



▶ Vehicles with 19 inch tires

Tire chains cannot be mounted on the 19 inch tires.

Snow tires should be used instead.

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

ایران خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Shifting the windshield wiper position

If heavy snow or icy condition is expected, shift the rest position manually.

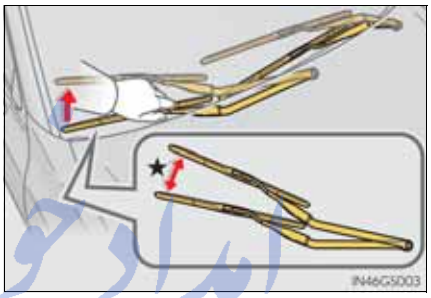
Grip the hook section of the wiper arm firmly when shifting the wiper position.

■ To rest position

Raise the wiper in line with the windshield.

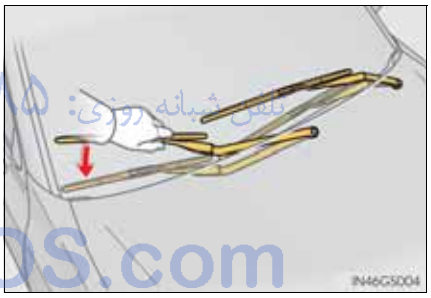
You can stand the wipers up for the rest position.

: More than 10 cm (3.9 in.)



■ To retract position

Lower the wipers by pressing on the upper part of the hook section.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires. Do not install tire chains on the front tires.
- Install tire chains on rear tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 — 1.0 km (1/4 — 1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

CAUTION

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.
- Do not use LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) system.

■ Driving with tire chains (vehicles without 19 inch tires)

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, as well as sudden braking and shifting operation to engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) system.

FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ Fitting tire chains (vehicles without 19 inch tires)

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

■ When standing the windshield wipers up

Raise the wipers in line with the windshield. (→P. 362)
Failure to do so may result in damage to the wipers and/or the hood.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

5-1. Remote Touch screen
Remote Touch 368
Remote Touch screen 370
Set up screen 382
Speech command system .. 401
5-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
Front automatic air conditioning system ... 409
Rear air conditioning system ... 425
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers 430
Windshield wiper de-icer .. 431
5-3. Using the audio system
Audio system type 432
Using the radio..... 457
Using the CD/DVD player 465
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs 467
Playing DVD video 473
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information 486
Listening to Bluetooth® audio 496
Listening to a USB memory 508
Listening to an iPod 519
Optimal use of the audio/video system ... 530
Using the AUX port..... 533
Using the rear seat audio controls 534
Using the steering wheel audio switches 539

FarmaSOS.com

Interior features 5

5-4. Using the hands-free phone system (for cellular phone)

Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 542

Using a Bluetooth® phone..... 556

Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone) 575

Setting the Bluetooth® 598

5-5. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list..... 611

• Interior light..... 612

• Personal lights..... 612

5-6. Using the storage features

List of storage features 614

• Glove box 616

• Console box..... 617

• Cup holders 618

• Auxiliary boxes 620

Trunk features..... 621

5-7. Other interior features

Sun visors and vanity mirrors 624

Clock..... 625

Ashtrays 626

Power outlets 627

Heated steering wheel..... 629

Seat heaters/ seat ventilators..... 631

Armrest 635

Rear sunshade/ rear door sunshades 636

Trunk storage extension.... 639

Coat hooks 640

Assist grip 641

Utility hook..... 642

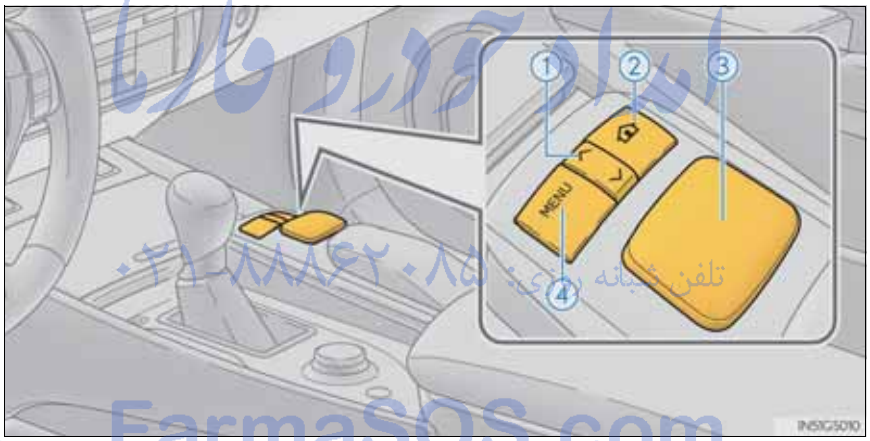
For vehicles sold outside Europe, some of the functions cannot be operated while driving.

FarmaSOS.com

Remote Touch

The Remote Touch can be used to operate the Remote Touch screens.
Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

The illustration below is for left-hand drive vehicles without navigation system.
The button positions may differ slightly for right-hand drive vehicles.



FarmaSOS.com

① “∧•∨” button

Press this button to change map scale and scroll through lists.

② “HOME” button

Press this button to display the home screen.

③ Remote Touch knob

Use this knob to move the cursor and select items on the screen.
Feedback force, pointer sound volume, on or off of selection sounds etc. can be changed.

④ “MENU” button

Press this button to display the “Menu” screen.

CAUTION

■ When using the Remote Touch

- Do not allow fingers, fingernails or hair to become caught in the Remote Touch as this may cause an injury.
- Be careful when selecting the Remote Touch in extreme temperatures as it may become very hot or cold due to the temperature inside the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the Remote Touch

- Do not allow the Remote Touch to come into contact with food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes as doing so may cause it to change color, emit a strange odor or stop functioning.
- Do not subject the Remote Touch to excessive pressure or strong impact as the knob may bend or break off.
- Do not allow coins, contact lenses or other such items to become caught in the Remote Touch as this may cause it to stop functioning.
- Items of clothing may rip if they become caught on the Remote Touch knob.
- If your hand or any object is on the Remote Touch knob when the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode, the Remote Touch knob may not operate properly.

FarmaSOS.com

Remote Touch screen

By using the Remote Touch, you can control the audio system and air conditioning system, and adjust the screen display etc.

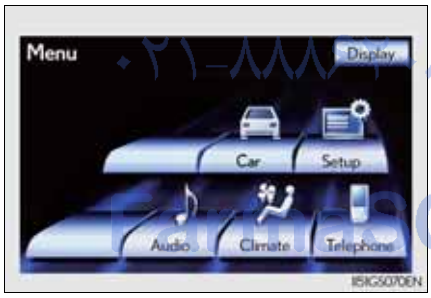
Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display: Different information can be displayed on the left and right of the screen. The 8-inch display area on the left of the screen is called the “Main Display”, and the area to the right is called the “Side Display”. For details, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۴۸۸
Farmapos.com

“Menu” screen

- Vehicles without navigation system



- Vehicles with a 8-inch display navigation system



- Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display navigation system



Switch	Page
“Car”	P. 378
“Info”	Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Setup”	P. 382
“Navi”	Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Audio”	P. 432, 467
“Climate”	P. 409
“Telephone”	P. 542
“Display”	P. 372

Initial screen

If the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the initial screen will be displayed for a few seconds as the system starts up.



Images shown on the initial screen can be changed to suit individual preferences. (→P. 389)

FarmaSOS.com

Adjusting the display

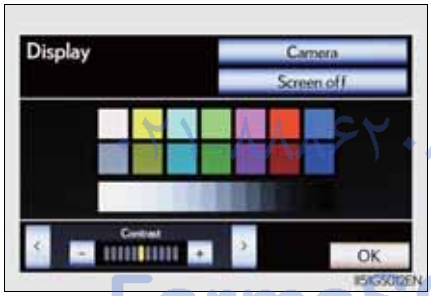
The contrast and brightness of the screen display and the image the camera displays can be adjusted. (For information regarding audio/video screen adjustment: →P. 480)

1 Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch and select “Display” on the “Menu” screen.

2 Select “Map•Menu”/“Menu” or “Camera” to display the desired screen.

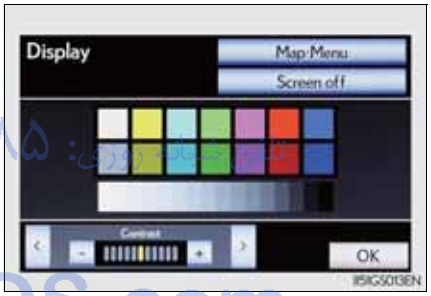
▶ Display screen (“Map•Menu”/“Menu”)

If the map menu adjust screen does not appear, select “Map•Menu”/“Menu”.



▶ Display screen (“Camera”)

If the camera adjust screen does not appear, select “Camera”.



3 Select “<” or “>” to select the desired function (“Contrast” or “Brightness”) and then select the desired screen button to adjust contrast and brightness.

	“-”	“+”
“Contrast”	Weaker	Stronger
“Brightness”	Darker	Brighter

4 After adjusting the screen, select “OK”.

امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

■ To avoid damaging the Remote Touch screen

Remove any dirt on the screen by wiping with a soft cloth. Do not use detergent.

■ When using the Remote Touch screen

- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- When the screen is viewed through polarized sunglasses, a rainbow pattern may appear on the screen due to optical characteristics of the screen. If this is disturbing, please operate the screen without polarized sunglasses.
- Dimmed screen buttons cannot be operated.

■ Changing between day mode and night mode

To display the screen in day mode, even with the headlight switch on, select “Day mode” for brightness and contrast control.



If the screen is set to day mode with the headlight switch turned on, this condition is memorized even with the engine turned off.

The display condition is not changed to night mode even if the headlight switch is turned on when the vehicle is in a bright area such as daytime.

■ To turn off the display

The display goes off when “Screen off” is selected. To turn the “Display” screen back on, select any button. The selected screen appears.

FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

Inputting letters and numbers/list screen operation

Letters and numbers can be input via the screen.

■ To input letters and numbers/symbols

Select the keys directly to enter letters, numbers or symbols.

▶ Letters and numbers ▶ Symbols





, : Select to erase one character. Select and hold to continue erasing characters.

: To change letters, numbers or symbols

, : To display other symbols

: To enter in lower case

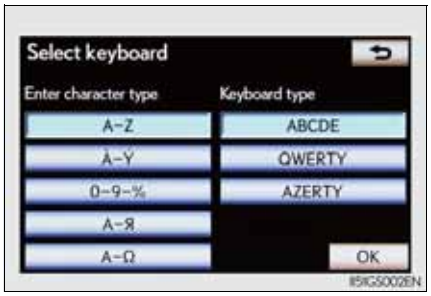
: To enter in upper case

FarmaSOS.com

■ To change character and keyboard type

1 Select [abc] on the screen.

2 Select desired character and keyboard and select “OK”.



● Selecting a character type

▶ “A-Z” type



▶ [А–Я] type



▶ [А–Ω] type



▶ [A–Ý] type

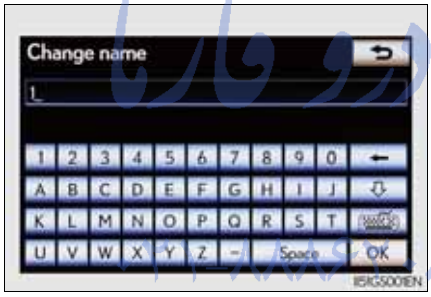


▶ “0-9-%” type

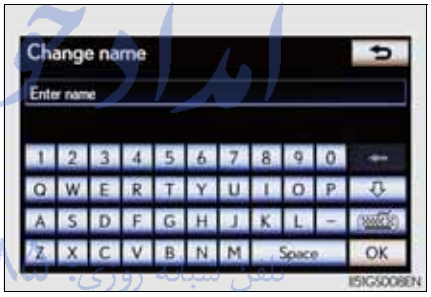


● Selecting a keyboard type

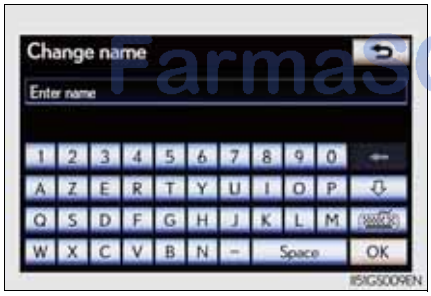
▶ “ABCDE” type



▶ “QWERTY” type



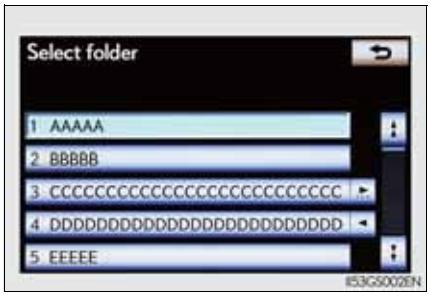
▶ “AZERTY” type



FarmaSOS.com

■ List screen operation

When a list is displayed, use the appropriate screen button to scroll through the list.



: Select to skip to the next or previous page. Select and hold or to scroll through the displayed list.

: This indicates the displayed screen's position.

: If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the display. Select to scroll to the end of the name. Select to move to the beginning of the name.

■ If you select

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ Selecting a character type

Depending on the conditions data is being input, it may not possible to change keyboard characters.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۶ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

Fuel consumption

Fuel consumption information from recent resets will be displayed. Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display: The fuel consumption information can be displayed and operated on the “Side Display”. For details, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Car” on the “Menu” screen.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Past record

If the “Past record” screen does not appear, select “Past record” on the “Trip information” screen.



① Updating the average fuel consumption data

② Resetting the past record data

③ Best recorded fuel economy

④ Average

⑤ Current fuel economy

⑥ Previous fuel economy record

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last reset. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Trip information

If the “Trip information” screen does not appear, select “Trip information” on the “Past record” screen.



① Resetting the consumption data

② Current fuel consumption per minute

③ Previous fuel consumption per minute

④ Average speed

⑤ Elapsed time

⑥ Cruising range

Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the engine switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Updating the past record data

Update the average fuel consumption by selecting “Update” to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ Resetting the data

The data can be deleted by selecting “Clear”.

■ Cruising range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.
This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Set up screen

You can change the Remote Touch screen to your desired settings. Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system



▶ Vehicles with a navigation system



Switch	Page
“General”	P. 383/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Voice”	P. 398/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Navigation”	Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Vehicle”	P. 399/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Telephone”	P. 400
“Bluetooth*”	P. 400
“Audio”	P. 401
“Info”	Navigation System Owner’s Manual

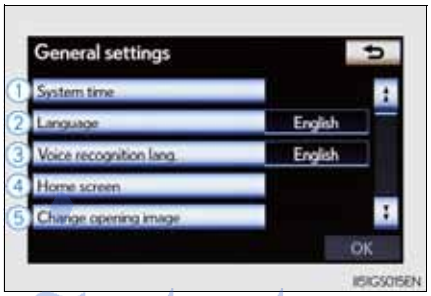
*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

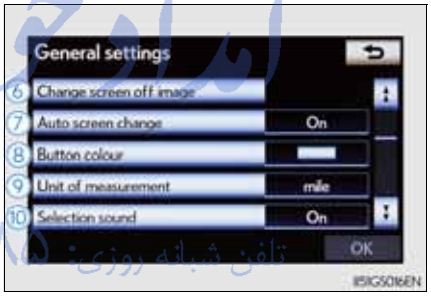
FarmaSOS.com

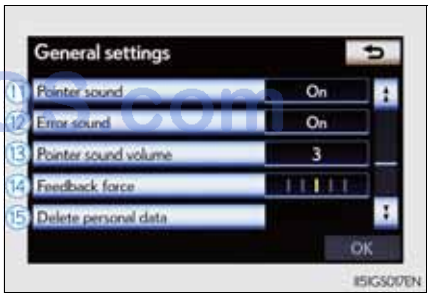
General settings

This screen is used for language selection and the on/off settings of operation sounds and automatic screen change, etc.

Select “General” on the “Setup” screen.







① System time settings

② Selecting a language

③ Selecting a voice recognition language

④ Changing home screen*1

⑤ Changing the opening image

⑥ Changing the screen off image

⑦ Auto screen change*2

⑧ Selecting a button color

⑨ Unit of measurement*2

⑩ Selection sound on/off

⑪ Pointer sound on/off

⑫ Error sound on/off

⑬ Pointer sound volume settings

⑭ Setting a feedback force

⑮ Delete personal data

⑯ Software update*3

Select “OK” after changing settings.

*1: Vehicles with a 8-inch display navigation system.

*2: Vehicles with a navigation system.

*3: For details, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or



another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ System time settings

Used for changing time zones and the on/off settings of daylight saving time.

1 Select “System time” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select the items to be set.

① Time zone

② Daylight saving time



3 Select “OK”.

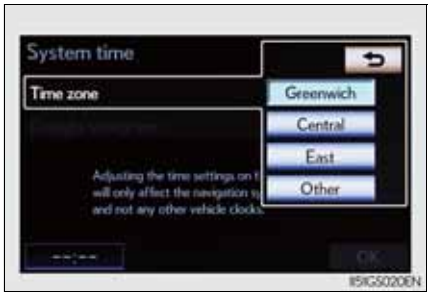
● Time zone

A time zone can be selected and GMT can be set.

1 Select “Time zone”.



2 Select the desired time zone.



امداد خودرو فارا
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸
FarmaSOS.com

If “Other” is selected, the zone can be adjusted manually. Select “+” or “-” to adjust the time zone and then select “OK”.



- Daylight saving time

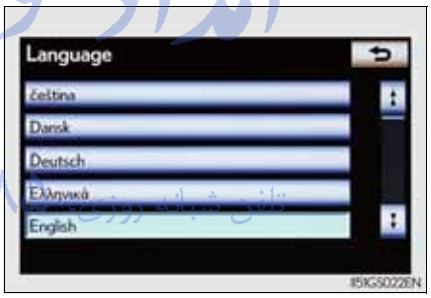
  To select “On” or “Off” for daylight saving time.

■ Selecting a language

The language can be changed.

1. Select “Language” on the “General settings” screen.
2. Select the desired screen button.

   The previous screen will be displayed.



3. Select “OK”.

FarmaSOS.com

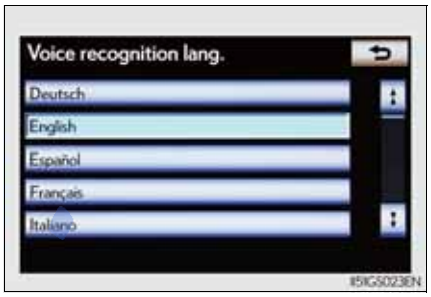
■ Selecting a voice recognition language

The voice recognition language can be changed.

1 Select “Voice recognition lang.” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select the desired screen button.

A confirmation message will be displayed. Select “Yes” to complete the settings and return to the “General setting” screen.



3 Select “OK”.

■ Home screen settings (except for 12.3-inch display)

Changing between the audio and fuel consumption screens, and the displaying of the climate screen can be set on or off.

1 Select “Home screen” on the “General settings” screen.

The “Home screen” can also be accessed by pressing the “HOME” button on the Remote touch.

2 Select the items to be set.



3 Select “OK”.

FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

■ Unit of measurement (vehicles with a navigation system)

Distance unit can be changed.

This function is available only in English. To change language, see “Selecting a language”. (→P. 386)

1 Select “Unit of measurement” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select “km” or “mile”.



3 Select “OK”.

■ Selecting a button color

The colour of the screen buttons can be changed.

1 Select “Button color” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select the desired screen button color.

The previous screen will be displayed.



3 Select “OK”.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

■ Changing the opening image

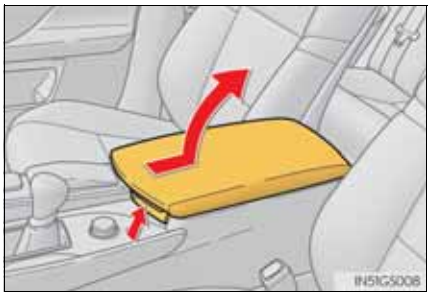
An image can be copied from a USB memory and used as the opening image.

When saving the images to a USB memory, name the folder that the opening image is saved to “StartupImage”. If these folder names are not used, the system cannot download the images. (The folder names are case sensitive.)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

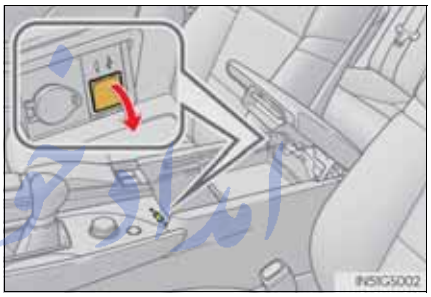
● Transferring data

1 Open the console box.



2 Open the cover and connect a USB memory.

Turn on the power of the USB memory if it is not turned on.



3 Close the console box.

4 Select “Change opening image” on the “General settings” screen.

5 Select “Transfer”.



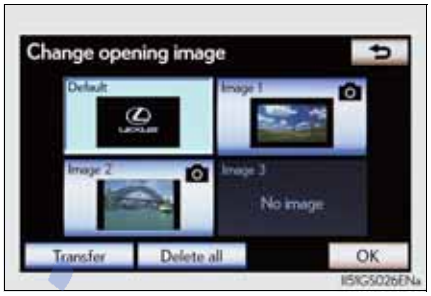
6 Select “Yes”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

● Setting the opening image

1 Select “Change opening image” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select the desired image.



3 Select “OK”.

● Deleting transferred image

1 Select “Change opening image” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select “Delete all”.



3 Select “Yes”.

امداد خودرو فارا
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

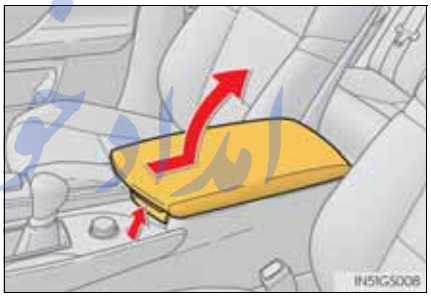
■ Changing the screen off image

Select “Screen off” on the “Display” screen to turn off the screen. An image can be copied from a USB memory and can be set to display when “Screen off” is selected.

When saving the images to a USB memory, name the folder that the screen off image is saved to “DisplayOffImage”. If these folder names are not used, the system cannot download the images. (The folder names are case sensitive.)

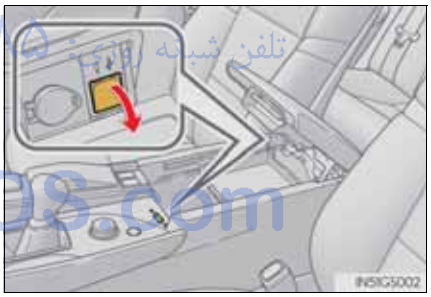
● Transferring data

1 Open the console box.



2 Open the cover and connect a USB memory.

Turn on the power of the USB memory if it is not turned on.

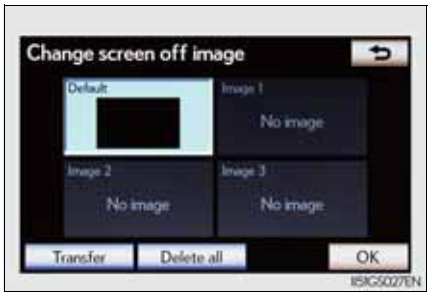


3 Close the console box.

4 Select “Change screen off image” on the “General settings” screen.

FarmaSOS.com

5 Select “Transfer”.



6 Select “Yes”.

● Setting the screen off image

1 Select “Change screen off image” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select the desired image.

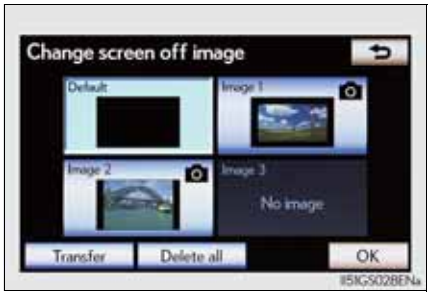


3 Select “OK”.

● Deleting transferred images

1 Select “Change screen off image” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select “Delete all”.



3 Select “Yes”.

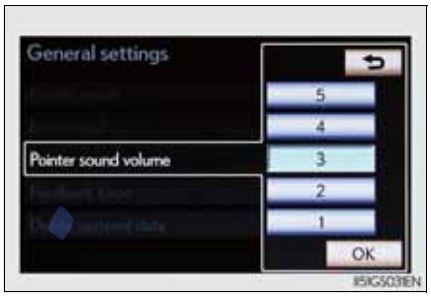
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۰
FarmaSOS.com

■ Pointer sound volume settings

The pointer sound volume can be adjusted.

1 Select “Pointer Sound Volume” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select the desired button.



3 Select “OK”, and then “OK”.

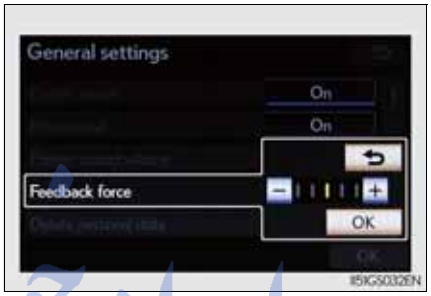
امداد خودرو فارنا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Setting a feedback force

When the pointer moves close to a button, it will be automatically pulled onto that button. The strength of this pull can be adjusted.

1 Select “Feedback Force” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select “+” or “-”.



3 Select “OK”, and then “OK”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Delete personal data

This function is not available while driving.

1 Select “Delete personal data” on the “General settings” screen.

2 Select “Delete”.

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.



3 Select “Yes”.

The following personal data can be deleted or returned to their default settings:

- Maintenance conditions*
- Maintenance information off setting*
- Memory point*
- Password settings for backing up and copying memory points*
- Areas to avoid*
- Previous points*
- Route guidance*
- Route trace*
- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Phone sound settings
- Phone display settings
- Message settings
- Audio setting
- Bluetooth® audio setting
- Search engine settings
- Opening image data
- Screen off image data

*: Vehicles with a navigation system.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ About startup or screen off images

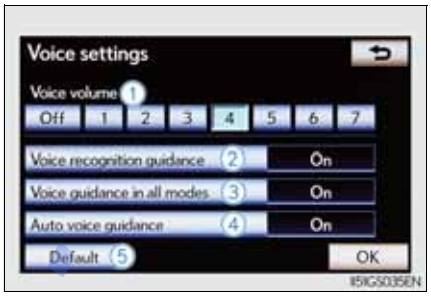
- The images file extension is JPG or JPEG.
- The images file name, including the file extension, can be up to 32 characters.
- Image files of 10 MB or less can be saved.
- Up to 3 images can be downloaded.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Voice settings

Voice guidance can be set.

Select “Voice” on the “Setup” screen.



1. Select voice guidance volume
2. Voice recognition guidance on/off

   This setting can also be changed on the “Shortcuts” screen. (→P. 408)
3. Voice guidance on/off during audio system is in use
4. Voice guidance on/off during route guidance*
5. Restore default settings

Select “OK” after changing settings.

*: Vehicles with a navigation system.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

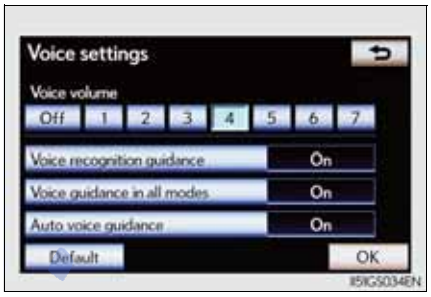
■ Voice volume

The voice guidance volume can be adjusted or switched off.

1 Select “Voice” on the “Setup” screen.

2 Select the desired level.

Vehicle with a navigation system: If voice guidance is not needed, select “Off” to disable the feature.



3 Select “OK”.

Vehicle settings

Select “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.

① Maintenance information settings

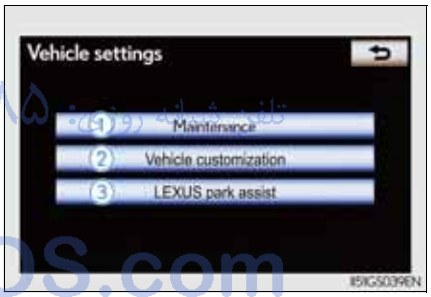
Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

② Vehicle customization

Detailed information: →P. 855

③ Setting up Lexus parking assist-sensor

Detailed information: →P. 292

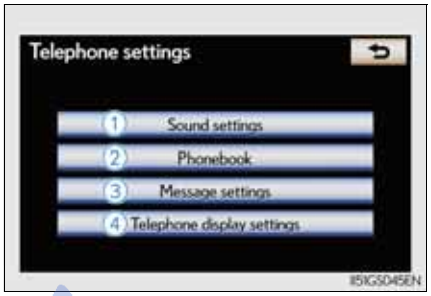


امداد خودرو فارا
FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

Telephone settings

Select “Telephone” on the “Setup” screen.



① Sound settings

Detailed information: →P. 576

② Phonebook settings

Detailed information: →P. 578

③ Message settings

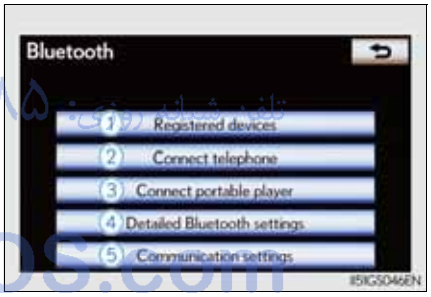
Detailed information: →P. 591

④ Telephone display settings

Detailed information: →P. 595

Bluetooth® settings

Select “Bluetooth*” on the “Setup” screen.



① Registered devices

Detailed information: →P. 599

② Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

Detailed information: →P. 605

③ Selecting portable player

Detailed information: →P. 606

④ Detailed Bluetooth® settings

Detailed information: →P. 607

⑤ Communication settings

Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Audio settings

Select “Audio” on the “Setup” screen.

① Sound settings

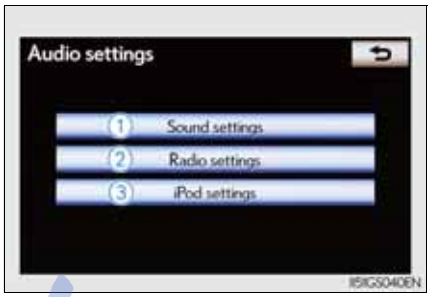
Detailed information: →P. 530

② Radio settings

Detailed information: →P. 460

③ iPod settings

Detailed information: →P. 521



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

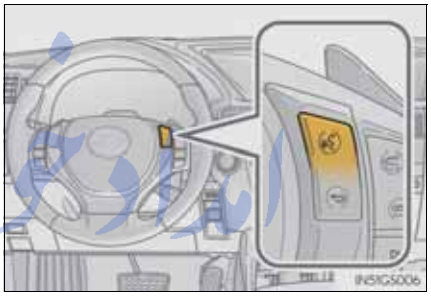
The speech command system enables the navigation and audio, hands-free systems to be operated using speech commands.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

◆ Talk switch

Press  .

To cancel, press and hold the talk switch.



◆ Back switch

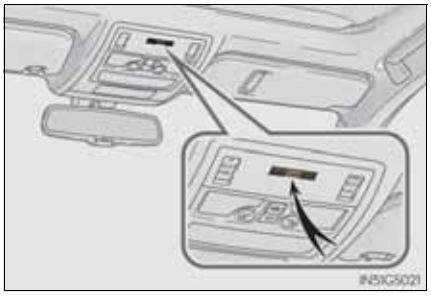
Press  .

To return to the previous screen.



FarmaSOS.com

◆ Microphone



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Speech command system operation

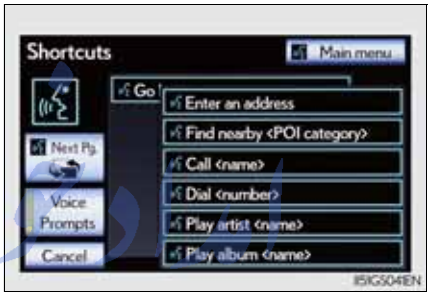
■ Speech command system operation

1 Press .

After the “Shortcuts” screen has been displayed, voice guidance will commence.

Voice guidance for the speech command system can be skipped by pressing .

2 After a beep sounds, say the command of your choice.



Speech commands are marked with .

Some commonly used commands are displayed on the screen.

If you wish to display the commands displayed on the page in the background, perform one of the following:

- Say “Next page” or “Previous page”.
- Select “Next Pg.” or “Prev. Pg.”

If you wish to display the “Main menu” screen when the “Shortcuts” screen is displayed, perform one of the following:

- Say “Main menu”.
- Select “Main menu”.

To cancel, select “Cancel”, or press and hold .

Saying “Help” prompts voice guidance to offer examples of commands and operation methods.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۶۲۰۳۱۱
FarmaSOS.com

3 Say the command displayed on the screen.



If a desired outcome is not shown, or if no selections are available, perform one of the following to return to the previous screen:

- Say “Go back”.
- Select “Go back”.
- Press .

To cancel, select “Cancel”, or press and hold .

■ Speech command example (search for a track using artist name or album name)

1 Press .

“Play artist <name>” and “Play album <name>” are displayed in the “Shortcuts” screen.

2 Say “Play artist <name>” or “Play album <name>”.

Say the desired artist name or album name in the place of the “<>”.

A confirmation screen will be displayed showing the recognition results. If multiple matching items are found, a selection screen will be displayed.

When “Play artist <name>” is used to play music, the first track is selected randomly. (→P. 432)

3 Say “Yes” or select “Yes”.



امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

Command list

Recognizable speech commands and their actions are shown below.

- For devices that are not installed in the vehicle, the related commands will not be displayed in the “Shortcuts” screen. Also, according to conditions, other commands may not be displayed in the “Shortcuts” screen.
- Voice recognition language can be changed. (→P. 386)
- Commands that have a “O” in the “Shortcuts” column in the following table can be recognized from the “Shortcuts” screen.

■ Calling a Telephone (→P. 561)

Command	Action	Shortcuts
“Call <name>”	Calls made by saying a name from the phonebook. For example: Say “Call John Smith”, “Call John Smith, mobile” etc.	O
“Dial <number>”	Calls made by saying the Telephone number. For example: Say “Dial 0123456789” etc.	O

FarmaSOS.com

■ Playing a music

Command	Action	Shortcuts
“Play artist <name>”	Plays tracks by the selected artist. For example: Say “Play artist <XXXXX>”*	O
“Play album <name>”	Plays tracks from the selected album. For example: Say “Play album <XXXXX>”*	O

*: Say the desired artist name or album name in the place of the “<>”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Speech command system

- Commands that are not displayed in the “Shortcuts” screen can be operated from the “Main menu” screen.
- If the system does not respond or the confirmation screen does not disappear, press  and try again.
- Speech guidance can be canceled by setting voice prompts to off. Use this setting when it is desirable to say a command immediately after pressing  and hearing a beep.

■ If a speech command cannot be recognized

- If a speech command cannot be recognized within 6 seconds, voice guidance will say “Pardon?” (“Command not recognized.” will be displayed on the screen) and speech command reception will restart.
- If a speech command cannot be recognized 2 consecutive times, the speech command guidance system will say “Paused. To restart voice recognition, push the talk switch. To cancel voice recognition, push and hold the talk switch.” Voice recognition will then be suspended. Select “Cancel” or “Go back”, or press  .

■ When selecting “Voice Prompts”

- The voice recognition prompt can be set to on or off. This setting can also be changed on the “Voice settings” screen. (→P. 398)
- Voice recognition will be temporarily suspended. Press  again.

FarmaSOS.com

■ When using the microphone

- It is unnecessary to speak directly into the microphone when giving a command.
- Wait for the confirmation beep before speaking a command.
- Speech commands may not be recognized if:
  - Spoken too quickly.
  - Spoken at a low or high volume.
  - The roof or windows are open.
  - Passengers are talking while speech commands are spoken.
  - The air conditioning speed is set high.
  - The air conditioning vents are turned towards the microphone.
- In the following conditions, the system may not recognize the command properly and using speech commands may not be possible:
  - The command is incorrect or unclear. Note that certain words, accents or speech patterns may be difficult for the system to recognize.
  - There is excessive background noise, such as wind noise.

■ When searching for a track

- A USB memory or iPod must be connected to enable track searching and playback. (→P. 510, 521)
- When a USB memory or iPod is connected, recognition data is created so tracks can be searched using speech commands.
- Recognition data is updated under the following conditions:
  - When the USB memory or iPod data has changed.
  - When the voice recognition language is changed. (→P. 386)
- While the recognition data is being created or being updated, a track search cannot be performed using a speech command.
- When “Play music” is dimmed in the “Shortcuts” screen, it is not possible to search for a track using a speech command. In this situation, reduce the amount of music data in the USB memory or iPod and update the recognition data to enable searching by speech command.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۷۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Front automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display: The air conditioning system can be displayed and operated on the “Side Display”. For details, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Climate” to display the air conditioning operation screen.

The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.
The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.
Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Without rear air conditioning system



امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

▶ With rear air conditioning system



FarmaSOS.com

① Fan speed control

② Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

③ Outside temperature

④ Right-hand front seat side temperature control

⑤ Right-hand front seat side temperature display

⑥ Front seat air outlet selector

⑦ “nanoe™” system (if equipped)

⑧ Pollen removal mode

⑨ DUAL/3-ZONE mode

⑩ Cooling and dehumidification function on/off

⑪ Left-hand front seat side temperature display

⑫ Left-hand front seat side temperature control

⑬ Windshield defogger

⑭ Outside air or recirculated mode

⑮ Air outlet selector

⑯ S-FLOW mode

⑰ Off

⑱ Automatic mode

⑲ Left-hand front seat side air outlet selector

⑳ Rear air conditioning operation screen

㉑ Right-hand front seat side air outlet selector

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Using the automatic air conditioning system

1 Press AUTO.

The dehumidification function begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting and humidity.

2 Press AUTO to switch to automatic air intake mode.

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

3 Press "∧" on ∧ ∨ to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

▶ Without rear air conditioning system

When DUAL is selected (the indicator on DUAL is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

▶ With rear air conditioning system

When 3-ZONE is selected (the indicator on 3-ZONE is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 425) can be adjusted separately.

Air outlets and fan speed for the driver and passenger seats may be adjusted separately depending on the temperature setting.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲ ۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Adjusting the settings manually

▶ Without rear air conditioning system

1 To adjust the fan speed, select "∧" on  to increase the fan speed and "∨" to decrease the fan speed on the operation screen.

Press  to turn the fan off.

2 To adjust the temperature setting, press "∧" on  to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

When  is selected (the indicator on  is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

3 To change the air outlets, select an air outlet switch on the operation screen.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن پیامک
FarmaSOS.com

▶ With rear air conditioning system

1 To adjust the fan speed, select "∧" on  to increase the fan speed and "∨" to decrease the fan speed on the operation screen.

Press  to turn the fan off.

2 To adjust the temperature setting, press "∧" on  to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time  is selected.

When  is selected (the indicator on  is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 425) can be adjusted separately.

3 To change the air outlets, select an air outlet switch on the operation screen.



① Left-hand front seat

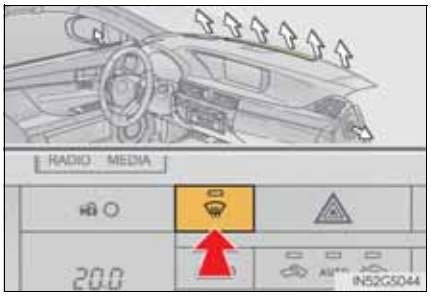
② Right-hand front seat

Different air outlets for the driver and front passenger seats can be chosen.

FamiaSOS.com

Defogging the windshield

Press .



The dehumidification function operates and fan speed increases.

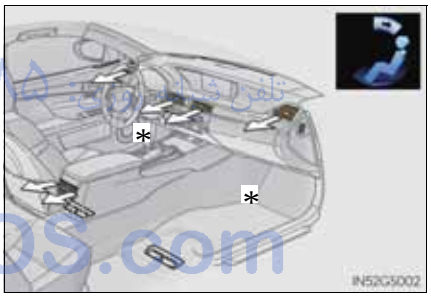
Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press again when the windshield is defogged.

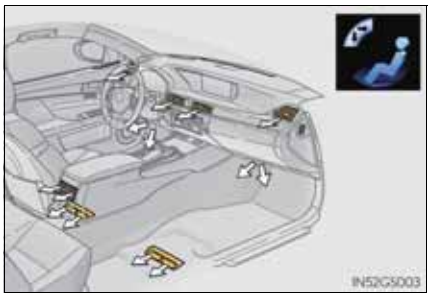
Air outlets and air flow

Upper body



*: In “AUTO” mode, air may flow to the feet as well as to the body to prevent your feet from getting sweaty.

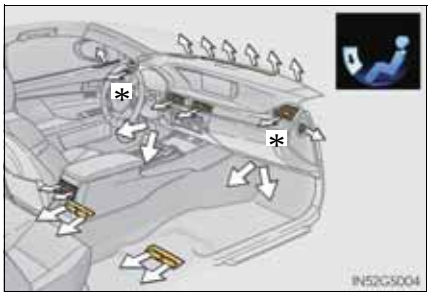
Upper body and feet



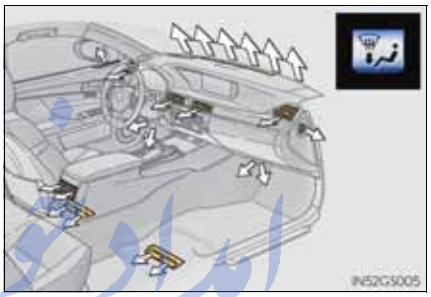
امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

Feet

*: When the warming function is operating, air flows to the upper body as well to warm the upper body effectively.



Feet and windshield



امداد خودرو فارما

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press  .

The mode switches among (recirculated air mode), automatic and (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Changing the rear seat settings (with rear air conditioning system)

■ Using the automatic mode

1 Select .

2 Select REAR AUTO.

The air conditioning system will operate, and air outlets and speed will be set automatically.



3 Select to increase the temperature and to decrease the temperature.

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

1 Select .

2 Select (increase) or (decrease) on the operation screen.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time 3-ZONE is selected.



■ Disabling the switches on the rear armrest.

Select .



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Pollen removal mode button

Operates pollen removal mode on/off.



Outside air mode switches to (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 1 to 3 minutes.

S-FLOW mode button

Operates S-FLOW mode on/off.



When the S-FLOW switch is pressed, the airflow changes as follows.

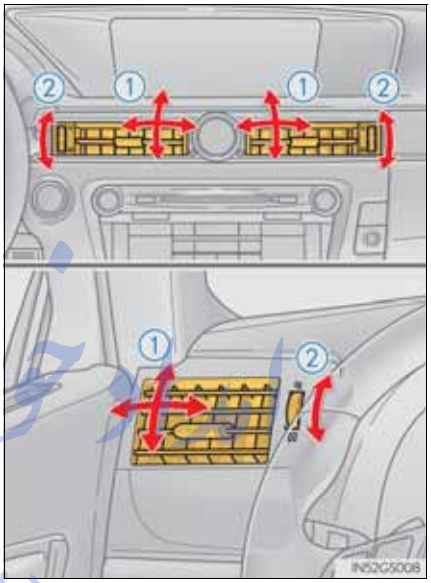
Without rear air conditioning system: Air flows to the front seats only.

With rear air conditioning system: Air flows to the front seats only, and if the passenger seat is unoccupied, the set temperature, outside humidity and temperature inside the cabin are assessed, and air flows to the driver seat only.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن پاسخگویی روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

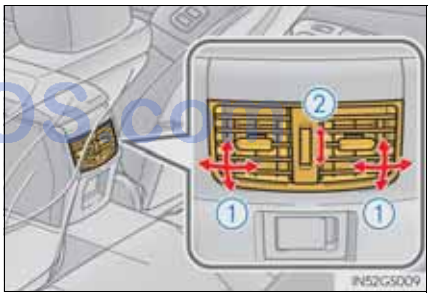
■ Front center outlets and front side outlets



① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

② Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

■ Rear seat outlets



① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

② Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

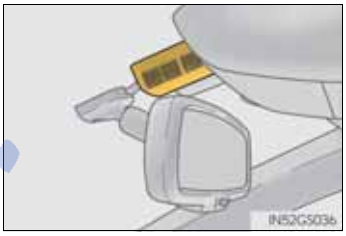
یدک خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Using automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.
Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after AUTO is pressed.

■ Humidity sensor

A sensor, which detects humidity inside the vehicle and the temperature of the windshield, is provided to detect fog on the front windscreen. Due to the sensor, when automatic mode is set the air conditioning may make the following controls:



- Changing the amount of air flow
- Changing the amount of air introduced from outside when in outside air mode with the air vents in the position
- Changing the settings of the air vents to when the is set

■ Fogging up of the windows

- The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Selecting A/C on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.
- If you A/C off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ Outside/recirculated air mode

- When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior. During cooling operation, setting the recirculated air mode will also cool the vehicle interior effectively.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

امداد خودرو ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the dehumidification function is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the dehumidification function.

■ Pollen removal mode

- In order to prevent the windshield from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur:
  - Outside air mode does not switch to (recirculated air) mode.
  - The dehumidification function operates.
  - The operation cancels after approximately 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .
- In extremely humid weather, the windows may fog up.
- The pollens are filtered out even if the pollen removal mode is turned off.

■ When the outside temperature falls to nearly 0°C (32°F)

The dehumidification function may not operate even when A/C is selected.

■ Air conditioning odors

- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۷۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ "nanoe™" *1 system

The air conditioning system adopts "nanoe™" generator. This helps to provide clean air and moisture by emitting electrically charged ions coated with water particles through the front center vent on driver's side*2.

- When the fan is turned on, the "nanoe™" system is automatically activated.
- When the fan is operated in the following conditions, system performance will be maximized. If the following conditions are not met, performance will be limited.
  - The  ,  or  air outlets are being used.
  - The front center vent on driver's side is open.
- When "nanoe™" is generated, a small amount of ozone is emitted and may be faintly smelled in some situations. However, this is approximately the same as the amount that already exists in nature, such as in forests, and it has no affect on the human body.
- A slight noise may be heard during operation. This is not a malfunction.

*1: "nanoe™" and the "nanoe™" mark are trademarks of Panasonic Electric Works Co., Ltd.

*2: According to temperature and humidity conditions, fan speed and direction of the air flow, the "nanoe™" system may not operate at full capacity.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

■ Air conditioning filter

→P. 693

FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

■ "nanoe™" generator

Do not disassemble or repair the generator because it contains high voltage parts. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional if the generator needs repair.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

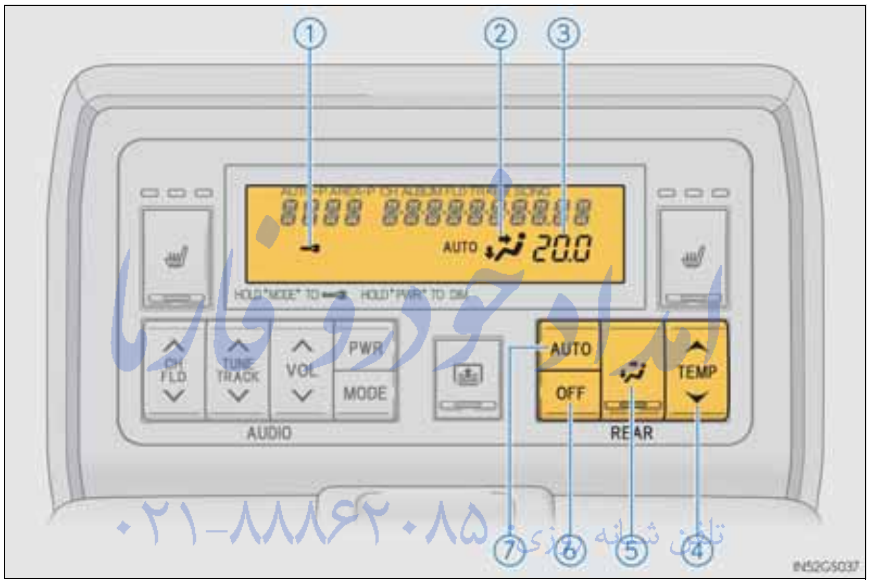
■ To prevent damage to the “nanoe™”

Do not insert anything into the driver’s side vent, attach anything to it, or use sprays around the driver’s side vent. These things may cause the generator not to work properly.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Rear air conditioning system*

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.



1. Button lock display
2. Air outlet mode display
3. Temperature display
4. Temperature control
5. Air outlet selector
6. Off
7. Automatic mode

*: If equipped

Using automatic air conditioning system

1 Press AUTO.

The air conditioning system will operate, and air outlets and fan speed will be adjusted automatically.

“AUTO” will be displayed on the control panel.

2 Press “∧” on TEMP to increase the temperature and “∨” to decrease the temperature.

Adjusting the settings manually

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press “∧” on TEMP to increase the temperature and “∨” to decrease the temperature.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

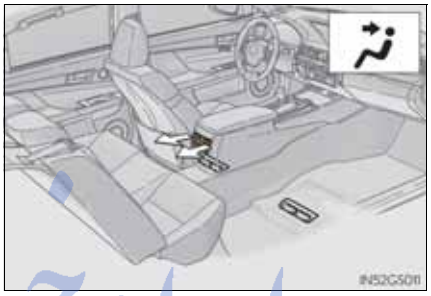
■ Changing the air outlets

Press .

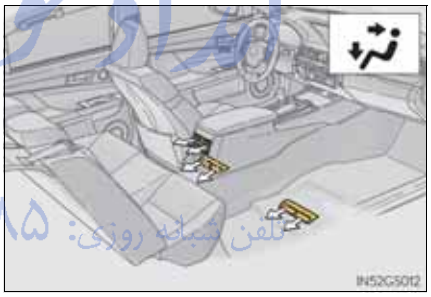
The air outlets change as follows each time is pressed.

Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.

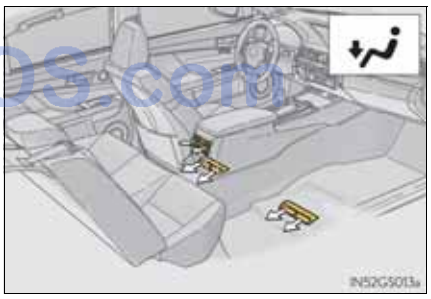
Upper body



Upper body and feet



Feet

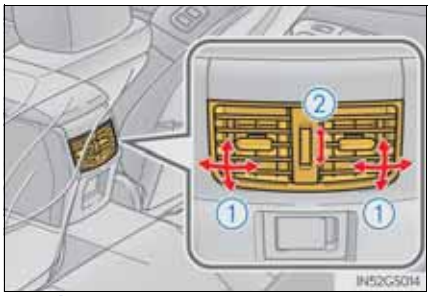


امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets (rear center outlets)

① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

② Turn the knob to open or close the vent.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Button lock function

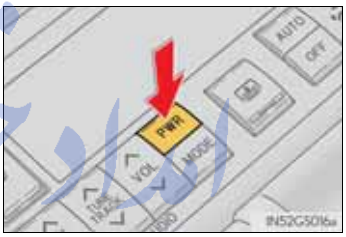
To prevent inadvertent operation, the buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. Press MODE until you hear a beep to lock the buttons. Pressing MODE again until you hear a beep will release the lock.

The indicator appears on the display when the buttons are locked.



■ Rear control panel illumination off function

Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. Press PWR until you hear a beep to turn the illumination off. Pressing PWR again until you hear a beep will turn the illumination on.



NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

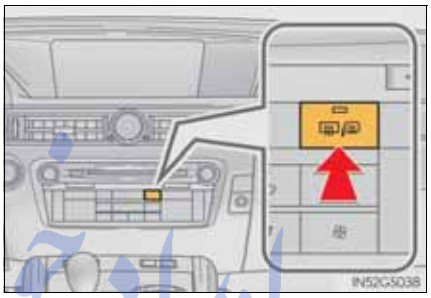
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

On/off

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.



امداد خودرو فارما

■ Operating conditions

The engine switch must be in the IGNITION ON mode.

CAUTION

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

■ When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

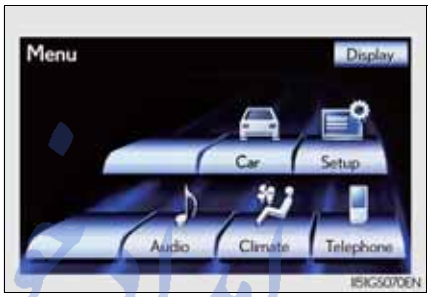
Turn the defoggers off when the engine is off.

Windshield wiper de-icer*

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

1 Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch. (→P. 368)

2 Select “Climate” on the “Menu” screen.



3 ON/OFF

Select to turn on the windshield wiper de-icer. The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Selecting again also turns the de-icer off.



FarmaSOS.com

■ Operating conditions

The engine switch must be in the IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the windshield wiper de-icer is on

Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

*: If equipped

Audio system type

CD and DVD player with AM/FM radio

Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display: The audio functions can be displayed and operated on the “Side Display”. For details, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

The illustration below is for left-hand drive vehicles with a 8-inch display.
The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.
Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

- Using the instrument panel

  Press the “RADIO” or “MEDIA” button to display the audio control screen.

- Using the Remote Touch

  Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, select “Audio” and select each tab to display the audio control screen.

FarmaSOS.com

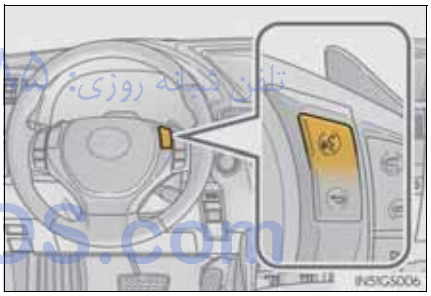


تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 458
Using the CD/DVD player	P. 467
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs	P. 469
Playing DVD video	P. 475
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information	P. 488
Listening to Bluetooth® audio	P. 498
Listening to a USB memory	P. 510
Listening to an iPod	P. 522
Optimal use of the audio/video system	P. 533
Using the AUX port	P. 536
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 543

Using the speech command system

Press  to operate the speech command system. (→P. 402/ “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”)



امداد خودرو مارا
FarmaSOS.com

■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

■ When using the Remote Touch screen

Dimmed screen buttons cannot be operated.

■ Tab

Select ← or →, located either side of the screen tabs, to display tabs from the previous or next page.

■ About Dolby

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

CAUTION

■ Certification for the disc player

This product is a Class 1 laser product classified under the Safety of laser products, IEC 60825-1:2007, and contains a class 1 M laser module. To ensure continued safety, do not remove any covers or attempt to gain access to the inside of the product. Refer all servicing to qualified personnel.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

CAUTION - CLASS 1 M VISIBLE AND INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN, DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Open source license

This product uses the following open source software.

● T-Kernel

This Product uses the Source Code of T-Kernel under T-License granted by the T-Engine Forum (www.t-engine.org).

● C Library

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors. This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory.

Copyright © 1982, 1985, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1983, 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1983, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Copyright © 1987, 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1987, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1988 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1988 University of Utah.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by the Systems Programming Group of the University of Utah Computer Science Department and Ralph Campbell.

Copyright © 1988, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1988, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Arthur David Olson of the National Cancer Institute.

Copyright © 1989 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1989 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Chris Torek.

Copyright © 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Berkeley Software Design, Inc.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Ralph Campbell.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This software was developed by the Computer Systems Engineering group at Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory under DARPA contract BG 91-66 and contributed to Berkeley. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Ralph Campbell. This file is derived from the MIPS RISC Architecture book by Gerry Kane.

Copyright © 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1994 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Andrew Hume of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1982, 1986 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1983, 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

FarmaSDS.com

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions Copyright © 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ““AS IS”” AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1983, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

ایران خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.

Copyright © 1996 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by J.T. Conklin.

Copyright © 1997 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus Klein.

Copyright © 1997, 1998 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1997,98 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by J.T. Conklin.

Copyright © 1997, 1998 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code was contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus Klein.

Copyright © 1998 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus Klein.

Copyright © 1998, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

ایران خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۳۲۲۱-۸۸۸۶
FarmaSOS.com

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus J. Klein.

Copyright © 1999, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Julian Coleman.

Copyright © 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Dieter Baron and Thomas Klausner.

Copyright © 2000, 2001 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Jun-ichiro itojun Hagino and by Klaus Klein.

Copyright © 2001 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus Klein.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of The NetBSD Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.

Copyright © 1997 Christos Zoulas. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.
4. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

FarmaSOS.com

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.

Copyright © 1994 Winning Strategies, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.
4. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵۰۲۶۸۸۸۶۲-۰۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1995, 1996, 1997, and 1998 WIDE Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the project nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE PROJECT AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PROJECT OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright ©1999 Citrus Project, All rights reserved.

FarnaSOS.com

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1995 Carnegie-Mellon University. All rights reserved. Author: Chris G. Demetriou

Copyright © 1995, 1996 Carnegie-Mellon University. All rights reserved. Author: Chris G. Demetriou

FarmaSOS.com

Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute this software and its documentation is hereby granted, provided that both the copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies of the software, derivative works or modified versions, and any portions thereof, and that both notices appear in supporting documentation.

CARNEGIE MELLON ALLOWS FREE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE IN ITS ““AS IS”” CONDITION. CARNEGIE MELLON DISCLAIMS ANY LIABILITY OF ANY KIND FOR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Carnegie Mellon requests users of this software to return to Software Distribution Coordinator or Software.Distribution@CS.CMU.EDU School of Computer Science Carnegie Mellon University Pittsburgh PA 15213-3890 any improvements or extensions that they make and grant Carnegie the rights to redistribute these changes.

- TCP/IP, Socket Library

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

Copyright © 1980, 1983, 1988, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1983, 1987, 1989 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1983, 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1985, 1988, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1985, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1989, 1993, 1995 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

FarmaSOS.com

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 2004 by Internet Systems Consortium, Inc. (“”ISC””) Portions Copyright © 1996-1999 by Internet Software Consortium. Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

IranMaxOS.com

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ““AS IS”” AND ISC DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL ISC BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Portions Copyright © 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ““AS IS”” AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

This product includes software developed by WIDE Project and its contributors.

Portions Copyright © 1995, 1996, 1997, and 1998 WIDE Project. All rights reserved.

FarmaSOS.com

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by WIDE Project and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the project nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE PROJECT AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PROJECT OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

FarmasOS.com

Copyright © 1988 Stephen Deering.

Copyright © 1982, 1986 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. [rescinded 22 July 1999]
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1988 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms are permitted provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph are duplicated in all such forms and that any documentation and other materials related to such distribution and use acknowledge that the software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley. The name of the University may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

FarnaSOS.com

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ““AS IS”” AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTIBILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Rights, responsibilities and use of this software are controlled by the agreement found in the ““LICENSE.H”” file distributed with this source code. ““LICENSE.H”” may not be removed from this distribution, modified, enhanced nor references to it omitted.

Copyright 1983 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology

Copyright 1984 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology

Copyright 1984, 1985 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology

Copyright 1990 by NetPort Software

Copyright 1990-1993 by NetPort Software.

Copyright 1990-1994 by NetPort Software.

Copyright 1990-1996 by NetPort Software.

Copyright 1990-1997 by NetPort Software.

Copyright 1993 by NetPort Software

Copyright 1986 by Carnegie Mellon

All Rights Reserved

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of CMU not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission.

امداد خودرو وارنا
FarnaSOS.com

● OpenSSL

This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/) This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

OpenSSL License

Copyright © 1998-2008 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment: “This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)”
4. The names “OpenSSL Toolkit” and “OpenSSL Project” must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.
5. Products derived from this software may not be called “OpenSSL” nor may “OpenSSL” appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: “This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)”

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Original SSLeay License

Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL. This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com). Copyright remains Eric Young’s, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: “This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)” The word ‘cryptographic’ can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).
4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: “This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)”

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.

Press the “RADIO” button to display the radio control screen.

Select the “AM”, “FM” or “DAB” tab or press the “RADIO” button repeatedly to select the desired tab.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



1. AM/FM/DAB mode tabs
2. Mute
3. “TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Adjusting the frequency
4. “CH•TRACK” button: Preset tuning/seeking the frequency
5. RADIO mode button
6. Power
7. Volume
8. Preset stations

FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Selecting a station (excluding DAB [Digital Audio Broadcast])

■ Seek tuning

Press and hold “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button.

■ Manual tuning

Turn the “TUNE/SCROLL” knob.

■ Preset stations

Select the desired preset stations (1 - 6).

Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button.

Setting station presets (excluding DAB [Digital Audio Broadcast])

1 Search for desired stations.

2 Select and hold one of the preset service (1 - 6) until a beep is heard.



Displaying the station list

Select “Station list” to display the list of FM stations available.

If there are no FM stations in the list, you will not be able to change the station. The frequency before you operate “Station list” will be kept.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

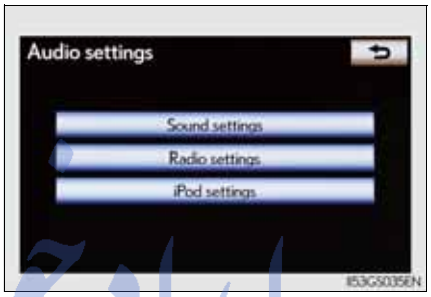
Radio settings

Detailed radio settings can be programmed.

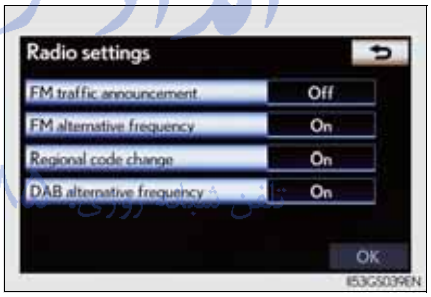
1 Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Setup”.

2 Select “Audio” on the “Setup” screen.

3 Select “Radio settings”.



4 Select the item to be adjusted, and then select the screen button next to it to adjust its settings.



“FM traffic announcement”: The tuner will automatically seek a station that regularly broadcasts traffic information and the station broadcasts when the traffic information program starts.

“FM alternative frequency”: A station providing good reception is automatically selected if current reception worsens.

“Regional code change”: For switching over to a broadcasting station within the same local program network.

“DAB alternative frequency”: A station providing good reception is

FarmaSOS.com

automatically selected if current reception worsen.

5 Select “OK”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

RDS (Radio Data System)

■ Listening to stations of the same network

FM alternative frequency: The station among those of the same network with strong reception is selected. FM alternative frequency on/off (→P. 461)

Regional code change: The station among those of the same network with strong reception and broadcasting the same program is selected. Regional code change on/off (→P. 461)

■ FM Traffic announcement

The system automatically switches to traffic information when a broadcast with a traffic information signal is received.

"TP" (Traffic program) will appear on the screen. The station returns to the previous one when the traffic information ends.

FM Traffic announcement on/off (→P. 461)

ایران خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast)

■ Selecting a channel

Press "<" or ">" on "CH•TRACK" button or select CH▲ or CH▼ on the screen.

■ Selecting a service

- Manual tuning

  Turn the "TUNE/SCROLL" knob.

- Service list

  Select one of the displayed services on the service list screen.

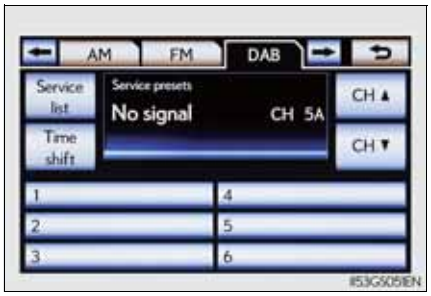
- Preset stations

  Select the desired preset stations (1 - 6).

■ Displaying the service list

Select “Service list”.

To returns to the previous screen, select “Service presets”.



■ Setting service presets

1 Select the desired channel by press “<” or “>” on “CH•TRACK” button or select CH ▲ or CH ▼ on the screen.

2 Select the desired service by turn the “TUNE/SCROLL” knob or select one of the displayed services on the service list screen.

2 Select and hold one of the preset service (1 - 6) until a beep is heard.

If the “Service presets” screen does not appear, select “Service presets” on the “Service list” screen.



FarmaSOS.com

Time shift operation

The service you are currently listening to can be re-listened to at any time.

1 Select “Time shift”.

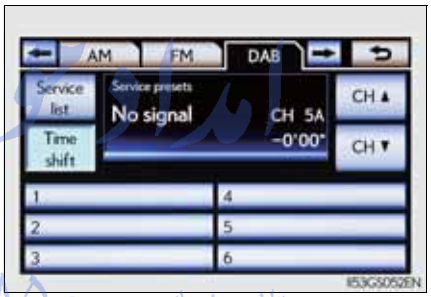
“-0:00” is displayed on the screen.



2 Turn the “TUNE/SCROLL” knob to set the desired time.

The time can be set in intervals of 10 seconds.

To cancel, select “Time shift” again or the time shift display is left showing “-0:00” for 6 seconds without any operation.



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

5

Interior features

Silencing the sound

Press .

Press the button again to turn the system back on.

■ If you select

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ EON (Enhanced Other Network) system (for traffic announcement function)

If the RDS station (with EON data) you are listening to is not broadcasting a traffic information program and the audio system is in the TA (Traffic announcement) mode, the radio will be switched automatically to a station broadcasting a traffic information program in the EON AF list when traffic information begins.

■ When listening to a disc

When the traffic information program starts, the disc playback mode is interrupted and the traffic information is automatically broadcasted. When the program ends, the initial operation resumes.

■ When the battery is disconnected

All preset stations are erased.

■ Reception sensitivity

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear quarter window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear quarter window.

■ About Time shift

The times at which playback is possible depend on the bit rate of the DAB station to be recorded, the amount of DAB unit memory, and the time at which reception of the broadcast began.

ایران خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsIKO8.com

Using the CD/DVD player



FarmaSOS.com

1. Disc slot
2. Play/pause
3. "TUNE/SCROLL" knob: File selection
4. "CH•TRACK" button: Track, file and chapter selection/fast forward/rewind
5. MEDIA button
6. Disc eject
7. Power
8. Volume

Inserting a disc

Insert a disc into the disc slot.

Ejecting a disc

Press ⏏ and remove the disc.

Playing and pausing a track/file/chapter

To play or pause a track/file/chapter, press ⏯.

■ Using the display

- Under extremely cold conditions, the screen may react slowly or operation sound may become louder.
- If a disc is inserted with the label facing down, it cannot be played.

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Press the “MEDIA” button if a disc has already been loaded in the disc slot.
Select the “DISC” tab or press the “MEDIA” button repeatedly until the “DISC” tab is selected.

Control icon screen

▶ Audio CD mode



▶ MP3/WMA disc mode



① Random playback
② Repeat play
③ Pause
Select ► to play
④ Selecting a track/file
⑤ Selecting a folder

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a track (Audio CD)

■ Selecting a track

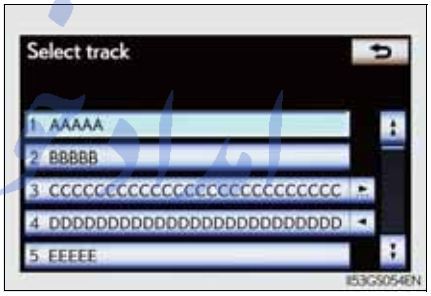
Select “<” or “>” on the screen to select the next/previous track.

Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button or turn the “TUNE/SCROLL” knob to select the desired track number.

■ Selecting a track from the track list

1 Select the track name on the screen to display the CD’s track list.

2 Select the desired track number.



: Select to move the list up or down by 5 track groups.

“CH•TRACK” button: Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to scroll through the track list one by one.

“TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counter-clockwise to quickly scroll up or down the track list.

: If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Select to scroll to the end of the name. Select to move to the beginning of the name.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a track

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button.

FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Selecting a folder (MP3/WMA discs)

■ Selecting a folder

Select “<” or “>” on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

■ Selecting a folder from the folder list

1 Select the folder name on the screen to display the following folder list screen.

2 Select the desired folder number to display the folder’s file list. From the file list, select the desired file number.



: Select to move the list up or down by 5 folder groups.

“TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counter-clockwise to quickly scroll up or down the folder list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Select to scroll to the end of the name. Select to move to the beginning of the name.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۲-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a file (MP3/WMA discs)

■ Selecting a file

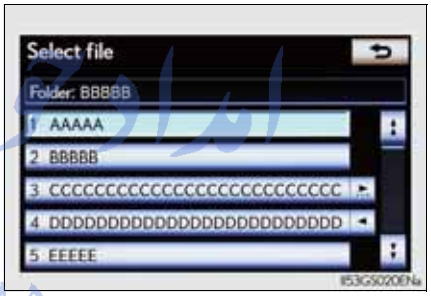
Select “<” or “>” on the screen to select the next/previous file.

Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button or turn the “TUNE/SCROLL” knob to select the desired file number.

■ Selecting a file from the file list

1 Select the file name on the screen to display the following file list screen.

2 Select the desired file number.



, : Select to move the list up or down by 5 file groups.

“CH•TRACK” button: Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to scroll through the file list one by one.

“TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counter-clockwise to quickly scroll up or down the file list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Select to scroll to the end of the name. Select to move to the beginning of the name.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a file

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button.

FarmaSOS.com

Random playback

■ Audio CD

Select “RAND” on the screen.

“RAND” appears on the screen.
To cancel, select “RAND” again.

■ MP3/WMA disc

● Playing files from a particular folder in random order

Each time “RAND” is selected, the mode changes as follows: random (1 folder random) → folder random (1 disc random) → off

● Playing all the files on a disc in random order

Select “RAND” repeatedly until “FLD.RAND” appears on the screen.

To cancel, select “RAND” again.

When a file is skipped or the system is inoperative, select “RAND” to reset.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Repeat play

■ Audio CD

Select “RPT” on the screen.

“RPT” appears on the screen.

To cancel, select “RPT” again.

■ MP3/WMA disc

● Repeating a file

Select “RPT” on the screen.

Each time is “RPT” selected, the mode changes as follows:

- When “RAND” is off
  file repeat → folder repeat → off
- When “RAND” is on
  file → repeat off

● Repeating all of the files in a folder

Select “RPT” repeatedly until “FLD.RPT” appears on the screen.

To cancel, select “RPT” again.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ If you select 

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ Displaying the title and artist name (Audio CD)

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 characters can be displayed.

■ Error messages

→P. 488

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While driving in DVD video mode, only the DVD's audio can be heard.

When a DVD video disc is inserted while driving, the audio contents of the main feature will automatically be played. However, some discs may not be played from the main story.

Press the "MEDIA" button if a disc has already been loaded in the disc slot.

Select the "DISC" tab or press the "MEDIA" button repeatedly until the "DISC" tab is selected.

امداد خودرو مارنا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Control icon screen

▶ For 8-inch display



▶ For 12.3-inch display



①② Menu screen appears

③ Option screen appears (→P. 477)

④ Display menu control key (→P. 478)

⑤ Vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns

⑥ Rewind

⑦ Stop

⑧ Pause
Select ▶ to play

⑨ Fast forward

If is selected, while watching a DVD, the DVD controls will appear.

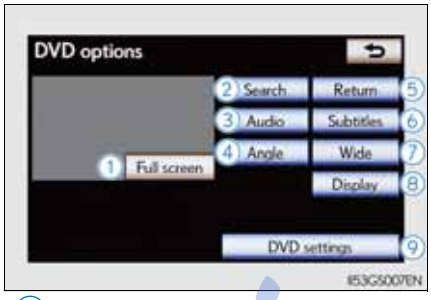
If 🚫 appears on the screen when a control is selected the operation relevant to the control is not permitted.

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

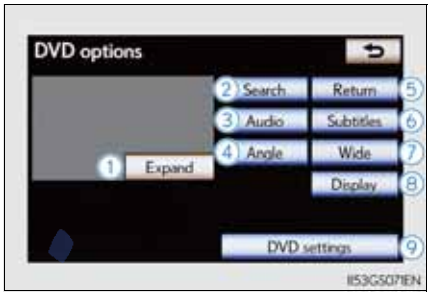
DVD options screen

Select “Options” on “DVD” screen, the following screen appears.

▶ For 8-inch display



▶ For 12.3-inch display



① Returns to the full screen (only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)

② Search by title/group number

③ Change audio language

④ Change angle

⑤ Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there

⑥ Change subtitle language

⑦ Change screen size

⑧ Display the image quality adjustment screen

⑨ Change initial setting

If 🚫 appears on the screen when a control is selected the operation relevant to the control is not permitted.

Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Select and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen.

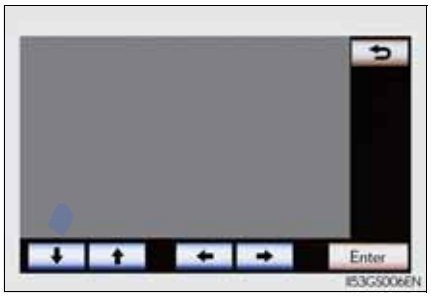
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Using the DVD menu

1 Select “Menu” or “Top menu” on the control icon screen.
Select if the menu control key does not appear on the menu screen.

2 Select the menu item using , , or and select “Enter”.

: Returns to the previous screen



Note that specific items or the operating method differs from one DVD to another. Refer to the manual that comes with the DVD disc. (The above image is an example.)

Searching for a desired screen

■ Searching by title

1 Select “Search” on the “DVD options” screen.

2 Input the desired title number and then select “OK”.

: Deletes the last input number

: Returns to the previous screen



■ Searching by chapter

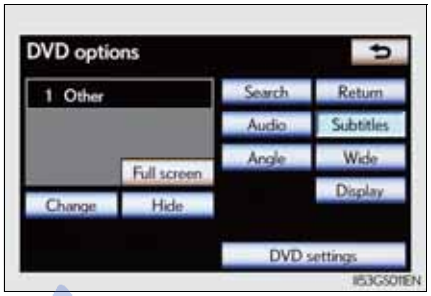
Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button or turn the “TUNE/SCROLL” knob.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Changing the subtitle language

1 Select “Subtitles” on the “DVD options” screen.

2 Each time you select “Change”, the next available language is selected.



The languages available are restricted to those available on the DVD disc.

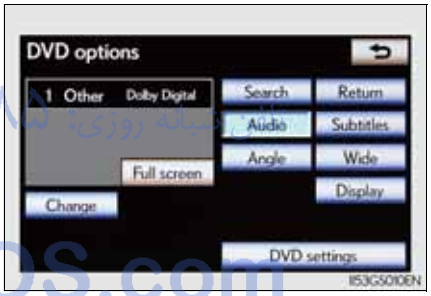
“Hide”: Hides the subtitles

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the audio language

1 Select “Audio” on the “DVD options” screen.

2 Each time you select “Change”, the next available language is selected.



The languages available are restricted to those available on the DVD disc.

: Returns to the previous screen

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۸ پاسخ‌گویی روزی: شنبه
FarmaSOS.com

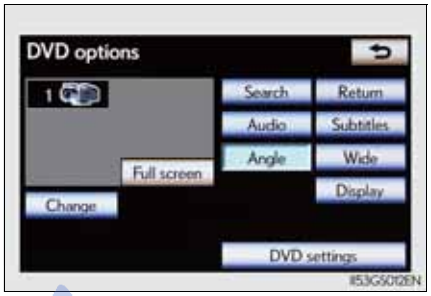
Changing the angle (if the angle option is available)

1 Select “Angle” on the “DVD options” screen.

2 Each time you select “Change”, the next available angle is selected.

The angles available are restricted to those available on the DVD disc.

: Returns to the previous screen



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Changing screen size

1 Select “Wide” on the “DVD options” screen.

2 Select the desired display. After setting, select “OK”.



① Displays a 3 : 4 screen, with either side in black

② Widens the 3 : 4 screen horizontally to fill the screen

③ Widens the 3 : 4 screen vertically and horizontally, in the same ratio, to fill the screen

: Returns to the previous screen

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Adjusting the screen

1 Select “Display” on the “DVD options” screen.

2 Select “<” or “>” to display the desired item to be adjusted, and then select “OK”.

The screen goes off when “Screen off” is selected. To turn the display screen back on, select any button. The selected screen appears.



	R	G
Color	Red	Green
	+	-
Tone	Lighter	Darker
Contrast	Weaker	Stronger
Brightness	Darker	Brighter

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Initial DVD settings

■ Displaying “DVD settings” screen

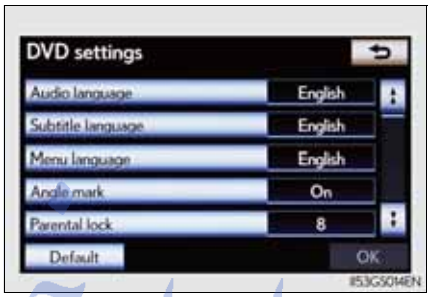
1 Select “DVD settings” on the “DVD options” screen.

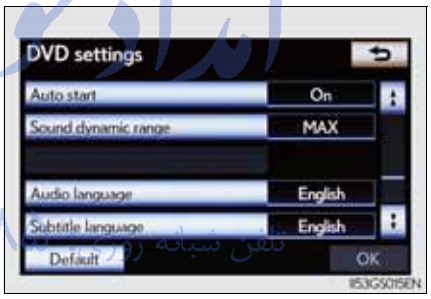
2 Select the setting to be changed.

After you change the settings, select “OK”.

“Default”:Restores default settings

:Returns to the previous screen





■ Setting audio language

1 Select “Audio language” on the “DVD settings” screen.

2 Select the desired language to be heard on the “Audio language” screen.

If you cannot find the desired language, select “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 485)

■ Setting subtitle language

1 Select “Subtitle language” on the “DVD settings” screen.

2 Select the desired language to be read on the “Subtitle language” screen.

If you cannot find the desired language, select “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 485)

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۰
FarmaSOS.com

■ Setting menu language

1 Select “Menu language” on the “DVD settings” screen.

2 Select the desired language to be read on the “Menu language” screen.

If you cannot find the desired language, select “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 485)

■ Setting angle mark

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

1 Select “Angle mark” on the “DVD settings” screen.

2 Select “On” or “Off”.

■ Setting parental lock

1 Select “Parental lock” on the “DVD settings” screen.

2 Input the 4-digit personal code on the “Key code” screen.

If you enter wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

3 Select a parental level (1-8) on the “Select restriction level” screen. (→P. 491)

■ Setting the auto start

Discs that are inserted while the vehicle is in motion will automatically start playing.

1 Select “Auto start” on the “DVD settings” screen.

2 Select “On” or “Off”.

■ Setting sound dynamic range

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

1 Select “Sound dynamic range” on the “DVD settings” screen.

2 Select “MAX”, “STD” or “MIN”.

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۲۱۰۷۸۶۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Entering a language code

If you select “Other” on the “Audio language” screen, “Subtitle language” screen or “Menu language” screen you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.

Input the 4-digit language code and then select “OK”.

: Deletes the last input digit

: Returns to the previous screen



● Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali, Bangla	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1001	Japanese

ایراد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1009	Yiddish
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1023	Javanese
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1101	Georgian
0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1111	Kazakh
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1112	Greenlandic
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1113	Cambodian
0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scottish-Gaelic	1114	Kannada
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian, Lettish	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto-Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sango	2012	Tagalog
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo-Croatian	2014	Setswana

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tongan
1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

- When a rear passenger selects set up menu

  Follow the directions on the warning screen that is displayed.
  Under the same condition, the rear passenger can cancel the set up operation from the front seat.

- Error messages

  If “Region code error” is displayed, check if the region code printed on the DVD matches the player’s region code.

  If a different message is displayed: →P. 488

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Error messages

Refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

The error messages may differ from those shown below depending on the language selected.

Message	Cause	Correction Procedures
No disc found.	There is no disc in the player.	Insert a disc.
Check DISC	• The disc is dirty or damaged. • The disc is inserted upside down. • The disc is not playable with the player.	• Clean the disc. • Insert the disc correctly. • Confirm the disc is playable with the player.
DISC error	• There is a malfunction within the system. • Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player.	• Eject the disc. • Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.
No music files found.	This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc.	Eject the disc.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

DVD video discs

- The DVD player conforms to PAL/NTSC color TV formats.
- Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as “ALL”, “2” or “5”, you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, “Region code error” appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.

■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs

Symbol	Meaning
PAL/NTSC	Indicates PAL/NTSC format
	Indicates the number of audio tracks
	Indicates the number of language subtitles
	Indicates the number of angles
	Indicates the screen display ratios available Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc’s region code ALL: in all countries Number: region code

■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your player:

- SACD
- dts CD
- Copy-protected CD
- DVD audio
- Video CD
- DVD-R
- DVD+R
- DVD-RW
- DVD+RW
- DVD-RAM

■ CD/DVD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ If discs are left inside the CD/DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD/DVD player.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ ۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

■ DVD video disc information

- DVD video discs
  A DVD video disc is a Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted “MPEG2”, one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby Digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.
- Viewer restrictions
  This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

  Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

  Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

  Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.
- Multi-angle option
  You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.
- Multi-language option
  You can select the subtitle and audio languages.
- Region codes
  The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. (→P. 489)
- Audio
  This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVDs. Other decoded types cannot be played.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

● Title and chapter
Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

■ Sound

Dolby Digital
Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 8, 32, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

ایراد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsIrad.com

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used:

- Disc formats:CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

- File names

  The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Discs containing multi-session recordings

  As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

- ID3 and WMA tags

  ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

  The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

  WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

- MP3 and WMA playback

  When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

  Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

- Extensions

  If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

ایران خودرو طرح
FarnaSOS.com

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

CAUTION

■ DVD video precaution

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or startled when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

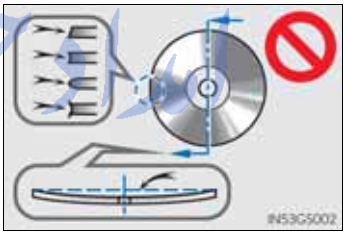
■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs, 8 cm (3 in.) disc adapters or Dual Disc.
Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.

- Discs that have a diameter that is not 12 cm (4.7 in.)



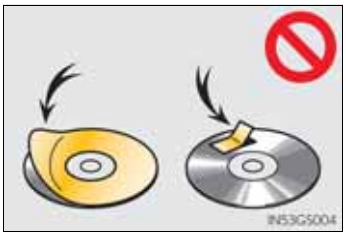
- Low-quality or deformed discs



- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area



- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off



FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

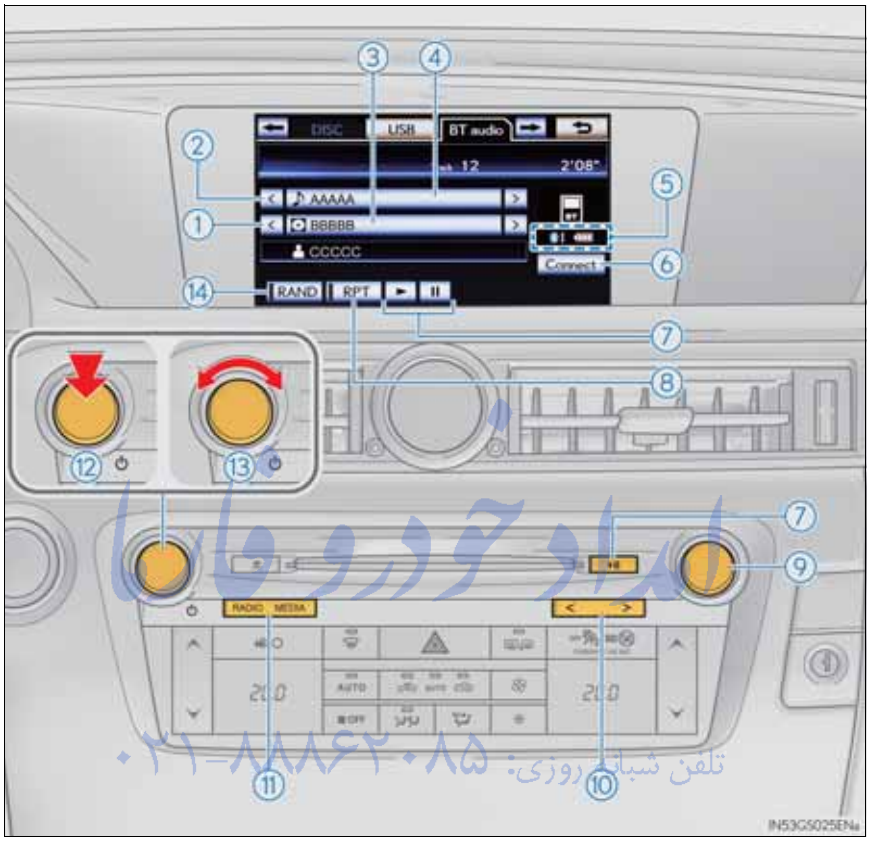
The Bluetooth® audio system enables users to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speaker via wireless communication.

This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.

Press the “MEDIA” button if a Bluetooth® audio player has already been connected.

Select the “BT audio” tab or press the “MEDIA” button repeatedly until the “BT audio” tab is selected.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



1. Folder/album selection
2. Track selection
3. Displays folder/album list
4. Displays track list
5. Connection status
6. Connecting Bluetooth® audio player
7. Play/pause
8. Repeat play
9. “TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Track selection
10. “CH•TRACK” button: Track selection/fast forward/rewind
11. MEDIA button
12. Power
13. Volume
14. Random playback

FarmaSO8.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the screen.

① Connection status

② Battery charge



Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Good ⟷ No connection
Battery charge	Full ⟷ Empty

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Connecting Bluetooth® audio player

To use the Bluetooth® audio system, you need to enter your portable player into the system. Once registered, you can enjoy your music on the vehicle's audio system. (→P. 606)

For the operation procedure for the portable player, consult your player's accompanying instruction manual.

■ When "Bluetooth* power" is turned on

When the portable player is on standby for the connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the engine switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

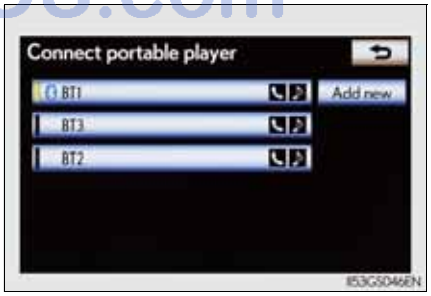
■ When "Bluetooth* power" is turned off

Manually connect the portable player in accordance with the following procedure.

1 Select "Connect".



2 Select the desired portable player.



*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

3 When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed. It is now possible to use the portable player.



Playing Bluetooth® audio

Select ► to play, select ❚❚ to pause or press ⏯ to play/pause.

Some titles may not be displayed depending on the type of portable player.



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting a track/folder/album

■ On the audio top screen

Select “<” or “>” on the screen to select the next/previous folder/album.

■ On the playlist screen

1 Select the album name on the screen to display the playlist screen.



2 Select the desired screen button.

If the folder name on the screen is selected, the track list screen is displayed.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

3 Select the desired track name on the screen.



, : Select to move the list up or down by 5 track/folder groups.

“CH•TRACK” button: Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to scroll through the track list one by one.

“TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counter-clockwise to quickly scroll up or down the track/folder list. To select the desired track/folder, press the knob.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Select to scroll to the end of the name. Select to move to the beginning of the name.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۴۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a track

■ On the audio top screen

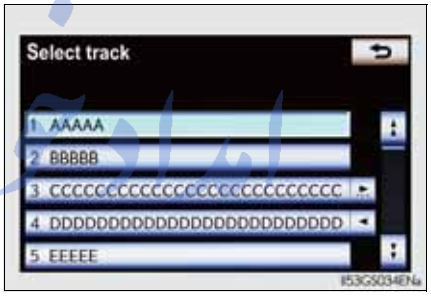
Select “<” or “>” on the screen to select the next/previous track.

Turn the “TUNE/SCROLL” knob or press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to select the desired track number.

■ On the track list screen

1 Select the track name on the screen to display the following track list screen.

2 Select the desired track number.



, : Select to move the list up or down by 5 track groups.

“CH•TRACK” button: Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to scroll through the track list one by one.

“TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counter-clockwise to quickly scroll up or down the track list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Select to scroll to the end of the name. Select to move to the beginning of the name.

FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

5 Interior features

- Fast forwarding and rewinding a track

  Press and hold “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to fast forward or rewind.

Random playback

- Playing the tracks on the album in random order

  Select “RAND” on the screen.

  Each time “RAND” is selected, the mode changes as follows:
  album random → all track random → off

- Playing tracks from all the albums in random order

  Select “RAND” repeatedly until “ALB.RAND” appears on the screen.

  To cancel, select “RAND” again.

امداد خودرو فارما

Repeat play

- Repeating a track

  Select “RPT” on the screen.

  تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

  Each time “RPT” is selected, the mode changes as follows:
  track repeat → album repeat → off

- Repeating an album

  Select “RPT” repeatedly until “ALB.RPT” appears on the screen.

  FarmaSOS.com

  To cancel, select “RPT” again.

■ If you select 

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ Connecting Bluetooth® audio player

- Selecting “Connect portable player” on the “Bluetooth*” screen also connects a Bluetooth® audio player. (→P. 606)
- When none of the selectable portable players have been registered, a screen confirming registration is displayed. The registration method is the same as phone registration. (→P. 599)
- When the currently connected portable player is selected, a screen confirming the selected player’s disconnection is displayed. (→P. 599)
- If connection fails once, a changing connection method confirmation screen is displayed. If connection fails 2 or more times, a message will be displayed. When this message is displayed, try again.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ When using the Bluetooth® audio system

- In the following conditions, the system may not function.
  - The portable player is turned off
  - The portable player is not connected
  - The portable player battery is low
- There may be a delay if phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio play.
- Depending on the type of portable player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■ Bluetooth® antenna

The antenna is built into the instrument panel. If the portable player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ Battery charge/signal status

This display may not correspond exactly with the portable player, and this system does not have a charging function.

FarmaSOS.com

■ About Bluetooth®

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.



■ Compatible models

Portable players must correspond to the following specifications:

- Bluetooth® specification
  Ver. 1.1 or higher
  (Recommended: Ver. 2.1+EDR or higher)
- Profile
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
    (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
    (Recommended: Ver. 1.4 or higher)

However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player. Also, the different screen is displayed depending on which portable player is connecting.

امداد خودرو ملیا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۳۲۲۰۸۸۶۳

■ Certification

→P. 549

■ Reconnecting the portable player

FarmaSOS.com

If the portable player is disconnected with a poor reception when the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable player.

If you have switched off the portable player yourself, follow the instructions below to reconnect:

- Select the portable player again
- Enter the portable player

■ When transferring ownership of your vehicle

Be sure to remove the registered portable player from the system. (→P. 601)

CAUTION

■ While driving

Do not use the portable player or connect the Bluetooth® system.

NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

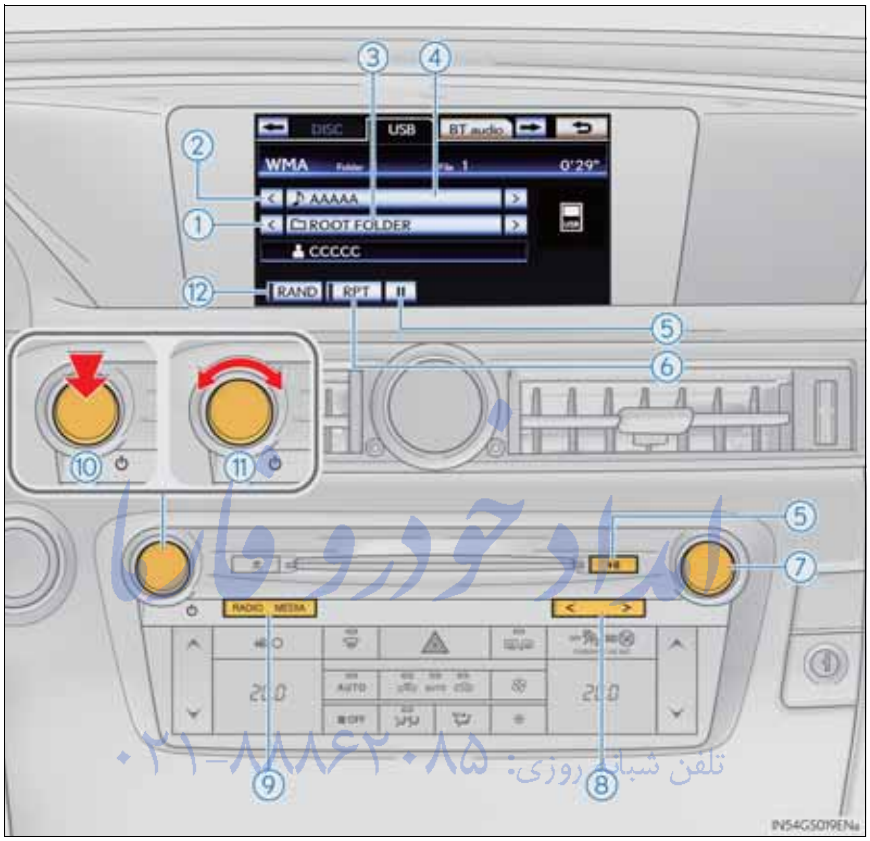
Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable player.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Connecting a USB memory enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

Press the “MEDIA” button if a USB memory has already been connected. Select the “USB” tab or press the “MEDIA” button repeatedly until the “USB” tab is selected.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



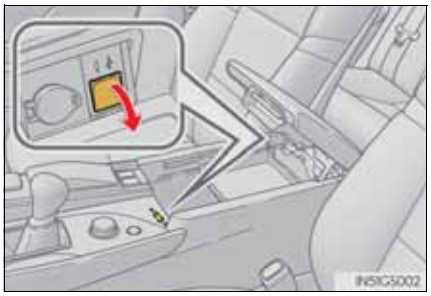
1. Folder/album selection
2. Track/file selection
3. Displays folder/album list
4. Displays track/file list
5. Play/pause
6. Repeat play
7. “TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Track/file selection
8. “CH•TRACK” button: Track/file selection/fast forward/rewind
9. MEDIA button
10. Power
11. Volume
12. Random playback

FarmaSOS.com
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی

Connecting the USB memory

1 Open the console box, open the cover and connect a USB memory.

Turn on the power of the USB memory if it is not turned on.



2 Press the “MEDIA” button.

Playing a USB memory

■ Play/pause

Select ► to play, select ❚❚ to pause or press ►❚❚ to play/pause.

▶ Tag mode



▶ Folder mode



ایران خودرو فارما
FarmaSoft.com

Selecting a folder/album

Select “<” or “>” on the screen to select the next/previous folder/album.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting a folder, artist or album

1 Select the folder/album name on the screen.



2 Select the desired tab and select the desired folder, artist or album.



Character screen buttons, “ABC”, “DEF” etc., allow a direct jump to list entries that begin with the same letter as the character button.
Each time the same character screen button is selected, the list starting with the subsequent character is displayed.

1/3, 2/3, 3/3: Select this screen button to change between Latin, Cyrillic and Greek characters.

, : Select to move the list up or down by 5 folder/artist/album groups.

“TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the folder/artist/album list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Select to scroll to the end of the name.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۳۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Select ◄ to move to the beginning of the name.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a file/track

■ Selecting one file/track at a time

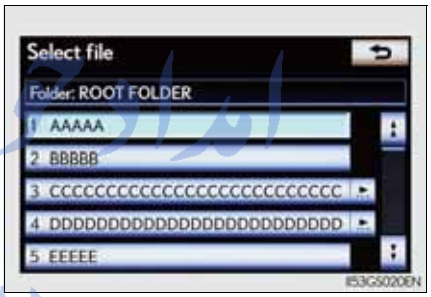
Select “<” or “>” on the screen to select the next/previous file/track.

Turn the “TUNE/SCROLL” knob or press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to select the desired file/track.

■ Selecting a file/track from the list

1 Select the file/track name on the screen to display the following file/track list screen.

2 Select the desired file/track number.



, : Select to move the list up or down by 5 file/track groups.

“CH•TRACK” button: Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to scroll through the file/track list one by one.

“TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the file/track list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Select to scroll to the end of the name. Select to move to the beginning of the name.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a file/track

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button.

FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۵ ۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲

Random playback

■ Playing files/tracks from a particular folder in random order

Select “RAND” on the screen.
Each time “RAND” is selected, the mode changes as follows:
random (1 folder/album random) → folder/album random (all folders/albums random) → off

■ Playing the all folders/albums from a USB memory in random order

Select “RAND” repeatedly until “FLD.RAND”/“ALB.RAND” appears on the screen.

To cancel, select “RAND” again.

Repeat play

■ Repeating a file/track

Select “RPT” on the screen.
Each time “RPT” is selected, the mode changes as follows:

- When “RAND” is off
  file/track repeat → folder/album repeat → off
- When “RAND” is on
  file/track repeat → off

■ Repeating a folder/album

Select “RPT” repeatedly until “FLD.RPT”/“ALB.RPT” appears on the screen.

To cancel, select “RPT” again.

Available except when random playback is selected

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ If you select 

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ USB memory functions

- When the USB memory is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB memory will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB memory will resume playing from the same point it was last used.
- Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. Disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve some malfunctions.

■ When using a USB memory

You may be unable to use the instrument panel power outlet if the USB memory is connected to the USB port at the same time.

■ Error messages for USB memory

“USB Error”: This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection.

“No music files found.”:This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included in the USB memory.

■ USB memory

- Compatible devices
  USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback.
- Compatible device formats
  The following device formats can be used:
  - USB communication formats: USB2.0 HS (480 Mbps) and FS (12 Mbps)
  - File formats: FAT16/32 (Windows)
  - Correspondence class: Mass storage class

  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

  Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:
  - Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
  - Maximum number of folders in a device: 3000 (including the root)
  - Maximum number of files in a device: 9999
  - Maximum number of files per folder: 255

ایراد خودرو فارسی
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsiSOS.com

● MP3 and WMA files
MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format. Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.
WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format. This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.
There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 8-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 48-320 (kbps, VBR)

● File names
The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags
ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.
The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags.
(The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)
WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ (۰۲۱)
IranSOS.com

- MP3 and WMA playback
  - When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
  - When the USB device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Extensions
  If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be skipped (not played).
- Playback
  - To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
  - There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
  - Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ While driving

Do not connect an USB memory or operate the controls.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the USB memory or its terminal

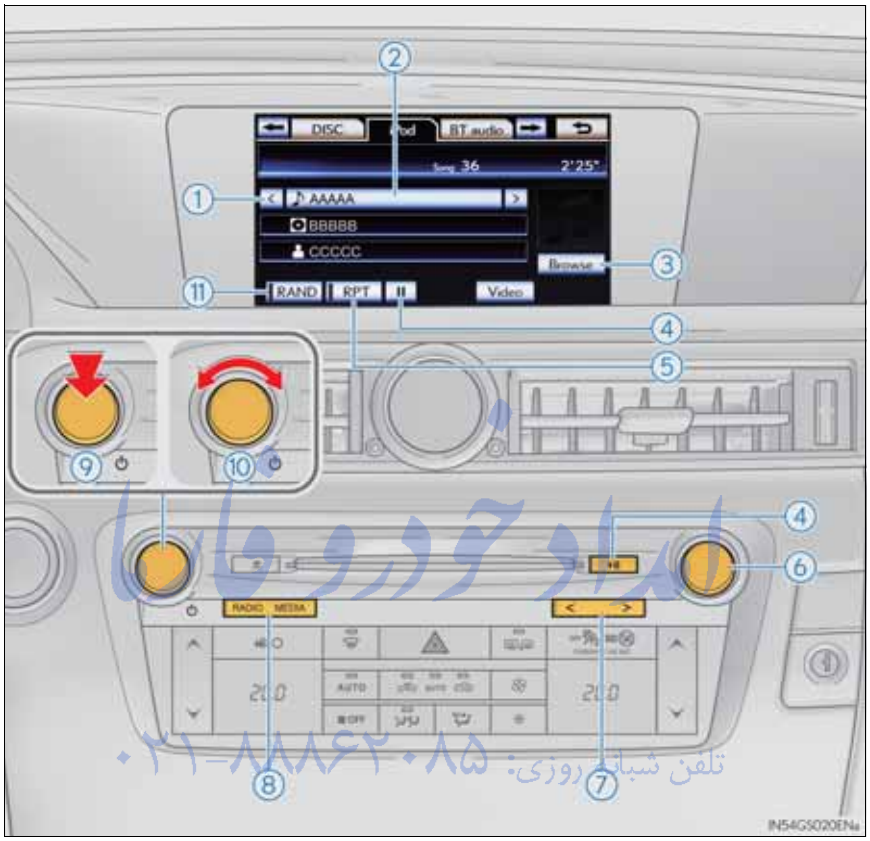
- Do not leave USB memory in the vehicle. The temperature inside of the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the USB memory.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Connecting an iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

Press the “MEDIA” button if an iPod has already been connected. Select the “iPod” tab or press the “MEDIA” button repeatedly until the “iPod” tab is selected.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



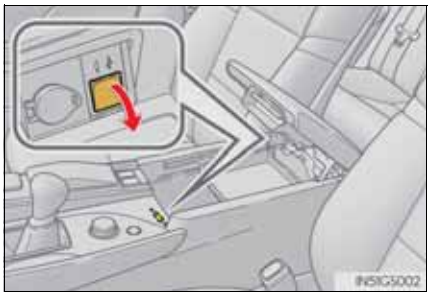
1. Track selection
2. Displays track list
3. Selecting a play mode
4. Play/pause
5. Repeat play
6. “TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Track selection
7. “CH•TRACK” button: Track selection/fast forward/rewind
8. MEDIA button
9. Power
10. Volume
11. Random playback

FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵-۰۲۱

Connecting an iPod

1 Open the console box, open the cover and connect an iPod using an iPod cable.

Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.



2 Press the “MEDIA” button.

Cover art display settings

When the track currently being played has cover art data, it can be displayed.

1 Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch and select “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.

2 Select “Audio” on the “Setup” screen.

3 Select “iPod settings”.



4 Select “Display cover art”



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

5 Select “On” or “Off”.



6 After iPod setting has been changed, select “OK”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Playing iPod

■ Play/pause

Select ► to play, select ❚❚ to pause or press ►❚❚ to play/pause.



■ Selecting a play mode

1 Select “Browse”.



2 Select the desired play mode.

1/3►, 2/3►, 3/3►: Select this screen button to change between Latin, Cyrillic and Greek characters.



ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSO.com

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a track

■ Selecting one track at a time

Select “<” or “> on the screen to select the next/previous track.

Turn the “TUNE/SCROLL” knob or press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to select the desired track.

■ Selecting a track from the list

1 Select the track name on the screen to display the following track list screen.

2 Select the desired track number.



, : Select to move the list up or down by 5 track groups.

“CH•TRACK” button: Press “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button to scroll through the track list one by one.

“TUNE/SCROLL” knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counter-clockwise to quickly scroll up or down the track list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Select to scroll to the end of the name. Select to move to the beginning of the name.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a track

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold “<” or “>” on the “CH•TRACK” button.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarnaSOS.com

Random playback

■ Playing tracks in random order

Select “RAND” on the screen.
Each time “RAND” is selected, the mode changes as follows:
track shuffle → album shuffle → off

■ Playing the albums in random order

Select “RAND” repeatedly until “ALB.RAND” appears on the screen.

To cancel, select “RAND” again.

Repeat play

Select “RPT” on the screen.

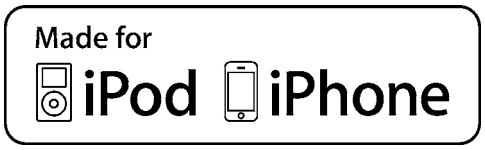
“RPT” appears on the screen.
To cancel, select “RPT” again.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ If you select

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ About iPod



- “Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.
- iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ iPod cover art

- Depending on the iPod and the songs in the iPod, iPod cover art may be displayed. This function can be changed to “On” or “Off”. (→P. 524)
- It may take time to display iPod cover art, and the iPod may not be operated while the cover art display is in process.
- Only iPod cover art that is saved in JPEG format can be displayed.

■ iPod functions

- When the iPod connected to the system includes iPod video, the system can only output the sound by selecting “Video” on the “iPod” screen.
- Depending on the iPod, the video sound may not be able to be heard.
- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.

■ When using an iPod

You maybe unable to use the instrument panel power outlet if the iPod is connected to the USB port at the same time.

■ Battery charge

When an iPod is connected using a genuine iPod cable, the iPod starts charging its battery.

■ Error messages for iPod

“iPod error”:
This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.

“No music files found.”:
This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.

“Please check the iPod firmware version.”:
This indicates that the software version is not compatible. Perform the iPod firmware updates and try again.

“iPod authorization failed.”:
This indicates that it failed to authorize the iPod. Please check your iPod.

امداد خودرو
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Compatible models

The following iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod classic®, iPod touch® and iPhone® devices can be used with this system.

■ Made for

- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod with video
- iPod nano (6th generation)
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)
- iPod nano (1st generation)
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ While driving

Do not connect an iPod or operate the controls.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the iPod or its terminal

- Do not leave the iPod in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the iPod.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the iPod while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

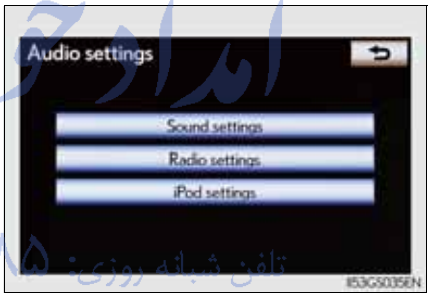
Optimal use of the audio/video system

1 Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Setup”.

2 Select “Audio”.

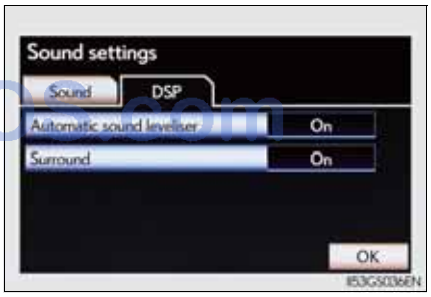


3 Select “Sound settings”.



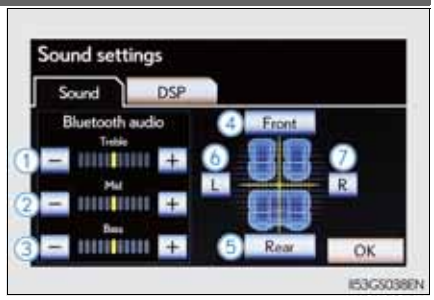
4 Select the “Sound” or “DSP” tab.

After sound setting has been changed, select “OK”.



امداد خودرو فارنا
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarnaSO.com

“Sound” tab



①②③ Select “-” or “+” to adjust the treble, mid or bass.

④⑤ Select “Front” or “Rear” to adjust the front/rear audio balance.

⑥⑦ Select “L” or “R” to adjust the left/right audio balance.

■ “DSP” tab



① Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) on/off

② Surround on/off

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ The sound quality level is adjusted individually

The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted for the each audio mode separately.

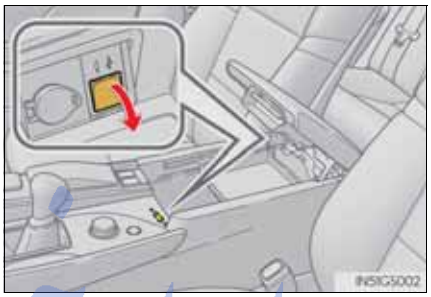
■ About Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed, wind noise or other noise.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

1 Open the console box, open the cover and connect the portable audio device.



2 Press the "MEDIA" button.



3 Select the "AUX" tab on the screen or press the "MEDIA" button repeatedly to change to AUX mode.

FarmaSOS.com

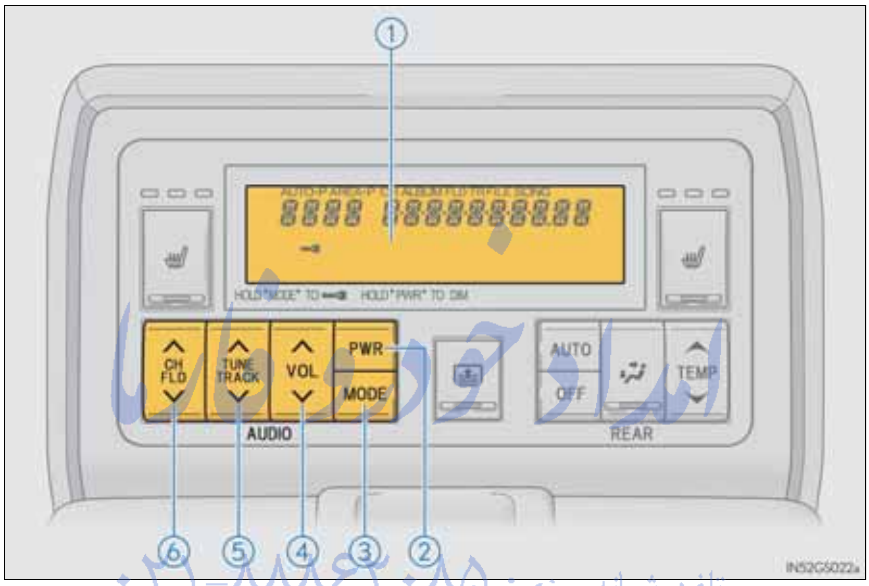
■ Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

Some front audio features can be controlled from the rear seats.



1. Display
2. Power on/off
3. Selecting an audio source
4. Volume up/down
5. Selecting a track or file etc.
6. Selecting a preset station or folder etc.

FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

Turning the power on/off

Press PWR to turn the front audio system on.

Pressing the button again turns the system off.

Changing the audio source

Press MODE to change the audio source. The audio source as follows each time the button is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, or if the external device is not connected, that mode will be skipped.

FM → DAB → DVD player → iPod or USB memory → Bluetooth® audio player → AUX → AM

Adjusting the volume

Press "∧" on VOL to increase the volume and "∨" to decrease the volume.

Press and hold the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting a radio station

■ Select a radio station

1 Press MODE to select a frequency band.

2 Press "∧" or "∨" on TUNE TRACK to seek the frequency.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold TUNE TRACK until you hear a beep.

■ Select a preset station

1 Press MODE to select a frequency band.

2 Press "∧" or "∨" on CH FLD to select a preset station.

Selecting a track/folder/file

■ Audio CD

1 Press MODE to select the DVD player.

2 Press "∧" or "∨" on TUNE TRACK to select a track.

■ Bluetooth® audio player

1 Press MODE to select the Bluetooth® audio player.

2 Press "∧" or "∨" on CH FLD to select an folder.

3 Press "∧" or "∨" on TUNE TRACK to select a file.

■ iPod

1 Press MODE to select the iPod.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

2 Press “∧” or “∨” on 

to select a file.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting a chapter (DVD video mode)

1 Press MODE to select the DVD player.

2 Press “∧” or “∨” on TUNE TRACK to select a chapter.

Selecting a file

■ MP3 disc or WMA disc

1 Press MODE to select the DVD player.

2 Press “∧” or “∨” on CH FLD to select a folder.

3 Press “∧” or “∨” on TUNE TRACK to select a file.

■ USB memory

1 Press MODE to select the USB memory.

2 Press “∧” or “∨” on CH FLD to select a folder.

3 Press “∧” or “∨” on TUNE TRACK to select a file.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a chapter or file

Press and hold “∧” or “∨” on 

.

■ Button lock function

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 429)

■ Rear control panel illumination off function

Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. (→P. 429)

■ When “ERROR”, “WAIT” or “NO MUSIC” is shown on the display

Refer to the following and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

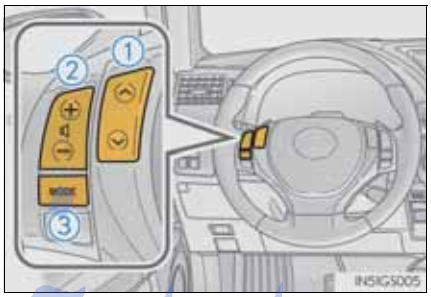
“ERROR”:This indicates a trouble either in the disc or inside the player. The disc may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

“WAIT”:Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.

“NO MUSIC”:This indicates that an MP3/WMA file is not included in the disc.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



① Radio mode:Selects a radio station

DAB mode:Selects a service and channel

Audio CD mode: Selects a track

MP3/WMA disc mode: Selects a file and folder

DVD mode:Selects a chapter

Bluetooth® audio mode: Selects a track and album

iPod mode: Selects a track

USB memory mode: Selects a file and folder

② Volume

③ Turns the power on, selects audio source

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Turning on the power

Press MODE when the audio system is turned off.

Changing the audio source

Press MODE to select an audio mode.
Each press changes the mode sequentially if the desired mode is ready to use.

Adjusting the volume

Press ⊕ to increase the volume and ⊖ to decrease the volume.

Silencing a sound or pause the current operation

Press and hold MODE.

To cancel, press and hold MODE again.

Selecting the preset station or service

1 Press MODE to select the radio or DAB mode.

2 Press ∧ or ∨ to select.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۵ ۷۲۱-۸۸۸۴
FarmaSOS.com

Seeking a radio station or channel

1 Press MODE to select the radio or DAB mode.

2 Press and hold  or  switch until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press either switch.

Selecting a track/file or chapter

1 Press MODE to select the audio CD, MP3/WMA disc, DVD, Bluetooth® audio, iPod, or USB memory mode.

2 Press  or  to select.

To return to the beginning of the current track, file or chapter, press the  switch once quickly.

Selecting an album

1 Press MODE to select Bluetooth® audio or USB memory mode.

2 Press and hold  or  until a beep is heard to select.

Selecting a folder

1 Press MODE to select the MP3/WMA disc or USB memory mode.

2 Press and hold  or  until a beep is heard to select.

CAUTION

■ To reduce the risk of an accident

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

امداد خودرو ایران
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۹۱
FarmaSOS.com

Hands-free system (for cellular phone)

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your cellular phone without touching it.

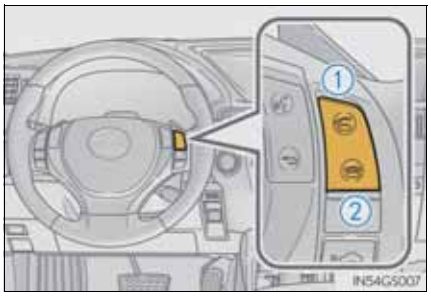
This system supports Bluetooth® cellular phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows a cellular phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and outgoing/incoming calls.

The illustrations of the hands-free system screens shown here may slightly vary depending on the type of the system.

Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display: The hands-free system function can be displayed and operated on the “Side Display”. For details, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Telephone switch



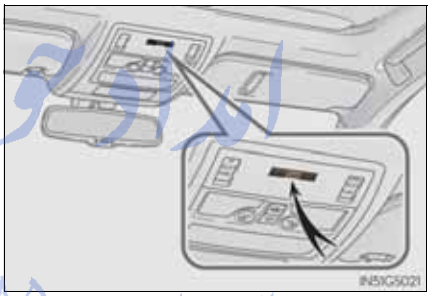
① Off hook switch
- Sending
- Receiving
- “Telephone” screen display

② On hook switch
- End call
- Refuse call

Microphone

You can use the microphone when talking on the phone.

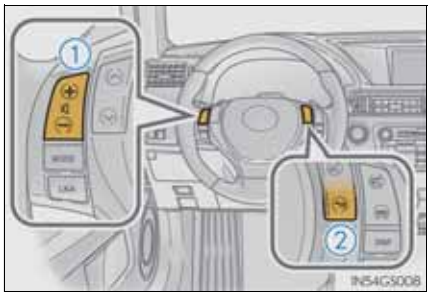
The person you are speaking to can be heard from the front speakers.



To use the hands-free system, you must register your Bluetooth® phone in the system. (→P. 557)

FarmaSOS.com

Steering switch



① Adjusting the volume

Press ⊕ to increase the volume and ⊖ to decrease the volume. Hold the switch in that position to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

② Back switch

Press ↩.

To return to the previous screen.

Status display

You can check indicators such as signal strength and battery charge on the “Telephone” screen.



① Connection status

② Battery charge

③ Call area

④ Signal strength

ایران خودرو وارنا
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۸
FarmaSOS.com

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Good  ⟷ No connection 
Battery charge	Full  ⟷ Empty 
Call area	“Rm”: Roaming area
Signal strength	Excellent  ⟷ Poor 

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ When using the hands-free system

- The audio system is muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - If a window is open
  - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - If the air conditioning is set to high
  - There is an effect from the network of the cellular phone

■ Conditions under which the system will not operate

- If using a cellular phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the cellular phone is turned off
- If you are outside service range
- If the cellular phone is not connected
- If the cellular phone's battery is low
- When the cellular phone is not connected, "No connect" is displayed.

■ Bluetooth® antenna

The antenna is built into the instrument panel. If the cellular phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ Battery charge/Signal status

- This display may not correspond exactly with the cellular phone itself.
- When the cellular phone is out of the service area or in a place inaccessible by radio waves, "No service" is displayed.

■ When using Bluetooth® audio and hands-free system at the same time

The following problems may occur.

- The Bluetooth® connection may be cut.
- Noise may be heard on the Bluetooth® audio playback.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۷۸۸۶۲۰۸۰
FarmaSOS.com

■ About the phonebook in this system

The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Speed dial
- Image data
- Messages
- Quick reply messages
- All phone settings

When you delete the phone, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.

■ When you release your car

Be sure to initialize your data. (→P. 396)

■ About Bluetooth®

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ Compatible models

This system supports the following service.

- Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 2.1+EDR or higher)
- Profiles
  - HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.5 or higher)
  - OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1 or higher
  - PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
  - MAP (Message Access Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
  - DUN (Dial-Up Networking Profile) Ver.1.1 or higher*

*: This profile is necessary when using connected services. For details, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone, and take OPP, PBAP, MAP or DUN service individually.

If the connected Bluetooth® phone version is older than recommended or incompatible, this function may not be used.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Certification

Hereby, Pioneer, declares that this DVZ-0018 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.



Pioneer

CE

EC Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer: Pioneer Corporation
1-1, Shin-ogura, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi,
Kanagawa 212-0031, JAPAN

EU Representative: Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

1999/5/EC Radio & Telecommunication Terminal Equipment Directive

The product covered by this declaration

Receiver Assy, Multi-Media Module

model **DVZ-0018**

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the above specified Directive by meeting following standards:
EN300328 V1.7.1, EN300440-2 V1.4.1, EN301489-1 V1.8.1,
EN301489-3 V1.4.1, EN301489-17 V2.1.1, ISO7637-2:2004,
EN62479 : 2010 and EN60065 : 2002 + A1 : 2006 + A11 : 2008 + A2 : 2010

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the above specified Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE11-006

The CE mark was first applied in: 2011

Done at Melsele

13/05/2011

Ivan Vlietinck

Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telefoon +32 (0)3 570 05 11 - Fax +32 (0)3 570 08 86 - URL http://www.pioneer.eu - BTW BE 406.999.132 - RPR Dendermonde

امداد خودرو فارسا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۸۳۴۹۰۸۵
FarsaSOS.com

Hereby, Pioneer, declares that this DVZ-0118 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.



Pioneer CE

EC Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer: Pioneer Corporation
1-1, Shin-ogura, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi,
Kanagawa 212-0031, JAPAN

EU Representative: Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

1999/5/EC Radio & Telecommunication Terminal Equipment Directive

The product covered by this declaration

Receiver Assy, Multi-Media Module

model **DVZ-0118**

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the above specified Directive by meeting following standards:
EN300328 V1.7.1, EN300440-2 V1.4.1, EN301489-1 V1.8.1,
EN301489-3 V1.4.1, EN301489-17 V2.1.1, ISO7637-2:2004,
EN62479 : 2010 and EN60065 : 2002 + A1 : 2006 + A11 : 2008 + A2 : 2010

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the above specified Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE11-006

The CE mark was first applied in: 2011

Done at Melsele

13/05/2011

Ivan Vlietinck

Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telefoon +32 (0)3 570 05 11 - Fax +32 (0)3 570 08 86 - URL http://www.pioneer.eu - BTW BE 406.999.132 - RPR Dendermonde

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ For vehicles sold in Montenegro

Ovim , Pioneer, izjavljuje da ovaj DVZ-0118 je usklađen
sa bitnim zahtjevima idrugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Hereby, Pioneer, declares that this NXH-9218 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.



Pioneer

CE

EC Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer: Pioneer Corporation
1-1, Shin-ogura, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi,
Kanagawa 212-0031, JAPAN

EU Representative: Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

1999/5/EC Radio & Telecommunication Terminal Equipment Directive

The product covered by this declaration

Combination Car Navigation Head Unit

model **NXH-9218**

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the above specified Directive by meeting following standards:
EN300328 V1.7.1, EN300440-2 V1.4.1, EN301489-1 V1.8.1,
EN301489-3 V1.4.1, EN301489-17 V2.1.1, ISO7637-2:2004,
EN62479 : 2010 and EN60065 : 2002 + A1 : 2006 + A11 : 2008 + A2 : 2010

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the above specified Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE11-004

The CE mark was first applied in: 2011

Done at Melsele

29/04/2011

Ivan Vlietinck

Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telefoon +32 (0)3 570 05 11 - Fax +32 (0)3 570 08 86 - URL http://www.pioneer.eu - BTW BE 406.999.132 - RPR Dendermonde

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Hereby, Pioneer, declares that this NXH-9318 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.



Pioneer

CE

EC Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer: Pioneer Corporation
1-1, Shin-ogura, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi,
Kanagawa 212-0031, JAPAN

EU Representative: Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

1999/5/EC Radio & Telecommunication Terminal Equipment Directive

The product covered by this declaration

Combination Car Navigation Head Unit

model **NXH-9318**

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the above specified Directive by meeting following standards:
EN300328 V1.7.1, EN300440-2 V1.4.1, EN301489-1 V1.8.1,
EN301489-3 V1.4.1, EN301489-17 V2.1.1, ISO7637-2:2004,
EN62479 : 2010 and EN60065 : 2002 + A1 : 2006 + A11 : 2008 + A2 : 2010

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the above specified Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE11-004

The CE mark was first applied in: 2011

Done at Melsele

29/04/2011

Ivan Vlietinck

Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telefoon +32 (0)3 570 05 11 - Fax +32 (0)3 570 08 86 - URL http://www.pioneer.eu - BTW BE 406.999.132 - RPR Dendermonde

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Hereby, Pioneer, declares that this NXH-9818 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.



Pioneer

CE

EC Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer: Pioneer Corporation
1-1, Shin-ogura, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi,
Kanagawa 212-0031, JAPAN

EU Representative: Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

1999/5/EC Radio & Telecommunication Terminal Equipment Directive

The product covered by this declaration

Combination Car Navigation Head Unit

model **NXH-9818**

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the above specified Directive by meeting following standards:
EN300328 V1.7.1, EN300440-2 V1.4.1, EN301489-1 V1.8.1,
EN301489-3 V1.4.1, EN301489-17 V2.1.1, ISO7637-2:2004,
EN62479 : 2010 and EN60065 : 2002 + A1 : 2006 + A11 : 2008 + A2 : 2010

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the above specified Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE11-004

The CE mark was first applied in: 2011

Done at Melsele

29/04/2011

Ivan Vlietinck

Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telefoon +32 (0)3 570 05 11 - Fax +32 (0)3 570 08 86 - URL http://www.pioneer.eu - BTW BE 406.999.132 - RPR Dendermonde

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Hereby, Pioneer, declares that this NXH-9918 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.



Pioneer

CE

EC Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer: Pioneer Corporation
1-1, Shin-ogura, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi,
Kanagawa 212-0031, JAPAN

EU Representative: Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

1999/5/EC Radio & Telecommunication Terminal Equipment Directive

The product covered by this declaration

Combination Car Navigation Head Unit

model **NXH-9918**

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the above specified Directive by meeting following standards:
EN300328 V1.7.1, EN300440-2 V1.4.1, EN301489-1 V1.8.1,
EN301489-3 V1.4.1, EN301489-17 V2.1.1, ISO7637-2:2004,
EN62479 : 2010 and EN60065 : 2002 + A1 : 2006 + A11 : 2008 + A2 : 2010

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the above specified Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE11-004

The CE mark was first applied in: 2011

Done at Melsele

29/04/2011

Ivan Vlietinck

Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telefoon +32 (0)3 570 05 11 - Fax +32 (0)3 570 08 86 - URL http://www.pioneer.eu - BTW BE 406.999.132 - RPR Dendermonde

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

▶ Vehicles without navigation system

Do not use the cellular phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.

▶ Vehicles with navigation system

Use a cellular phone or connect the Bluetooth® phone only when safe and legal to do so.

NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your cellular phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Using a Bluetooth® phone

① Device name
② Bluetooth® connection status
③ Character deletion
④ Make a call



To display the screen shown above, press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Telephone” or press on the steering wheel.

آمداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Registering a Bluetooth® phone

You can register up to 5 phones in the system.

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Yes”.

If 5 Bluetooth® devices have already been registered, a registered device needs to be deleted. (→P. 561)



3 Input the passcode displayed on the screen into your phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

A passcode is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth® phones. Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth® phone’s screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth® phone according to the confirmation message.

If you want to cancel it, select “Cancel”.

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.



FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

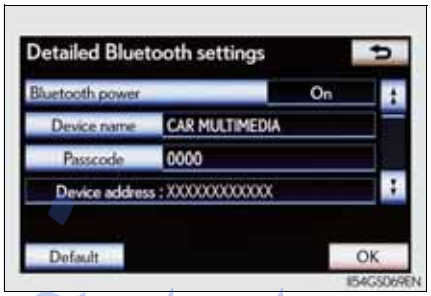
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Bluetooth® phone connection

There are two connection methods available — automatic and manual.

■ Automatic

When you register your phone, auto connection will be activated. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone on the place where connection can be established.



When the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will search for a nearby cellular phone you have registered. The system will connect with the phone that was last connected, if it is nearby.

When “Display telephone status” is set to “On”, the connection status is displayed. (→P. 612)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Manual

When the auto connection has failed or “Bluetooth* power” is turned off, you must connect Bluetooth® manually.

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Connect telephone”.



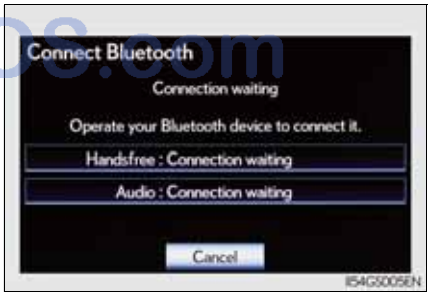
3 Select the screen button corresponding to the desired phone connection.

When the cellular phone’s device name has not been able to be obtained, “Device 1” to “Device 5” will be displayed in the order the phones were registered.



4 This screen is displayed.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.



*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

Farmasos.com

■ Reconnecting to the Bluetooth® phone

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.
If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, it must be connected manually, or the phone must be re-selected or re-entered.

■ Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

- Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.
- It may take time to connect.

■ Connecting the phone while another Bluetooth® device is connected

When another Bluetooth® device is currently connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. To disconnect the Bluetooth® device, select “Yes”.

■ Connecting the phone while 5 Bluetooth® devices have already been registered

When 5 Bluetooth® devices have already been registered, a registered device needs to be deleted. Select “Yes” to delete one or more.
Select the device to be deleted, then select “Remove”, and “Yes”.

■ If the Bluetooth® phone has a Bluetooth® audio function

When the Bluetooth® phone to be registered has a Bluetooth® audio function, this audio function will be registered automatically at the same time and confirmation message may be displayed. If this screen is displayed, select “Yes” to connect the audio function or select “No” to cancel the connection.

FarmaSOS.com

Making a call

Once the Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

■ Dialing

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Input the phone number.

To delete the inputted phone number, select .



3 Select or press on the steering wheel.

■ Dialing from the phonebook

You can dial a number from the phonebook data imported from your cellular phone. The system has one phonebook for each telephone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in each phonebook. (→P. 581)

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Choose the desired data to call from the list.

1/3, 2/3, 3/3: Select this screen button to change between Latin, Cyrillic and Greek characters.



4 Choose the number and then select or press on the steering wheel.



■ When the phonebook is empty

If your cellular phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the phonebook cannot be transferred.

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.

▶ PBAP compatible models

3 Select “Yes”.



▶ PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible models

3 Select “Transfer”.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

4 Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

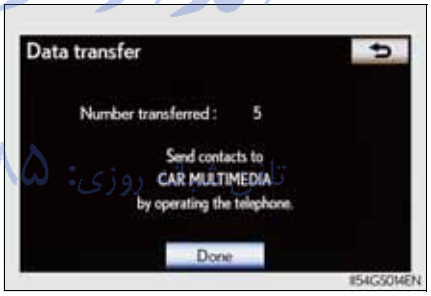


This screen appears while transferring. To cancel this function, select “Cancel”.

This operation may be unnecessary depending on the cellular phone model.

Depending on the type of cellular phone, OBEX authentication may be required when transferring phonebook data. Enter “1234” into the Bluetooth® phone.

5 When the data transfer from a PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible model is complete, “Done” will appear on the screen. Select “Done”.



امداد خودرو فارس
FarsiaSOS.com

■ Calling using speed dial

You can make a call using numbers registered from the phonebook. (→P. 581)

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Speed dials” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Select the desired tab and choose the desired number to make a call.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Dialing from history

You can call using the call history which has the 4 functions below.

“All”: All the numbers below which were memorized

“Missed”: Calls which you missed

“Incoming”: Calls which you received

“Outgoing”: Numbers which you called

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Call history” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Select the desired tab and choose the desired data from the list.



4 Select  or press  on the steering wheel.

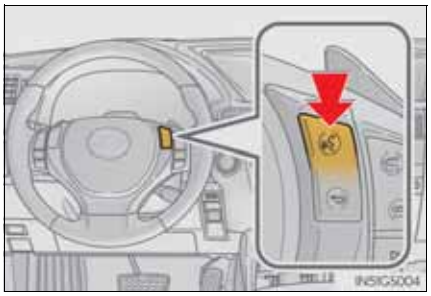


FarmaSOS.com

■ Calling using voice recognition

You can call by giving a speech command. (→P. 402)

Press .



The “Call <name>” and “Dial <number>” operating procedures are explained here. Other operating procedures are also similar.

● Calling by name

You can call by giving a name registered in the phonebook. (→P. 581)

1 Press .

2 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then after saying “Call” say the desired name, or the name and type of phone.



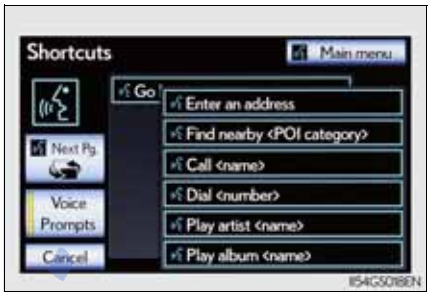
3 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say “Dial”. (You can also call by pressing on the steering wheel.)

● Calling by dial number

You can call by giving a phone number

1 Press .

2 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then after saying “Dial” say the phone number.



3 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say “Dial”. (You can also call by pressing on the steering wheel.)

■ Calling using SMS/MMS message

You can call using the SMS (Short Message Service)/MMS (Multimedia Messaging Service) message sender’s phone number.

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Messages”.

When “Message transfer” is set to “Off”, a confirmation screen will be displayed. Select “Yes”.



3 Select the “SMS/MMS” tab and then select the desired received message from the list.

The tab display may vary depending on the type of cellular phone.

4 Select or press on the steering wheel.

■ Calling using POI (vehicles with the navigation system)

امداد خودرو فارا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

You can make a call using a Point Of Interest.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Call history list

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phone book, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the call history.
- Number-withheld calls are also memorized in the system.

■ When calling by registered name in the phonebook

- When “Call <name>” on the “Shortcuts” screen is dimmed, the phonebook’s speech command recognition cannot be used. Check the Bluetooth® connection and if the contacts have been transferred to the system.
- Short or abbreviated names in the phonebook may not be recognized. Change names in the phonebook to full names.
- Sometimes a voice recognition result confirmation screen will be displayed. After confirming the result, say “Yes” or “No”.
- When the system recognizes multiple names from the phonebook, a name candidate list will be displayed on the screen. If the desired name is not displayed on the top of the screen, say the number of the name from the candidate list (1st and 2nd) to select a name from the candidate list.
- When a contact has multiple phone numbers registered in the phonebook, a candidate list will be displayed. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list (1st and 2nd) to select a phone number from the candidate list.

FarmaSOS.com

■ When calling by phone number

- Say the phone number one digit at a time. For example, if the phone number is 2345678, say “two three four five six seven eight”.
- As the system cannot recognize additional numbers, say the complete number without stopping.
- When the system recognizes multiple phone numbers, a phone number candidate list will be displayed on the screen. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list (1st and 2nd) to select a phone number from the candidate list

■ Calling by using the latest call history item

1 Press on the steering wheel to display the “Telephone” screen.

2 Press on the steering wheel to display the “Call history” screen.

3 Press on the steering wheel to select the most recent number in the history.

4 Select or press on the steering wheel.

■ To cancel voice recognition

- Press and hold .
- Press on the steering wheel.
- Select “Cancel”.

■ When using voice recognition

Use correct commands and speak clearly, otherwise the system may not correctly recognize the command. Wind or other noises may also cause the system not to recognize the desired command.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
Farma808.com

Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.

Select or press on the steering wheel.



■ To refuse a call

Select or press on the steering wheel.

■ To adjust the incoming call volume

Select “-” or “+”, turn the “power/volume” knob, or use the volume switch on the steering wheel.

■ International calls

Received international calls may not be displayed correctly depending on the cellular phone in use.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.



■ To adjust the incoming call volume

Select “-” or “+”, turn the “power/volume” knob, or use the volume switch on the steering wheel.

■ To prevent the other party from hearing your voice

Select “Mute”.

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Inputting tones

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the phonebook.

1 Select “0-9” on the “Call” screen.

2 Input the number.



If repeated tone symbols* are stored in the phonebook, “Send” and “Clear” are displayed on the right side of the screen.

*: Repeated tone symbols are symbols or numbers displayed as p or w, that come after the phone number.
(e.g. 056133w0123p#1❄)

3 Confirm the number displayed on the screen, and select “Send”.

If you select “Clear”, this function will end.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ To transfer a call

Select “Handset mode” to change from hands-free call to cellular phone call. Select “Handsfree mode” to change from cellular phone call to hands-free call.

■ To hang up

Select  or press  on the steering wheel.

Call waiting

When a connected call is interrupted by the third party, the incoming call message will be displayed.

- To talk with the other party: Select  or press  on the steering wheel.
- To refuse the call: Select  or press  on the steering wheel.

Everytime you select  or press  on the steering wheel after a call is interrupted, you will be switched to the other party.

If your cellular phone is not accepted in HFP Ver. 1.5, this function cannot be used.

■ Transferring calls

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to a cellular phone while driving.
- If you transfer from a cellular phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the cellular phone used.
- For operation of the cellular phone in use, see the phone's manual.

■ Repeated tone symbols

When the "p" pause tone is used, after waiting 2 seconds the tone data up until the next pause tone will be automatically sent. When the "w" pause tone is used, the tone data up until the next pause tone will be automatically sent after user operation.

■ While driving

Key input is unavailable.

Calls can be made by giving a speech command.

■ Interrupt call operation

Interrupt call operation may differ from depending on your phone company and the cellular phone.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Using a Bluetooth® phone message

Received messages can be forwarded from the connected Bluetooth® phone, enabling checking and replying (Quick reply).

■ Checking a message

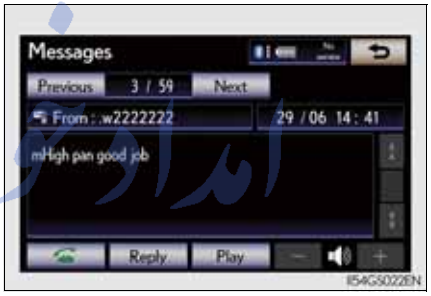
1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Messages” on the “Telephone” screen.

When “Message transfer” is set to “Off”, a confirmation screen will be displayed. Select “Yes”.

3 Select the desired message to check.

The text of the message is not displayed while driving.
Selecting “Previous” or “Next” displays the previous or next message.



4 Select “Play” to start reading out of the message. Select “Stop” to stop the function.

■ To adjust the message reading out volume

Select “-” or “+”, turn the “power/volume” knob, or use the volume switch on the steering wheel.

■ Replying a message (Quick reply)

1 Select “Reply” on the desired message screen.



FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۲۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

2 Select the desired message. Select “Send”.

While the message is being sent, a sending message screen is displayed.



■ To check the message

- Messages are displayed in the appropriate connected Bluetooth® phone’s registered mail address folder. Select the tab of the desired folder to be displayed.
- Only received messages on the connected Bluetooth® phone can be displayed.
- When the received message is an e-mail and “Update read status on telephone” is set to “On”, “Mark as unread” or “Mark as read” can be selected. Select “Mark as unread” to mark mails that have been read on the Bluetooth® phone as unread. Conversely, select “Mark as read” to mark mails that have not been read on the Bluetooth® phone as read. (→P. 594)

■ Calling using SMS/MMS message

You can call using the SMS (Short Message Service)/MMS (Multimedia Messaging Service) message sender’s phone number. (→P. 568)

■ If the message delivery failed

If message delivery has failed, a notification will be displayed on the screen.

Select “Retry” to attempt to send the message again or select “Cancel” to cancel.

■ Editing a quick reply message

You can edit the “Quick Reply Messages”. (→P. 596)

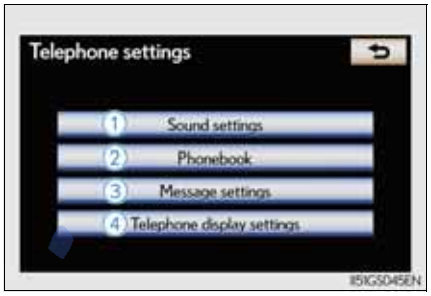
■ New message notification

If “New message incoming” and “New message voice notification” are set to “On”, a notification appears on the screen and a voice notification will be heard when a new message arrives, select “Read” to check the message, also to check the message later, select “Ignore”. When “Automatic message readout” is set to “On”, the message will be automatically read out. (→P. 594)

امداد خودرو فاریا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

You can set the hands-free system to your desired settings.

① Phone sound settings
② Phonebook settings
③ Message settings
④ Phone display settings



To display the screen shown above, press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Setup”, and select “Telephone” on the “Setup” screen.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Phone sound settings

■ Setting the volume

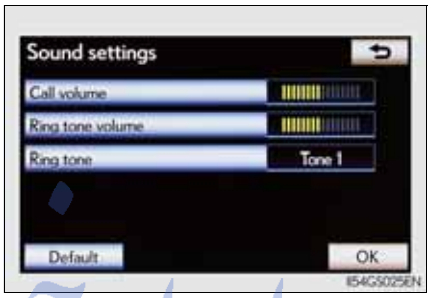
1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 578)

2 Select “Sound settings” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

3 Choose the volume setting switch.

“Call volume”: Changes the speaker volume

“Ring tone volume”: Changes the ring tone volume



4 Select “-” or “+” to lower or raise the volume, and then select “OK”.



5 When you complete all settings, select “OK”.

ایران خودرو فارس
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ Setting the ring tone

1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 578)

2 Select “Sound settings” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

3 Select “Ring tone” on the “Sound settings” screen.

4 Select the screen button corresponding to the desired ring tone.

Ring tones can be heard by selecting the screen buttons, and then “OK”.



5 When you complete setting, select “OK”.

■ Adaptive volume control

When traveling at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the system automatically raises the volume one level.

■ To return to the default phone sound settings

Select “Default”, and then “Yes”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۷۶۰۸۵۵
FarmaSOS.com

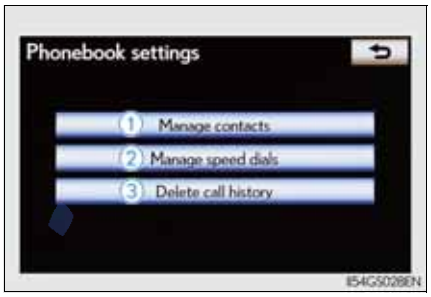
Phonebook settings

The phonebook manages a maximum of 5 phonebooks in total. The data for 1000 contacts (up to 3 numbers per contact) can be registered in each phonebook.

① Setting the phonebook

② Setting the speed dials

③ Deleting the call history



To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

1 Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Setup”, and select “Telephone” on the “Setup” screen.

2 Select “Phonebook” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

■ Setting the phonebook

● Transferring a phone number

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system. Operation methods differ between PBAP compatible and PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth® phones. If your cellular phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the phonebook cannot be transferred.

ایران خودرو
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSos.com

▶ For PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones

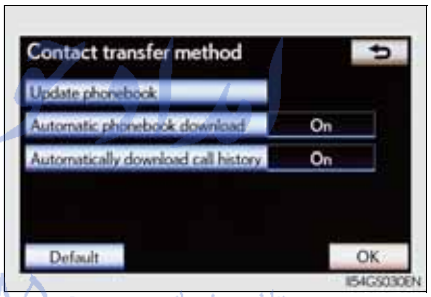
1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 581)

2 Select “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

3 Select “Transfer contacts.”.



4 Select “Update phonebook”.



5 Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

This operation may be unnecessary depending on the cellular phone model.

Depending on the type of cellular phone, OBEX authentication may be required when transferring phonebook data. Enter “1234” into the Bluetooth® phone.

If you wish to cancel the transfer before it finishes, select “Cancel”.



FamaSOS.com

▶ PBAP compatible models automatic data transfer setting

1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 581)

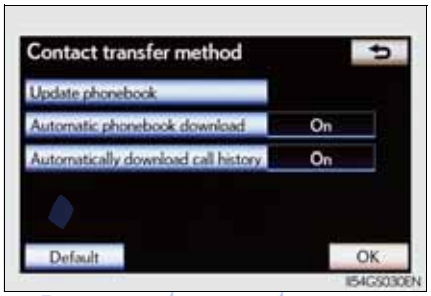
2 Select “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

3 Select “Transfer contacts.” on the “Contacts” screen.

4 Select the item to be set.

“Automatic phonebook download”: Transfer the phonebook from a connected cellular phone.

“Automatically download call history”: Transfer the call history from a connected cellular phone.



5 Select “On”, and then “OK”.



▶ For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth® phones

1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 581)

2 Select “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

3 Select “Transfer contacts.”.

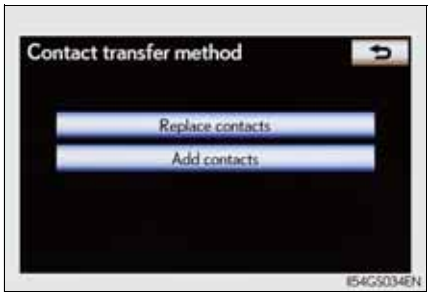


امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

4 Select “Replace contacts” or “Add contacts”.

In the case that the phonebook contains phonebook data, this screen is displayed.

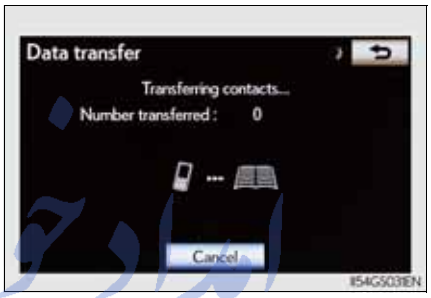


5 Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

Depending on the type of cellular phone, OBEX authentication may be required when transferring phonebook data. Enter “1234” into the Bluetooth® phone.

If you wish to cancel the transfer before it finishes, select “Cancel”.

If “Add contacts” is selected and there is an interruption during the transfer of data, the phonebook data transferred until then will be stored in the system. Please note, this is not the case when “Cancel” is selected.



6 When the transfer is complete, “Done” will appear on the screen. Select “Done”.

- Registering the phonebook data

You can register the phonebook data. Up to 3 numbers per person can be registered. New phonebook data cannot be added for PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones.

1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 581)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

2 Select “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

3 Select “New contact” on the “Contacts” screen.

4 Input the name, and select “OK”.



5 Input the phone number, and select “OK”.

If you want to use the tone signal after the phone number, input the tone signal too.



6 Select the desired phone type.



7 When two or less numbers in total are registered to this contact, this screen is displayed. When you want to add a number to this contact, select “Yes”.

● Editing the phonebook data

You can register the phone number separately. Phonebooks cannot be edited for PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones.

1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 581)

2 Select “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

FarmaSOS.com

3 Select “Edit contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

4 Choose the data to edit.

1/3▸, 2/3▸, 3/3▸: Select this screen button to change between Latin, Cyrillic and Greek characters.



5 Select the desired name or number.



6 Edit the name or number. After editing, select “OK”.

● Deleting the phonebook data

1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 581)

2 Select “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

3 Select “Delete contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

4 Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, select “Select all”.



5 Select “OK”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, select “Yes”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Phonebook data

Phonebook data is managed for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

When selling or disposing of the vehicle, delete all your data on the system. For PBAP compatible phones, delete the phonebook data after setting “Automatic phonebook download” to “Off”. (→P. 583)

■ Setting the phonebook in a different way (To display the “Contacts” screen)

1. Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)
2. Select “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.
3. Select “Options” on the “Contacts” screen.
4. Select “Manage contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

■ When another Bluetooth® device is connected during transferring a phonebook

- For PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones
  If another Bluetooth® device is connected when transferring phonebook data, depending on the phone, the connected Bluetooth® device may need to be disconnected.
- For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth® phones
  When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, select “Yes”.

■ Transferring the phone number data in a different way

1. Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)
2. Select “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.
3. Select “Transfer” on the “Contacts” screen.
4. The “Transfer contacts.” screen is displayed. The following operations are performed in the same manner as when they are performed from the “Setup” screen.

■ Editing the phonebook data in a different way

- From “Contact” screen

1. Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)
2. Select “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.
3. Choose the desired data from the list.
4. Select “Options” on the “Contact data” screen.
5. Select “Edit contact” on the “Contact data” screen.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

6 Follow the steps “Editing the phonebook data” from step 5. (→P. 585)

● From “Call history” screen

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Call history” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Choose the desired data from the list.

4 Select “Add contact” or “Update contact” on the “Call history” screen.

5 If you select “Add contact”, follow the steps “Editing the phonebook data” from step 5. (→P. 585)
If you select “Update contact”, follow the steps “Editing the phonebook data” from step 4. (→P. 585)

■ Deleting the phonebook data in a different way (PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible models)

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Choose the desired data from the list.

4 Select “Options” on the “Contact data” screen.

5 Select “Delete contact” on the “Contact data” screen.

6 A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, select “Yes”.

■ When a Bluetooth® phone is deleted.

The phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

Setting the speed dials

■ Registering the speed dial

You can register the desired phone number from the phonebook. Up to 18 numbers per phone can be registered.

1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 581)

2 Select “Manage speed dials” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

3 Select “New speed dial”.



4 Choose the data to register.

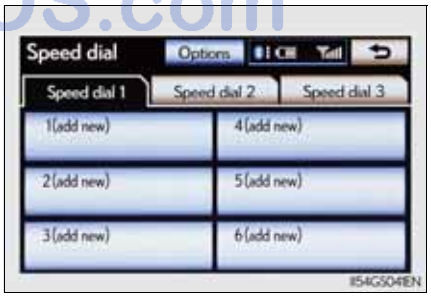
1/3, 2/3, 3/3: Select this screen button to change between Latin, Cyrillic and Greek characters.



5 Select the desired phone number.



6 Select the switch you want to register the number in.



7 If you select a switch you registered before, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to replace it, select “Yes”.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

■ Deleting the speed dial

1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 581)

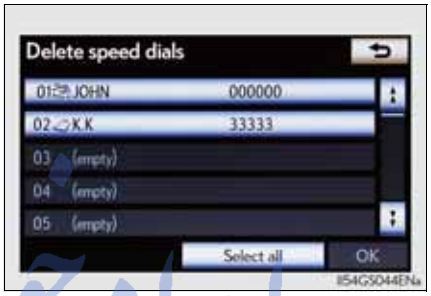
2 Select “Manage speed dials” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

3 Select “Delete speed dials” on the “Speed dials” screen.

4 Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, select “Select all”.



5 Select “OK”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, select “Yes”.

■ Setting the speed dials in a different way

● To display the “Speed dials” screen

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Speed dials” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Select “Options” on the “Speed dial” screen.

● To display the “Contacts” screen

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Select “Options” on the “Contacts” screen.

4 Select “Manage speed dials” on the “Contacts” screen.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۷۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Registering the speed dial in a different way

● From “Speed dial” screen

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Speed dials” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Select “(empty)” on the “Select speed dial location” screen.

4 Select “Yes” to on the “Speed dial” screen set new speed dial.

5 Choose the desired data from the list.

6 Select the desired phone number.

7 Follow the steps “Registering the speed dial” from step 6. (→P. 588)

● From “Contact” screen

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Choose the desired data from the list.

4 Select “Options” on the “Contact data” screen.

5 Select “Set speed dial” on the “Contact data” screen.

6 Select the desired phone number.

7 Follow the steps “Registering the speed dial” from step 6. (→P. 588)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Deleting call history

The call history can be deleted. For PBAP compatible phones, delete the call history after setting “Automatically download call history” to “Off”. (→P. 583)

1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 581)

2 Select “Delete call history” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

3 Choose the desired history to delete.



4 Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, select “Select all”.



5 Select “OK”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, select “Yes”.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Deleting call history in a different way

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Call history” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Select “Delete” on the “Call history” screen.

4 Follow the steps “Deleting call history” from step 4. (→P. 592)

■ Deleting after call history has been displayed

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Call history” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Select the desired history to delete.

4 Select “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, select “Yes”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

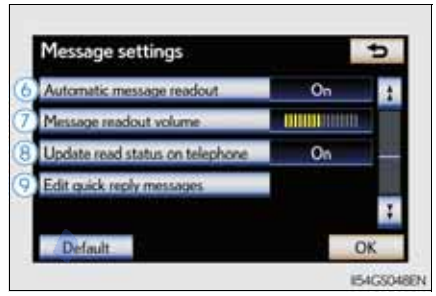
Message settings

You can change the message settings.

▶ Page 1



▶ Page 2



① Message forwarding from cellular phone on/off

② New message notification display on/off

③ New message voice notification on/off

④ Changing new message notification volume

⑤ Changing new message voice notification tone

⑥ Automatic message read out function on/off

⑦ Changing a message read out volume

⑧ Cellular phone's message read and unread status update function on/off

⑨ Editing quick reply messages

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

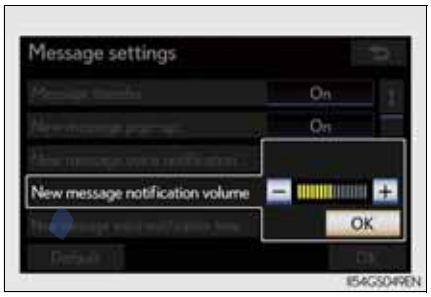
1. Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select "Setup", and select "Telephone" on the "Setup" screen.
2. Select "Messaging settings" on the "Telephone settings" screen.

■ Changing the new message notification volume

1 Display the “Messaging settings” screen. (→P. 594)

2 Select “New message notification volume” on the “Messaging settings” screen.

3 Select “-” or “+” to lower or raise the volume, and then “OK”.



4 When you complete setting, select “OK”.

■ Changing the new message notification tone

1 Display the “Messaging settings” screen. (→P. 594)

2 Select “New message notification tone” on the “Messaging Settings” screen.

3 Select the desired new message notification tone.

New message notification tones can be heard by selecting the screen buttons, and then “OK”.



4 When you complete setting, select “OK”.

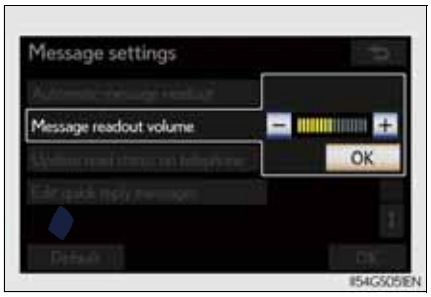
امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Changing the message read out volume

1 Display the “Messaging settings” screen. (→P. 594)

2 Select “Message readout volume” on the “Messaging settings” screen.

3 Select “-” or “+” to lower or raise the volume, and then “OK”.



4 When you complete setting, select “OK”.

■ Editing the quick reply messages

Quick reply messages can be edited. 15 messages have already been stored.

1 Display the “Messaging settings” screen. (→P. 594)

2 Select “Edit quick reply messages” on the “Messaging settings” screen.

3 Select the screen button corresponding to the desired message.



4 Edit the message. After editing, select “OK” and then “OK”.

■ To display the “Message settings” screen in a different way

1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 556)

2 Select “Messages” on the “Telephone” screen.

3 Select “Options” on the “Messages” screen.

■ Editing the quick reply messages in a different way

1 Display the desired message on “Messages” screen. (→P. 576)

2 Select “Reply” on the desired message screen.

3 Select “Edit” on the “Quick reply messages”.

4 Select the screen button corresponding to the desired message.

5 When you complete editing, select “OK” and then on the “Edit Quick Replay Message” screen.

■ Adaptive volume control

When traveling at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the system automatically raises the volume.

■ To return to the default message settings

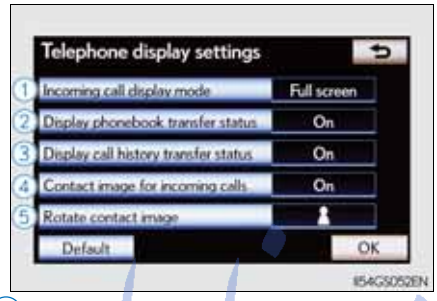
Select “Default”, and then “Yes”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

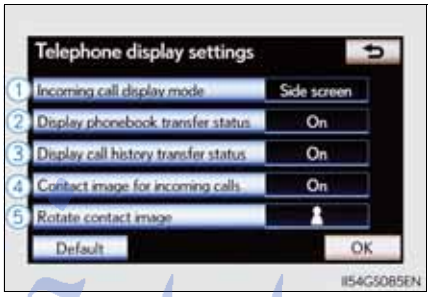
Telephone display settings

Depending on the phone, this function may not be available even if the phone is PBAP compatible.

▶ For 8-inch display



▶ For 12.3-inch display



① Changing the incoming call display mode

② Changing the display phonebook transfer status on/off*

③ Changing the display call history transfer status on/off*

④ Changing the contact image during incoming call on/off*

⑤ Changing the rotate contact image*

*: For PBAP compatible models

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

1 Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Setup”, and select “Telephone” on the “Setup” screen.

2 Select “Telephone display settings” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

امداد خودرو فاریا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Changing the incoming call display mode

You can select the method of the incoming call display.

1 Display the “Telephone display settings” screen. (→P. 598)

2 Select “Incoming call display mode” on the “Telephone display settings” screen.

▶ For 8-inch display

3 Select “Full screen” or “Drop down”, and select “OK”.



“Full screen”: The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

“Drop down”: A message is displayed at the top of the screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

▶ For 12.3-inch display

3 Select “Main screen” or “Side screen”, and select “OK”.



“Main screen”: The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

“Side screen”: A message is displayed at the side screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

امداد خودرو ۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ Changing the rotating contact images

For PBAP compatible models, when “Contact image for incoming calls” is set to “On”, images stored together with phone numbers in the cellular phone’s phonebook will be transferred and displayed during the incoming call. The orientation of the image can be set.

1 Display the “Telephone display settings” screen. (→P. 598)

2 Select “Rotate contact image” on the “Telephone display settings” screen.

3 Choose the desired orientation of the image to be displayed, and then “OK”.

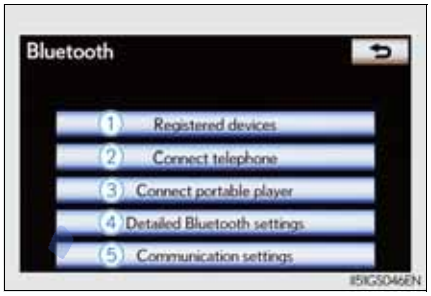
■ To return to the default detailed phone settings

Select “Default”, and then “Yes”.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.

① Registered devices
② Connect telephone
③ Connect portable player
④ Detailed Bluetooth® settings
⑤ Communication settings



To display the screen shown above, press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select “Setup”, select “Bluetooth*” on the “Setup” screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Registered devices

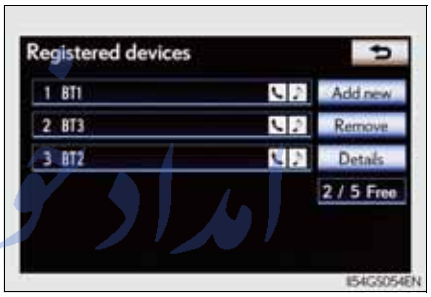
■ Registering a Bluetooth® devices

Bluetooth® devices compatible with phones (HFP) and portable players (AVP) can be registered simultaneously. Phones (HFP) and portable players (AVP) (maximum of 5) can be registered.

1 Display the “Bluetooth*” screen. (→P. 601)

2 Select “Registered devices” on the “Bluetooth*” screen.

3 Select “Add new” to register a Bluetooth® device to the system.



When 5 Bluetooth® devices have already been registered, a registered device needs to be deleted.

Select “Yes” to delete one or more.

Select the device to be deleted, then select “Remove”, and then “Yes”.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

4 Input the passcode displayed on the screen into the Bluetooth® device.



A passcode is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth® devices. Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth® phone's screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth® phone according to the confirmation message.

For the operation of the Bluetooth® device, see the manual that comes with it.

If you want to cancel it, select "Cancel".

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Removing a Bluetooth® device

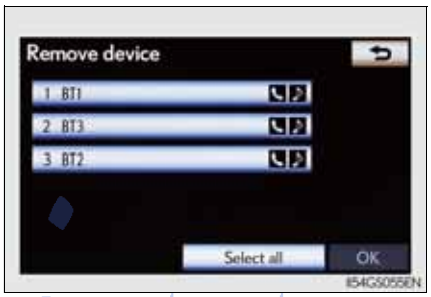
1 Display the “Bluetooth*” screen. (→P. 601)

2 Select “Registered devices” on the “Bluetooth*” screen.

3 Select “Remove” on the “Registered devices” screen.

4 Choose the desired device.

You can select multiple device and delete them at the same time.
To remove all devices, select “Select all”.



5 Select “OK”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, select “Yes”.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ Editing a Bluetooth® device

You can see the information of the Bluetooth® device on the system or edit.

● Changing a device name

1 Display the “Bluetooth*” screen. (→P. 601)

2 Select “Registered devices” on the “Bluetooth*” screen.

3 Select “Details”.



*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

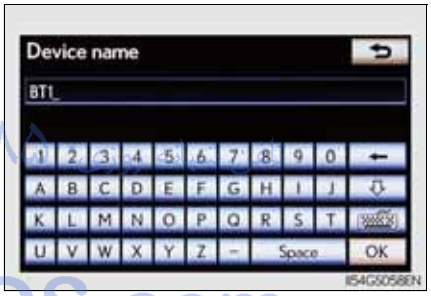
4 Select the device to be edited.



5 Select “Device name”.



6 Input the device name, and select “OK”.



7 Confirm the device name and select “OK”.

● Setting portable player connection method

1 Display the “Bluetooth*” screen. (→P. 601)

2 Select “Registered devices” on the “Bluetooth*” screen.

3 Select “Details” on the “Registered devices” screen.

4 Select the device to be edited.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۰
FarmaSOS.com

5 Select “Connect portable player from”.



6 Select the desired connection method, and select “OK”.

“Vehicle”: Select to connect the audio system to the portable player.

“Portable player”: Select to connect the portable player to the audio system.

Depending on the portable player, the “Vehicle” or “Portable player” connection method may be best. As such, refer to the manual that comes with the portable player.



ایداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۰۰۱۱
FarmaSOS.com

■ Editing the “Device name”

If you change a device name, the name registered in your cellular phone is not changed.

■ About “Device address”

The address peculiar to the system. It cannot be changed. If you have registered two Bluetooth® phones with the same device name and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to this address.

■ “My telephone no.”:

The phone number of the Bluetooth® phone is displayed on the screen. Depending on the type of phone, the phone number may not be displayed.

■ “Profiles”:

The compatibility profile of the Bluetooth® device is displayed on the screen.

■ “Connect portable player from”:

There are 2 portable player connection settings available; “Vehicle” and “Portable Player”.

■ When you delete a Bluetooth® phone

The phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

If multiple Bluetooth® phones are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth® phone to be used. You can only use one phone at a time.

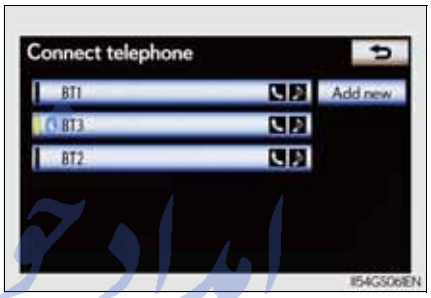
1 Display the “Bluetooth*” screen. (→P. 601)

2 Select “Connect telephone” on the “Bluetooth*” screen.

3 Choose the phone to be connected.

The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the phone.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.



*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ When another Bluetooth® device is connected during registering or selecting a phone

- When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, select “Yes”.
- The currently connected Bluetooth® phone’s screen button will have a Bluetooth® mark displayed on it. If the currently connected Bluetooth® phone’s screen button is selected, the Bluetooth® phone can be disconnected. Select “Yes” to disconnect.

■ Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

ایران خودرو ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی: FarmaSOS.com

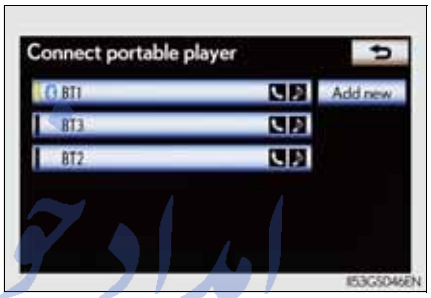
Selecting a portable player

If multiple portable players are registered, follow the procedure below to select the portable player to be used. You can only use one portable player at a time.

1. Display the “Bluetooth*” screen. (→P. 601)
2. Select “Connect portable player” on the “Bluetooth*” screen.
3. Choose the portable player to be used.

   The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the portable player.

   If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.



*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ When another Bluetooth® device is connected during registering or selecting a portable player

- When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, select “Yes”.
- The currently connected portable player’s screen button will have a Bluetooth® mark displayed on it. If the currently connected portable player’s screen button is selected, the portable player can be disconnected. Select “Yes” to disconnect.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

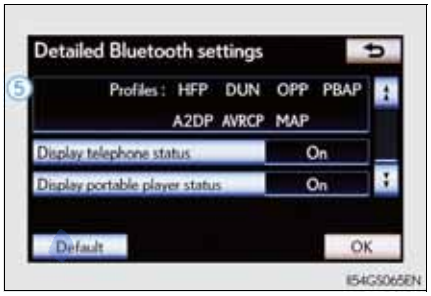
Detailed Bluetooth® settings

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.

▶ Page 1



▶ Page 2



① Changing the device connection status

② Changing the name of the connected device.

③ Changing the passcode that you registered your Bluetooth® device in the system

④ The address peculiar to the system

You cannot change this address. If the same device name is displayed on the screen of your device, refer to it.

⑤ The compatibility profile of the Bluetooth® device

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

1 Display the “Bluetooth*” screen. (→P. 601)

2 Select “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” on the “Bluetooth*” screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۲۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Changing Bluetooth* power

The Bluetooth* device is automatically connected when you turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. You can change between “On” or “Off”.

1 Display the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen. (→P. 610)

2 Select “Bluetooth* power” on the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen.

3 Select “On” or “Off”, and then “OK”.



*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ Editing the device name

1 Display the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen. (→P. 610)

2 Select “Device name” on the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen.

3 Input the device name, and select “OK”.

4 Select “OK” on the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

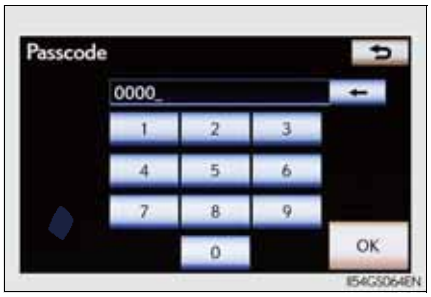
5 Interior features

■ Editing the passcode

1 Display the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen. (→P. 610)

2 Select “Passcode” on the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen.

3 Input a passcode, and select “OK”.



4 Select “OK” on the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ Bluetooth® device connection status display settings

When “Bluetooth* power” is “On” and the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the Bluetooth® phone and portable player’s connection status can be displayed. (→P. 611)

1 Display the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen. (→P. 610)

2 Select “Display telephone status” or “Display portable player status” on the “Detailed Bluetooth* settings” screen.

3 Select “On”, and then “OK”.



*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ While driving

You cannot change the state of “Bluetooth* power” from “On” to “Off” while driving, but it can be changed from “Off” to “On”.

■ To return to the default Bluetooth® settings

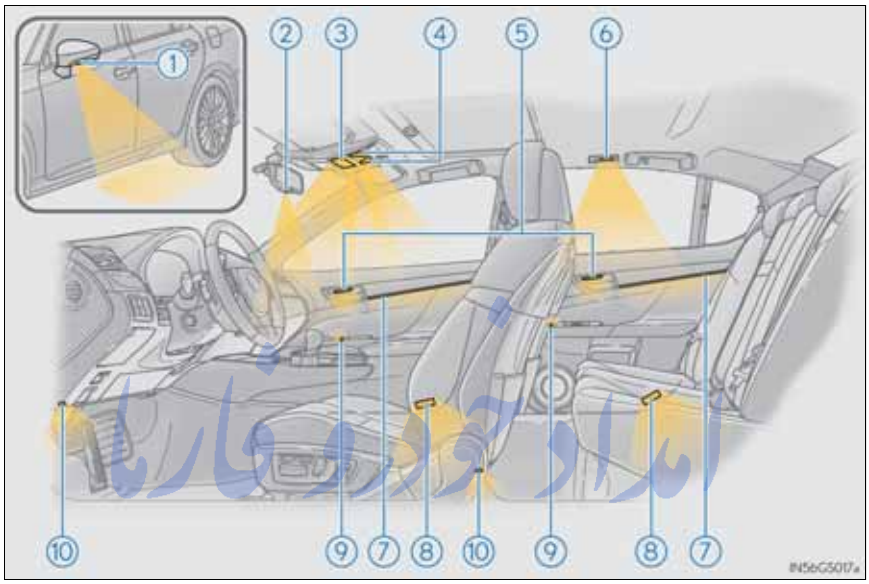
Select “Default”, and then “Yes”.

If the state of “Bluetooth* power” is changed from “Off” to “On”, Bluetooth® connection will begin.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Interior lights list

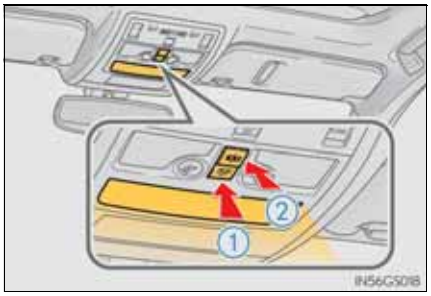


1. Outer foot lights
2. Shift lever light (if equipped)
3. Interior light (→P. 612)
4. Front personal lights (→P. 612)
5. Inside door handle lights
6. Rear personal lights (→P. 612)
7. Ornament lights
8. Door courtesy lights
9. Power window switch lights
10. Footwell lights

When the instrument panel light control switch is turned to minimum and the tail lights are on, the inside door handle lights, the ornament lights and the footwell lights will turn off. (→P. 100)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Interior light



① Turns the light on/off

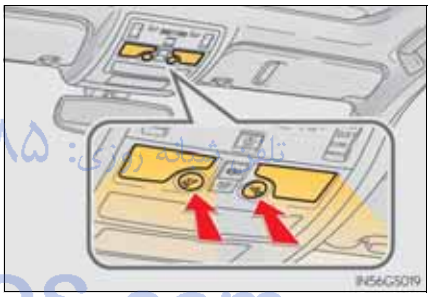
The rear personal lights are also turned on/off by the interior light operation. However, if the interior light is turned off after being turned on while the rear personal lights are turned on, the rear personal lights will not turn off simultaneously.

② Turns the door position on

Personal lights

■ Front

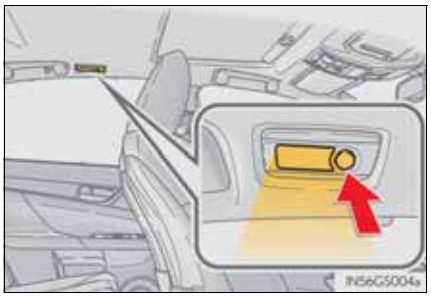
Turns the light on/off



■ Rear

Turns the light on/off

If the lights are turned on by interior light operation, the lights cannot turn off by pressing the switch.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ Illuminated entry system

The lights automatically turn on/off according to engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.

■ To prevent battery discharge

If the interior lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ Customization

Setting (e.g. the time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P. 855)

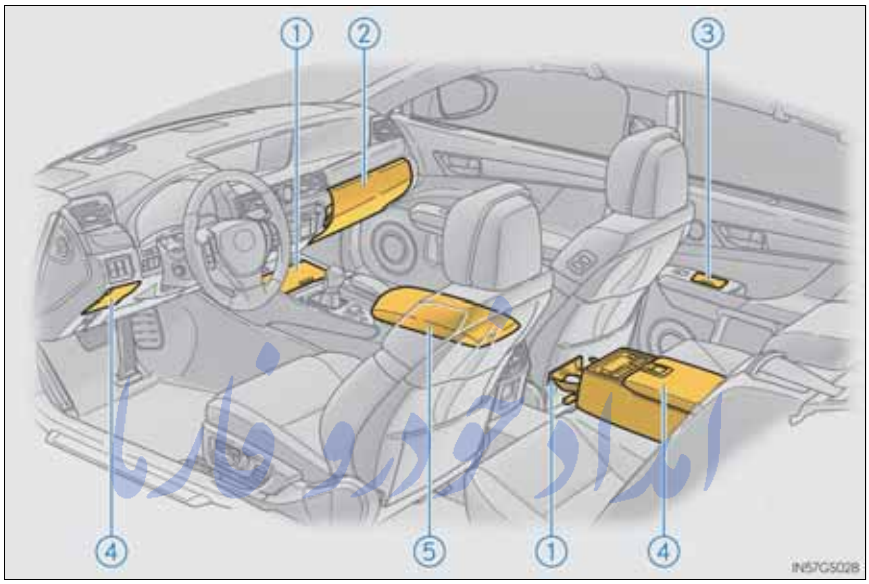
⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

List of storage features



1. Cup holders (→P. 618)
2. Glove box (→P. 616)
3. Auxiliary boxes (if equipped) (→P. 620)
   Ashtrays (if equipped) (→P. 626)
4. Auxiliary boxes (→P. 620)
5. Console box (→P. 617)

امداد خودرو فارما
۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبکه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

■ When driving or when the storage compartments are not in use

Keep the lids closed.
In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

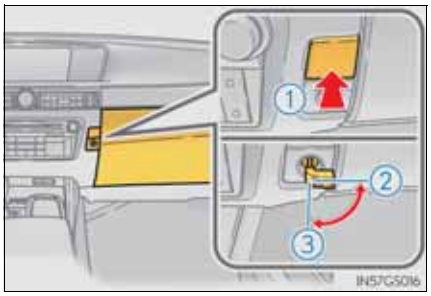
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Glove box

① Open (press the button)

② Unlock with the mechanical key

③ Lock with the mechanical key



■ Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

■ Trunk opener main switch

The trunk opener main switch is located in the glove box. (→P. 151)

■ Removing the insert

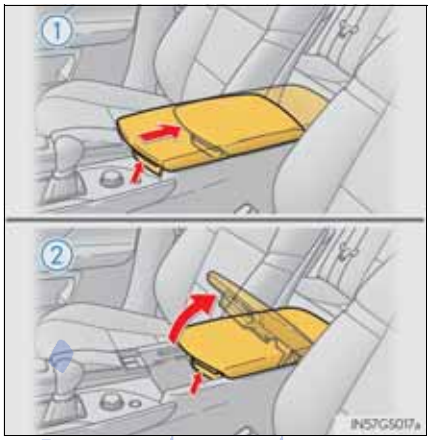
The insert inside the glove box can be removed.

■ The glove box door

An SRS knee airbag for the front passenger's seat is built into the glove box door.
(→P. 44)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Console box



① Using with half-open
Grip the knob to release the lock, and slide the armrest as far back.

② Using with fully open
Grip the knob to release the lock, and lift the armrest to open.

■ Tray in the console box

The tray slides forward/backward and can be removed.



■ Console box light

The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

⚠ CAUTION

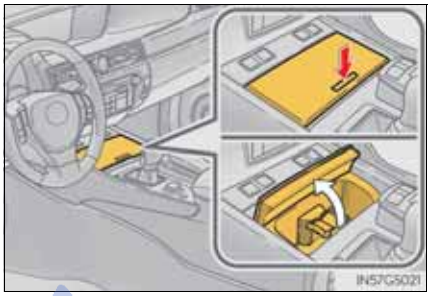
When using the console box with half-open, do not apply too much load on the armrest. Doing so may damage the armrest and may cause you to injure yourself.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Cup holders

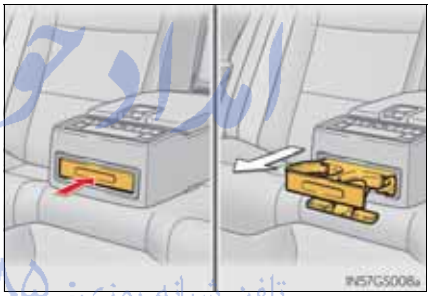
■ Front

To open, press down and release the cup holder lid.



■ Rear

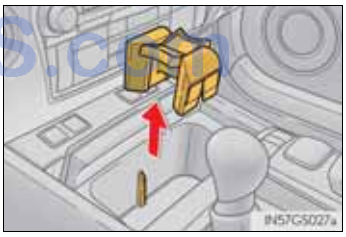
To open, pull down the armrest and press in and release the rear cup holder on the armrest.



ایران خودرو فارس
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ Removing the separate tray (front cup holder)

The cup holder insert may be removed for cleaning.



■ When stowing the cup holders (rear cup holder)

Stow the cup holder with the armrest down. The cup holder cannot be stowed if the armrest is not down.

CAUTION

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holders

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the rear cup holder

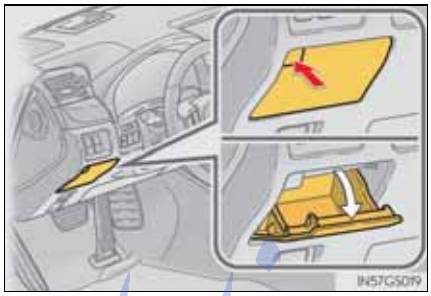
Stow the cup holder before stowing the armrest.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Auxiliary boxes

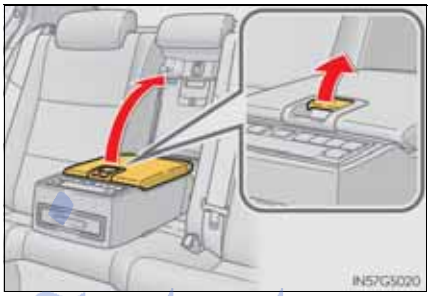
▶ Type A

Press in the button.



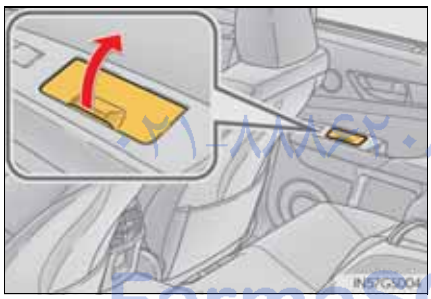
▶ Type B

Pull up the lever to release the lock and lift the lid.



▶ Type C (if equipped)

Open the lid.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the auxiliary boxes (type C)

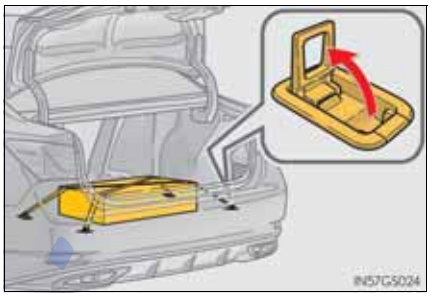
Do not use the auxiliary box as an ashtray.
Doing so may cause a fire.

Trunk features

Cargo hooks

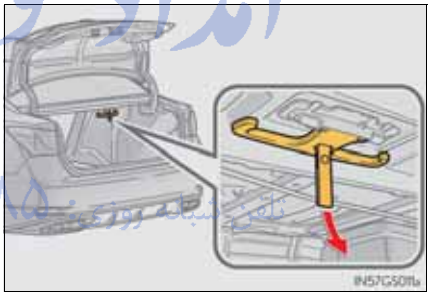
Raise the hooks when needed.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

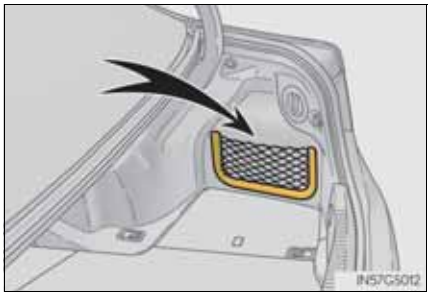


Luggage hook

Pull the strap when using the hook.



First-aid kit storage net



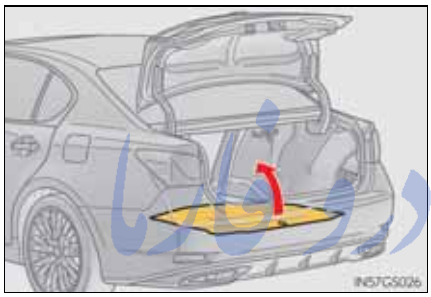
امداد خودرو فارس
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsiaSOS.com

Luggage mat

■ Center

▶ Type A

Pull the strap upwards to lift up the luggage mat.



▶ Type B

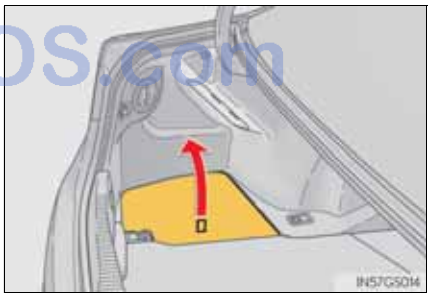
Pull the lever upwards to lift up the luggage mat.

The lever can be hooked on the luggage hook.



■ Left side

Pull the strap upwards when lifting the luggage mat up.

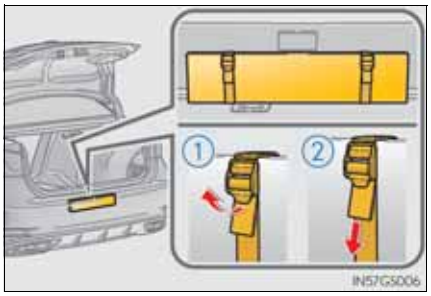


FarmaSOS.com
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی

Warning reflector storage belt

① Loosen the belt

② Tighten the belt



CAUTION

■ When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their stowed positions.

NOTICE

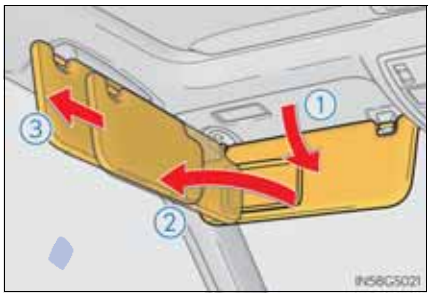
■ Luggage hook weight capacity

Do not hang any object heavier than 5 kg (11 lb.) on the luggage hook.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Sun visors and vanity mirrors

Sun visors

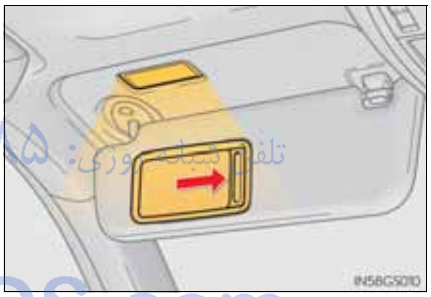


1. To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.
2. To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.
3. To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.

Vanity mirrors

Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن پشتیبانی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

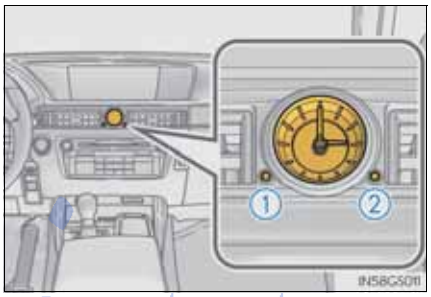
Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Clock

The clock can be adjusted by pressing the buttons.

① Pressing and holding will move the clock hands backward.

② Pressing and holding will move the clock hands forward.

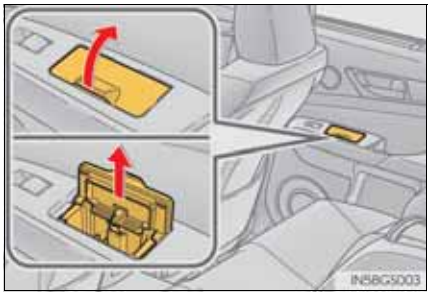


امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Ashtrays*

Open the ashtray lid.

To remove the ashtray, pull the ashtray lid upwards.



CAUTION

■ When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open ashtray or ash flying out.

■ To prevent fire

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

FarmaSOS.com

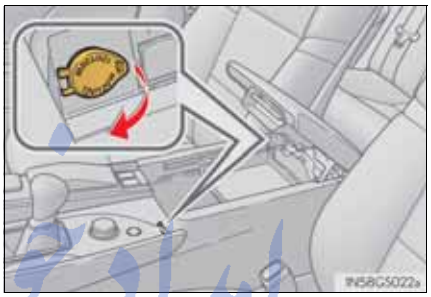
*: If equipped

Power outlets

The power outlets can be used for 12V accessories that run on less than 10A.

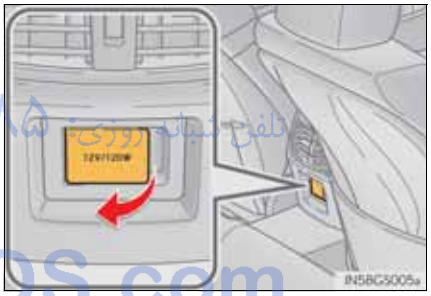
■ Front

Open the lid.



■ Rear

Open the lid.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

■ The power outlets can be used when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the power outlets

Close the power outlet lids when the power outlets are not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlets may cause a short circuit.

■ To prevent blown fuse

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12V 10A.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the engine is off.

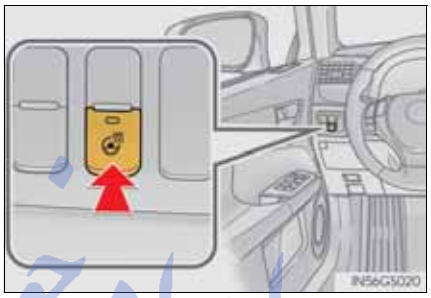
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Heated steering wheel*

The heated steering wheel heats the side grips of the steering wheel.

Turns the heater on/off

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.



امداد خودرو فارما

■ Operating condition

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Timer

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

■ If the indicator light flashes

Press the button to turn the heated steering wheel off and then press the button again. If the indicator light still flashes, a malfunction may be occurring. Turn the heated steering wheel off and have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

⚠ CAUTION

■ Burns

Care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Turn the switch off when the engine is not running.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Seat heaters*/seat ventilators*

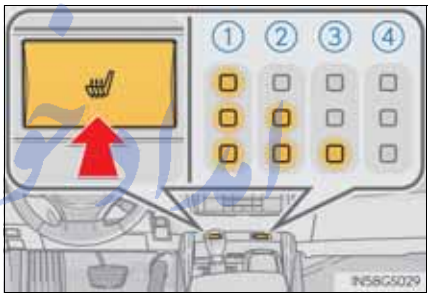
The seat heaters and ventilators heat the seats and maintain good airflow by blowing air from the seats.

Seat heaters

■ Front seats

Turns the seat heater on

▶ Type A



① Hi
② Mid
③ Lo
④ Off

The level indicator lights (yellow) come on.

▶ Type B



① Hi
② Mid
③ Lo
④ Off

The indicator light (yellow) on the switch and the level indicator lights (green) come on.

*: If equipped

امداد خودرو فارما
۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Rear seats (if equipped)

Turns the seat heater on



① Hi

② Mid

③ Lo

④ Off

The level indicator lights (yellow) come on.

Seat ventilators (front seats only)

Blows air from the seat

▶ Type A



① Hi

② Mid

③ Lo

④ Off

The level indicator lights (green) come on.

▶ Type B



① Hi

② Mid

③ Lo

④ Off

The indicator light (green) on the switch and the level indicator lights (green) come on.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

■ The seat heaters/seat ventilators can be used when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ The seat heater timer control

The seat heater automatically switches from Hi→Mid→Lo→Off. The switching timing differs depending on the temperature inside the cabin etc. when the seat heater was operated.

■ Automatic operation of the seat heater during Eco drive mode

If the driving mode select switch is switched to Eco drive mode in cold temperatures, the seat heater may be automatically operated to assist heating performance.

■ Button lock function (vehicles with rear control panel)

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 429)

■ Rear control panel illumination off function (vehicles with rear control panel)

Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. (→P. 429)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Burns (vehicles with seat heaters)

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
  Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.
- Do not use seat heater more than necessary. Doing so may cause minor burns or overheating.

FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters/seat ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Turn the seat heaters/seat ventilators off when the engine is off.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Armrest

Fold down the armrest for use.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not apply too much load on the armrest.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Rear sunshade*/rear door sunshades*

Rear sunshade

The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by operating the button shown below.

■ From the front seats

① Pull up the lever to release the lock.

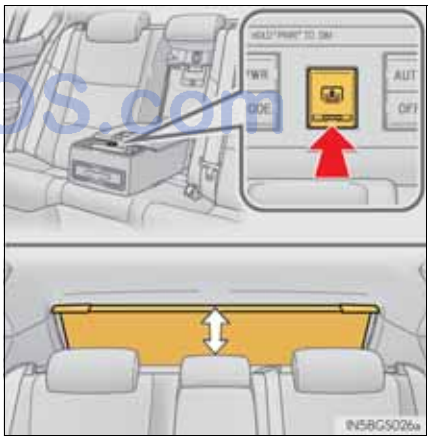
② Slide the armrest.

③ Raise/lower



■ From the rear seats (if equipped)

Raise/lower



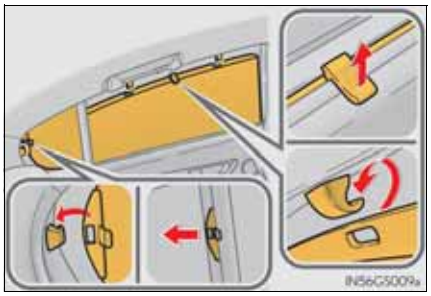
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

Rear door sunshades

Pull the tab of the rear door sunshade and hook the shade on using the anchors.

To retract the rear door sunshade, unhook the shade and retract it slowly.



■ The rear sunshade can be used when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the rear sunshade after the engine is turned off

The rear sunshade can be operated for approximately 1 minute even after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

■ Reverse operation feature

To ensure adequate rear visibility, the rear sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted to R.

However, the rear sunshade is raised again if any of the following occurs:

- The button is pressed again.*
- Shift the shift lever into P.
- The shift lever is shifted out of R, and the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph).
  If the engine is off when the rear sunshade has been lowered due to the reverse operation feature, it will not be raised even when the engine is turned on again and the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph). To raise the sunshade again, press the button.

*: Occasionally, the reverse function may not be carried out after the switch has been pressed. Repeat the above operation to operate the function.

FarmaSOS.com

5 Interior features

■ Button lock function (vehicles with rear control panel)

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked.
(→P. 429)

■ Rear control panel illumination off function (vehicles with rear control panel)

Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. (→P. 429)

■ Customization

Time elapsed before the reverse operation feature activates can be changed. (Customizable features: →P. 855)

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the rear sunshade is being operated

Do not place fingers or other objects in the fastener section or in the opening.
They may get caught, causing injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not operate the rear sunshade when the engine is off.

■ To ensure normal operation of the rear sunshade and rear door sunshades

Observe the following precautions.

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components of the rear sunshade.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear sunshade and rear door sunshades.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously for long periods of time.

امداد خودرو مارا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Trunk storage extension

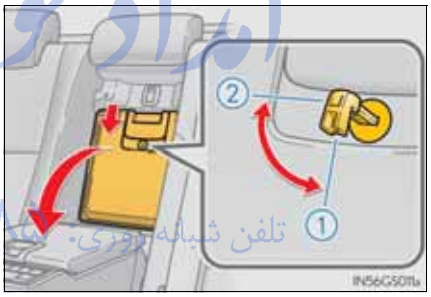
Long objects can be loaded into the vehicle by utilizing the trunk space and rear seat area.

1 Fold down the armrest.



2 Fold down the handle and open the armrest door.

The armrest door can be locked and unlocked using the mechanical key.



① Unlock

② Lock

⚠ CAUTION

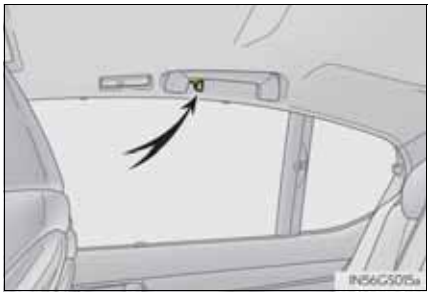
■ When not in use

Ensure that the armrest door is closed.
In the event of sudden braking, items stored in the trunk may be thrown forward into the cabin, resulting in injury.

FarmaSOS.com

Coat hooks

The coat hooks are provided with the rear assist grips.



CAUTION

■ Items that cannot be hung on the coat hook

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Assist grip

An assist grip installed at the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



CAUTION

■ Assist grip

Do not use the assist grip when getting on or off the vehicle or rising from your seat.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the assist grip

Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

امداد خودرو مارا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۵ ۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲
FarmaSOS.com

Utility hook*

To use the utility hook, push it on.



CAUTION

- When not in use

  Keep the utility hook stowed.
  Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

NOTICE

- Utility hook weight capacity

  Do not hang any object heavier than 2 kg (4.4 lb.) on the utility hook.

  The utility hook may get damaged or the object hooked on the utility hook may fall down while driving.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

Maintenance and care 6

6-1. Maintenance and care
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 644
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 648
6-2. Maintenance
Maintenance requirements 651
6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance
Do-it-yourself service precautions 654
Hood 657
Positioning a floor jack 658
Engine compartment 660
Tires 672
Tire inflation pressure 689
Wheels 691
Air conditioning filter 693
Electronic key battery 695
Checking and replacing fuses 698
Light bulbs 720

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

  If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Rear spoiler (if equipped) may not be washable in some automatic car washes. There may also be an increased risk of damage to vehicle.

■ High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ When using a car wash

If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 129)

■ Aluminum wheels

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ Front side windows water-repellent coating

- The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.
  - Remove any dirt, etc. from the front side windows regularly.
  - Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period.
    Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.
  - Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
  - Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.
- When the water-repellent performance has become insufficient, the coating can be repaired. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Outside rear view mirror rain-clearing coating (if equipped)

Observe the following precautions in order to retain the rain-clearing properties of the mirrors:

- Clean the mirrors using a car shampoo or glass cleaner that does not contain silicone or an abrasive compound, and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Allow the mirrors to be exposed to direct sunlight for 1 to 2 days.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

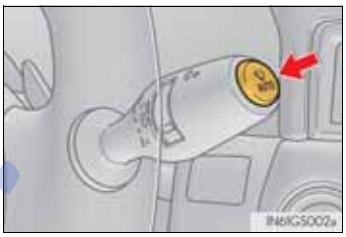
CAUTION

■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

■ When cleaning the windshield (with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wipers to the intermittent windshield wipers. (→P. 245)
If AUTO mode is selected, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers

Exhaust gases cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes and diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

امداد خودرو فارس
FarsiaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ When using an automatic car wash (with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wipers to the intermittent windshield wipers. (→P. 245)
If AUTO mode is selected, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

امداد خودرو یاران
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۰۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

■ When cleaning the carpeted portions of the glove box, console box, etc.

If a strong adhesive tape is used, there is a possibility that the surface of the carpet could be damaged.

امداد خودرو فارنا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۰۸۵۵
FarnaSos.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet.
  (→P. 46)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
  - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with LKA [Lane-Keeping Assist])

Be careful not to touch the camera sensor (→P. 274).
If the camera is accidentally scratched or hit, LKA may not operate properly or may cause a malfunction.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

ایران خودرو ولی
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵-۰۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends performing the following maintenance:

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the “Lexus Service Booklet” or “Lexus Warranty Booklet”.

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you’re an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer will keep a record of maintenance, which could be useful should you ever require Warranty Service. Should you choose to select a qualified and equipped professional other than an authorized Lexus repairer to service or maintain your vehicle, we recommend that you request that a record of maintenance be kept.

امداد خودرو مارا
FarmaSOS.com

■ Where to go for service?

In order to maintain your vehicle in the best possible condition, Lexus recommends that all repairs and service operations be carried out by authorized Lexus dealers or repairers or other duly qualified and equipped professionals. For repairs and services covered by your warranty, please visit an authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, who will use genuine Lexus parts in repairing any difficulties you may encounter. There can also be advantages in utilizing authorized Lexus dealers or repairers for non-warranty repairs and services, as members of the Lexus network will be able to expertly assist you with any difficulties you may encounter.

Your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically due to their experience with Lexus vehicles.

■ Does your vehicle need repairs?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P. 99)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

■ Handling of the battery

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling.
(→P. 667)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 667)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts) • Distilled water
Engine coolant level (→P. 665)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P. 662)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 700)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original

FarmaSOS.com

Items	Parts and tools
Light bulbs (→P. 722)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator and condenser (→P. 667)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 691)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 671)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

⚠ CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.
  If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille

Be sure the engine switch is off.
With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 667)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also, a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

■ If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

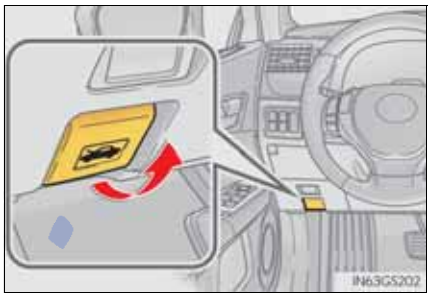
FarmaSOS.com

Hood

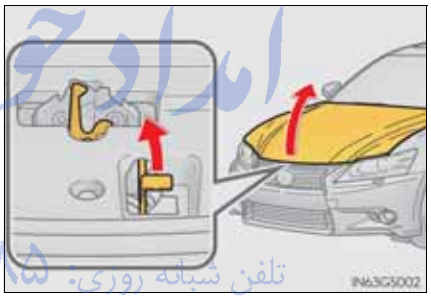
Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Positioning a floor jack

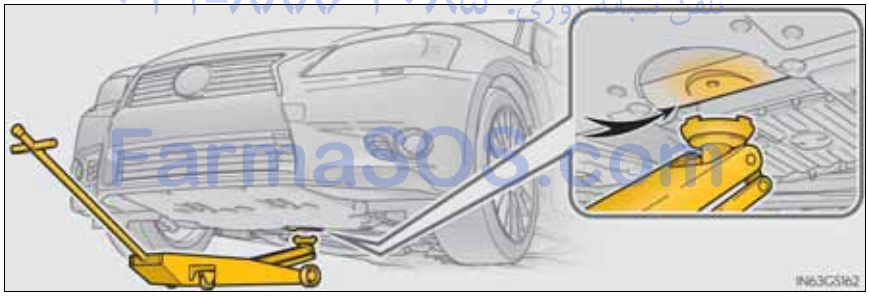
When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

◆ Front

▶ 2WD models



▶ AWD models



◆ Rear

Farma308.com

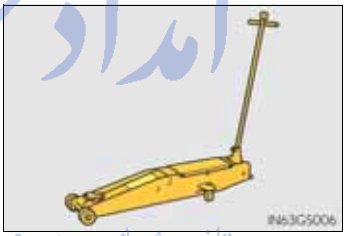


CAUTION

■ When raising your vehicle

Make sure to observe the following precautions to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury:

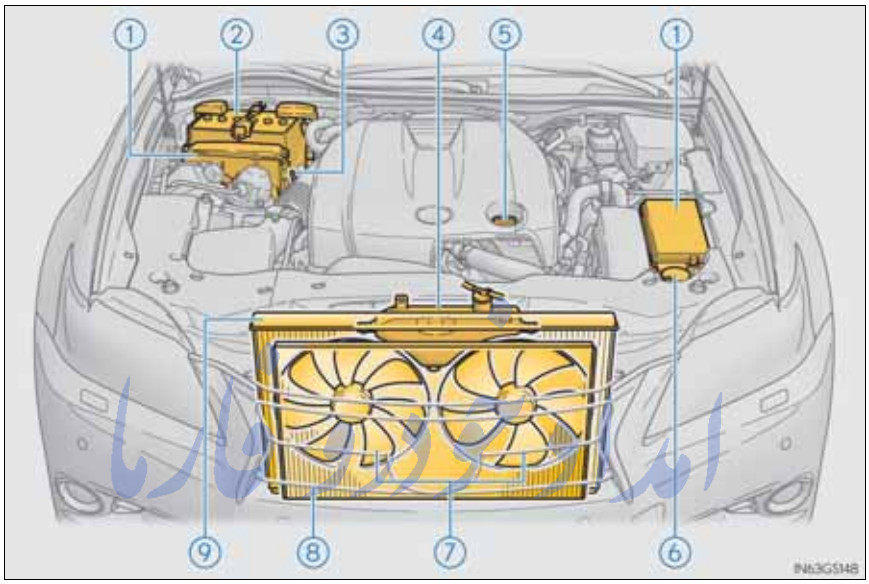
- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.



- When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack.
- Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the floor jack.
- Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level, firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point.
  Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any object on top of or underneath the floor jack.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

Engine compartment



① Fuse boxes (→P. 700)
② Battery (→P. 667)
③ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 662)
④ Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 665)
⑤ Engine oil filler cap (→P. 663)
⑥ Washer fluid tank (→P. 671)
⑦ Electric cooling fans
⑧ Condenser (→P. 667)
⑨ Radiator (→P. 667)

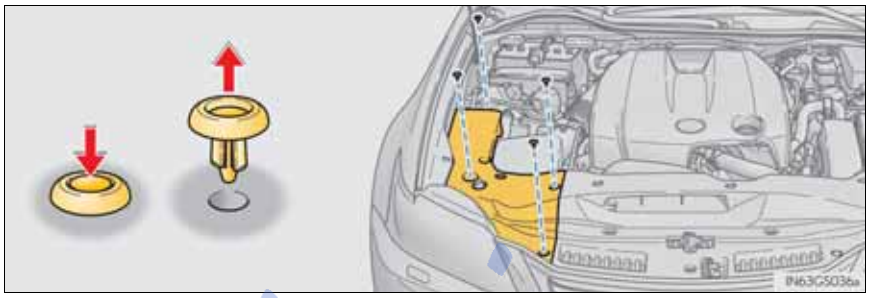
For right-hand drive vehicles:
The battery and the fuse box in front of the battery are located on the opposite side of the engine compartment.

FarnaSOS.com

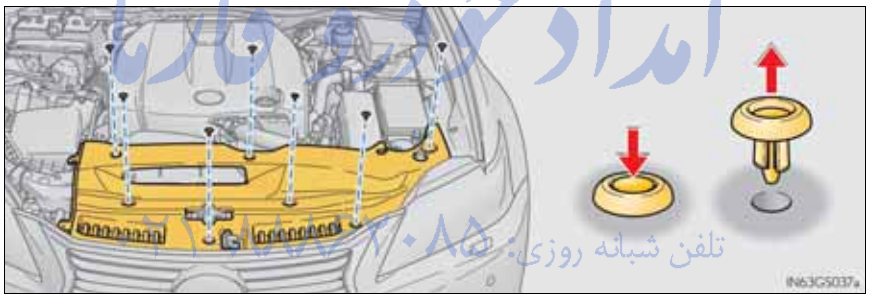
Engine compartment cover

■ Removing the engine compartment cover

▶ Right-hand side



▶ Center

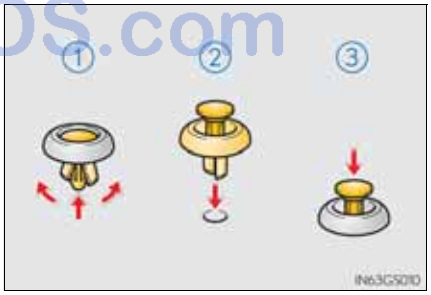


■ Installing the clips

① Push up center portion

② Insert

③ Press



NOTICE

■ Checking the engine compartment cover after installation

Make sure that the cover is securely installed in its original position.

FarnaSOS.com

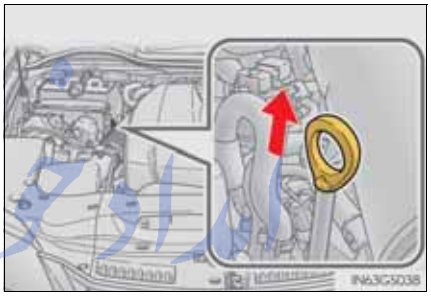
Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

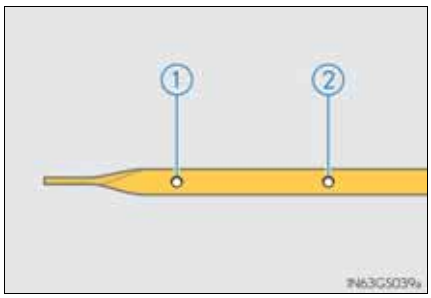
4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

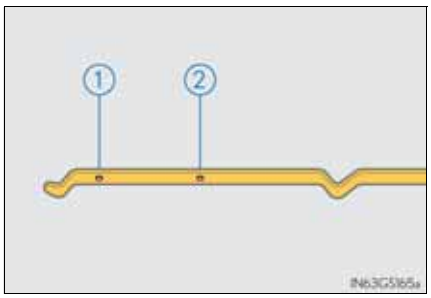
① Low

② Full

▶ Type A



▶ Type B

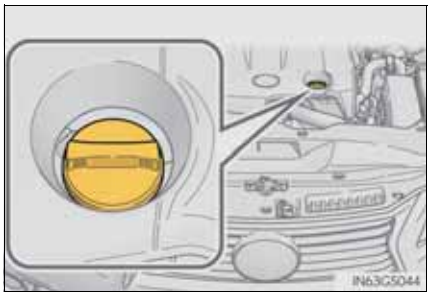


6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.



Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 839, 842, 844
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp.qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ Engine oil consumption

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.0 L/1000 km (1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles)
- If your vehicle consumes more than 1.0 L (1.1 qt., 0.9 Imp.qt.) every 1000 km (600 miles), contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
  Call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Engine coolant

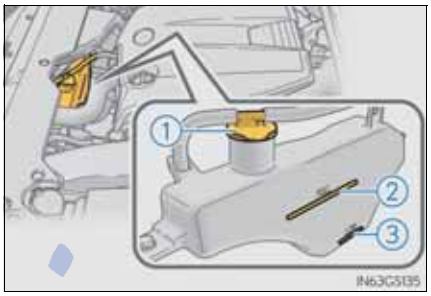
The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

① Reservoir cap

② “FULL” line

③ “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 829)



■ Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about engine coolant, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or other duly qualified and equipped professional, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

ایران خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap or the radiator cap. (→P. 830)
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.

If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

امداد خودرو فارما

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

■ Caution symbols

The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

FarmaSOS.com

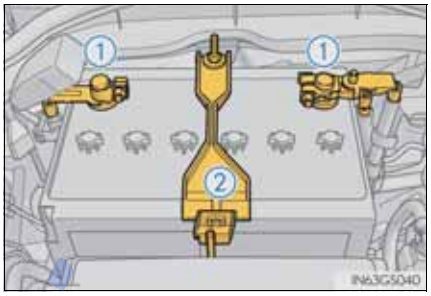
	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks		Battery acid
	Shield eyes		Note operating instructions
	Keep away from children		Explosive gas

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

① Terminals

② Hold-down clamp



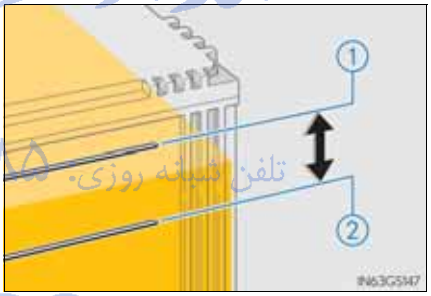
■ Checking battery fluid

Check that the level is between the “UPPER LEVEL” and “LOWER LEVEL” lines.

① “UPPER LEVEL” line

② “LOWER LEVEL” line

If the fluid level is at or below the “LOWER LEVEL” line, add distilled water.



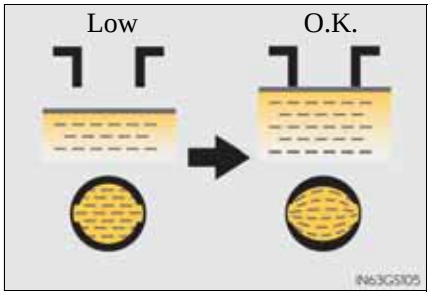
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Adding distilled water

1 Remove the vent plug.

2 Add distilled water.

If the “UPPER LEVEL” line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at the cell.



3 Put the vent plug back on and close it securely.

■ Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ After recharging/reconnecting the battery

The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.

1. Shift the shift lever to P.
2. Open and close any of the doors.
3. Restart the engine.

- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine before disconnect the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Chemicals in the battery

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

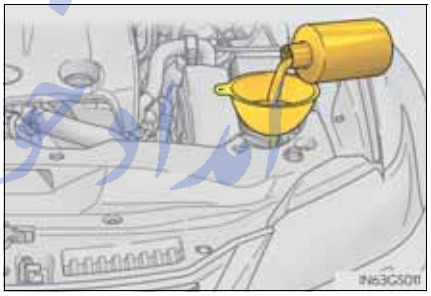
Never recharge the battery while the engine is operating. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ When adding distilled water

Avoid overfilling. Water spilled during battery recharging may cause corrosion.

Washer fluid

If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



CAUTION

■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

■ Diluting washer fluid

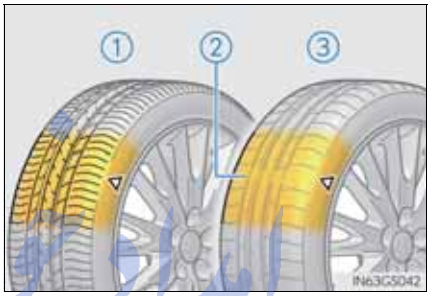
Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱
FarsSOS.com

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires



① New tread

② Treadwear indicator

③ Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the “TWI” or “Δ” marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

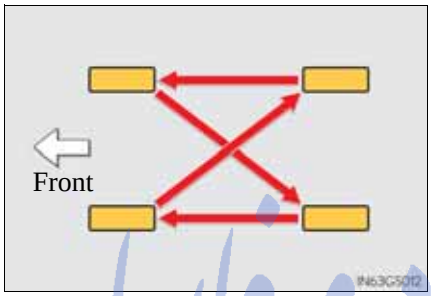
Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

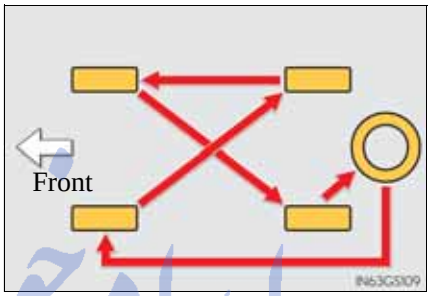
Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.

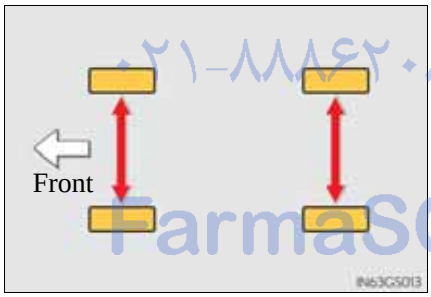
- Vehicles with front and rear tires of the same size and without a full-size spare tire



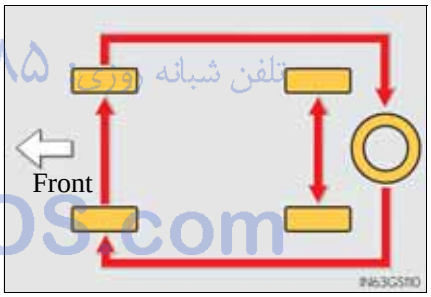
- Vehicles with front and rear tires of the same size and with a full-size spare tire



- Vehicles with front and rear tires of differing sizes and without a full-size spare tire



- Vehicles with front and rear tires of differing sizes and with a full-size spare tire



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 10000 km (6000 miles) for 2WD models or 5000 km (3000 miles) for AWD models.

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation. (vehicle with the tire pressure warning system)

FarmaSOS.com

Tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

▶ Vehicles without the tire inflation pressure display function

If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a warning light. (→P. 753)

▶ Vehicles with the tire inflation pressure display function

- If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a screen display and a warning light. (→P. 772)
- The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P. 106)

◆ Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 676)

FarmaSOC.com

◆Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When rotating the tires.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off.

Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 850)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

FarmaSOS.com

4 Press and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times.



5 Wait for a few minutes with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode and then turn the engine switch off.

◆ Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
Farma803.com

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Replacing tires and wheels (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ When rotating the tires (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system featuring a tire inflation pressure display function)

Make sure that the engine switch is off. If the tires are rotated while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the tire position information will not be updated.
If this accidentally occurs, either turn the engine switch to off and then to IGNITION ON mode, or initialize the system after checking that the tire pressure is properly adjusted.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Low profile tires (except 225/50R17 tires)

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires or tire chains* on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

*: Tire chains cannot be mounted on the 19-inch tires. Snow tires should be used instead.

■ If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

■ Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

● In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains etc. are equipped.
- Lock nuts are equipped.
- An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.*
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the trunk.*

*: Vehicles with a full-size spare tire only

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.

- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

Vehicles with the tire inflation pressure display function: If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by driving and changing the radio wave conditions.

FarmaSOS.com

- When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.
- When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ The initialization operation (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure.
  Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the engine switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to press the reset switch again as initialization will restart automatically when the engine switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode for the next time.
- If you accidentally press the reset switch when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

■ Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

■ When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for 10 minutes.

CarManuals.com

■ Certification for tire pressure warning system (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

CE 0891

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD tímto prohlašuje, že tento PMV-C210 je ve shodě se základními pož adavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr PMV-C210 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD, dass sich das Gerät PMV-C210 in Ü bereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Käesolevaga kinnitab PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD seadme PMV-C210 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hereby, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD declares that this PMV-C210 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Por medio de la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD declara que el PMV-C210 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ PMV-C210 ΣΥΜΜΟΡ ΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ Τ Η Σ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Par la présente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD déclare que l'appareil PMV-C210 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Con la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD dichiara che questo PMV-C210 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Ar šo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD deklarē, ka PMV-C210 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD niniejszym oświadcza, że PMV-C210 spełnia zasadnicze wymogi oraz inne istotne postanowienia dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

ایران خودرو دیزل
تلفن: ۰۲۱-۴۴۵۴۵۵۵۵
FarmasOS.com

Šiuo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD deklaruoja, kad šis PMV-C210 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Hierbij verklaart PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD dat het toestel PMV-C210 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Hawnhekk, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD , jiddikjara li dan PMV-C210 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Alulírott, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD nyilatkozom, hogy a PMV-C210 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ kö vetelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD declara que este PMV-C210 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD izjavlja, da je ta PMV-C210 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD týmto vyhlasuje, že PMV-C210 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky prí slušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD vakuuttaa täten että PMV-C210 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Härmed intygar PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD att denna PMV-C210 står I överensstämmelse med de vä sentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD yfir því að PMV-C210 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD erklærer herved at utstyret PMV-C210 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 23AAF je ve shodě se základními pož adavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 23AAF overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 23AAF in Ü bereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 23AAF vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 23AAF is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 23AAF cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 23AAF ΣΥΜΜΟΡ ΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ Τ ΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 23AAF est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 23AAF è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 23AAF atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
DENSO CORPORATION niniejszym o ś wiadcza, ż e 23AAF spe ł nia zasadnicze wymogi oraz inne istotne postanowienia dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 23AAF atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 23AAF in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 23AAF jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 23AAF megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ kö vetelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 23AAF está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 23AAF v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 23AAF spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky prí slušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 23AAF tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 23AAF står I överensstämmelse med de vä sentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 23AAF er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 23AAF er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

FarhadCars.com

DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 22AAA je ve shodě se základními pož adavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 22AAA overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 22AAA in Ü bereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 22AAA vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 22AAA is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 22AAA cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 22AAA ΣΥΜΜΟΡ ΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ Τ ΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 22AAA est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 22AAA è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 22AAA atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
DENSO CORPORATION niniejszym o ś wiadcza, ż e 22AAA spe ł nia zasadnicze wymogi oraz inne istotne postanowienia dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 22AAA atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 22AAA in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 22AAA jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 22AAA megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető kö vetelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 22AAA está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 22AAA v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 22AAA spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky prí slušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 22AAA tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 22AAA står I överensstämmelse med de vä sentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 22AAA er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 22AAA er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

CAUTION

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Vehicles with a compact spare tire: Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit (if equipped): Do not tow anything if a tire that has been repaired using the emergency tire puncture repair kit is installed. The load on the tire may cause unexpected damage to the tire.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

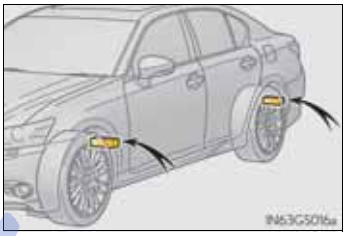
Do not operate the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system featuring a tire inflation pressure display function)

● People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not come within 450mm (17.7 in.) of the tire pressure warning system initiators. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.



● Users of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 674)

ایران خودرو
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ Low profile tires (except 225/50R17 tires)

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when sustaining impact from the road surface. Therefore, pay attention to the following:

- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid potholes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so may lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

■ If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks. (→P. 850)

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressure that is even just a few pounds off can affect ride quality and handling.
- Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

امداد خودرو مارا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

⚠ NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps are lost, replace them as soon as possible.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: Conventionally referred to as “off-set”.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵–۰۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

■ When replacing wheels (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 674)

CAUTION

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

امداد خودرو فارما

NOTICE

■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن ثبت سفارش
FarmaSOS.com

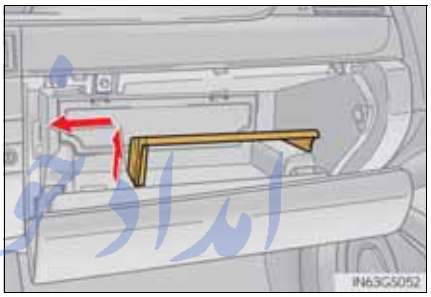
Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

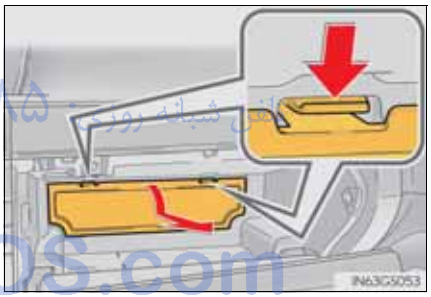
Removal method

1 Turn the engine switch off.

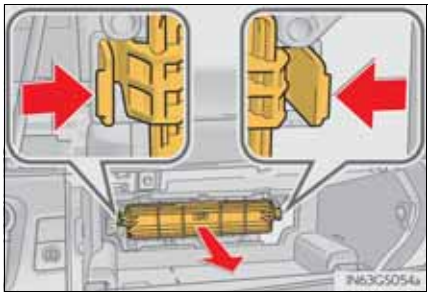
2 Open the glove box. Lift up the side with the stay, disconnect the stay tabs and remove the partition by pulling horizontally.



3 Press the tabs and remove the filter cover.



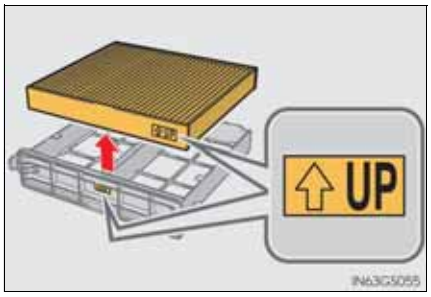
4 Press the tabs and remove the filter case.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ FarmaSOS.com

5 Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.



■ Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Lexus Service Booklet" or "Lexus Warranty Booklet".)

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed.
Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

FarmaSOS.com

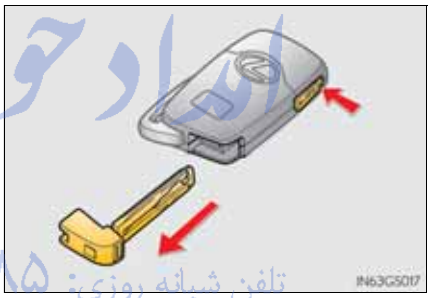
Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

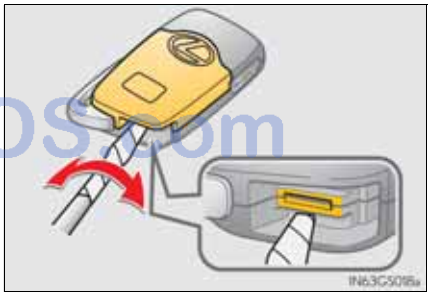
Replacing the battery

1 Take out the mechanical key.



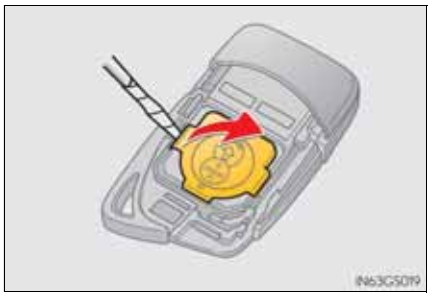
2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



3 Remove the battery cover.

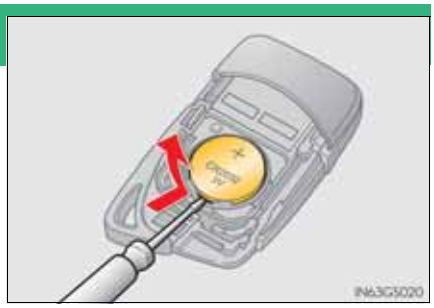
To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

4 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.



■ Use a CR2032 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to local laws.

■ When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

■ If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۳۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Removed battery and other parts

Keep away from children. These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

■ Lithium battery precautions

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE.
DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS

NOTICE

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

امداد خودرو فارا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵۵
FarmaSOS.com

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

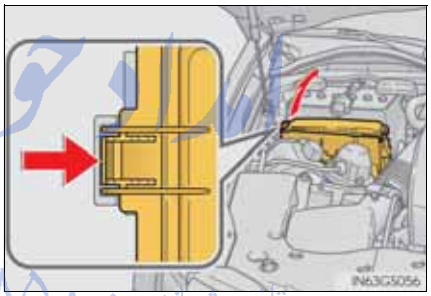
1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 After a system failure, see “Fuse layout and amperage ratings” for details about which fuse to check. (→P. 705)

3 Open the fuse box cover.

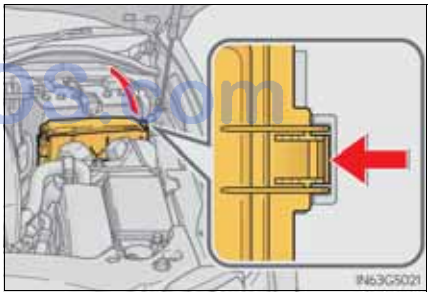
▶ Engine compartment: type A fuse box (left-hand drive vehicles)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



▶ Engine compartment: type A fuse box (right-hand drive vehicles)

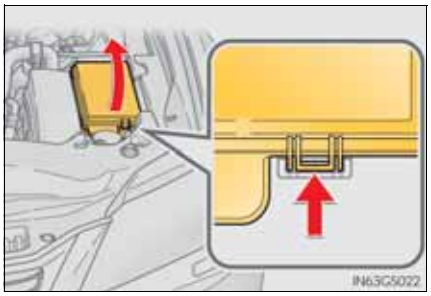
Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



FarmaSoft.com

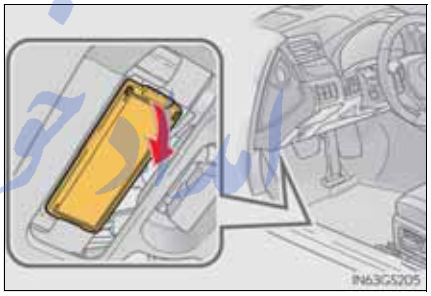
▶ Engine compartment (type B fuse box)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



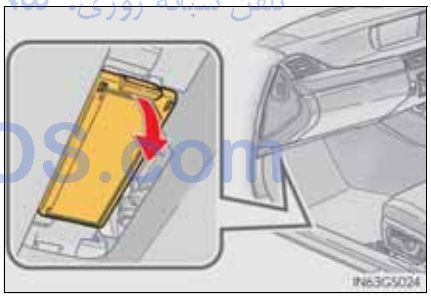
▶ Left side instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the lid.



▶ Left side instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)

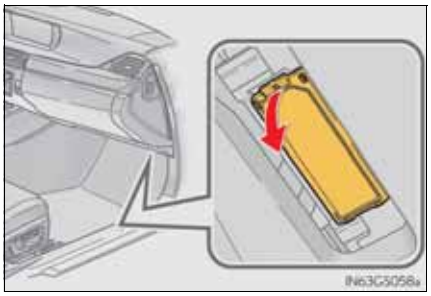
Remove the lid.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

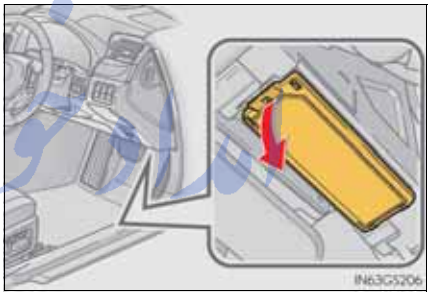
▶ Right side instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the lid.



▶ Right side instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)

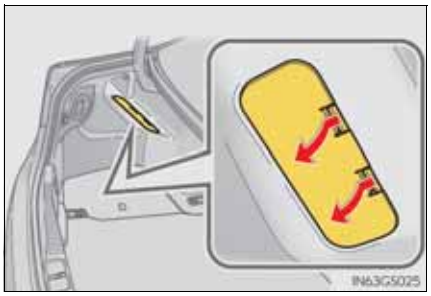
Remove the lid.



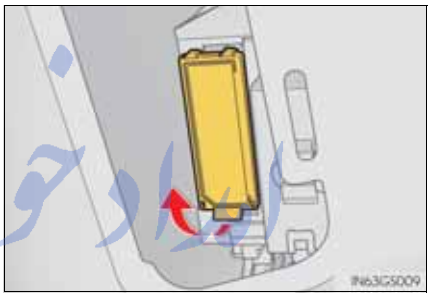
اداره خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Trunk

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

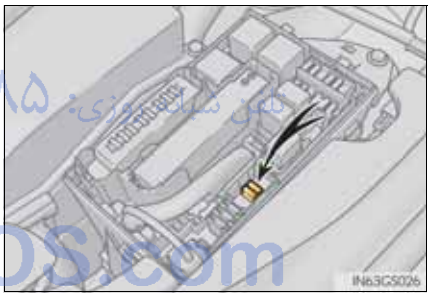


Remove the lid.



4 Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۳۴۲۰۸۵ مرکز شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

5 Check if the fuse is blown.

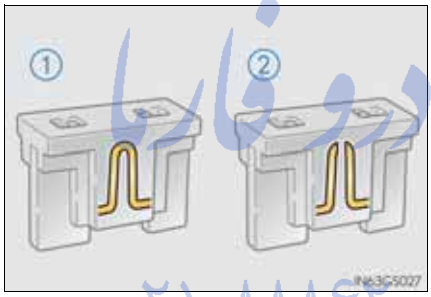
① Normal fuse

② Blown fuse

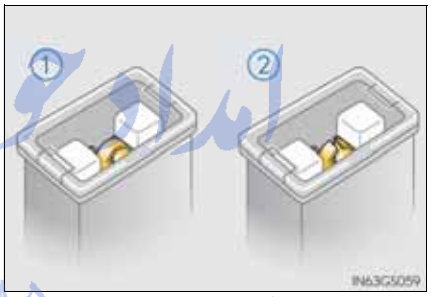
Type A and B:
Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C and D:
Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

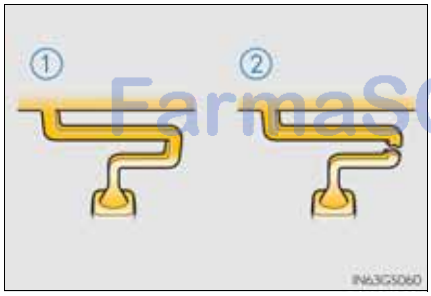
▶ Type A



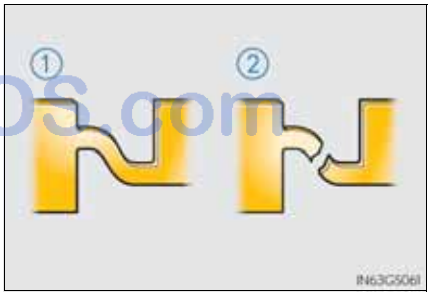
▶ Type B



▶ Type C



▶ Type D

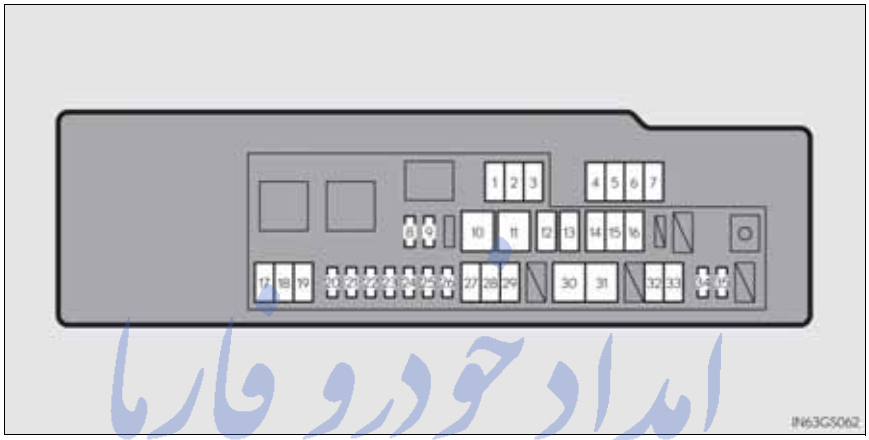


امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

■ Engine compartment (type A fuse box)

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	LH J/B-B	40	Left-hand junction block
2	VGRS	40	No circuit
3	RH J/B-B	40	Right-hand junction block
4	P/I-B NO.2	80	F/PMP, EFI MAIN, A/F HTR, EDU, IG2 MAIN
5	ALT	150	RH J/B ALT, P/I ALT, LH J/B ALT, LUG J/B ALT
6	P/I ALT	100	RR DEF, TAIL, FR FOG, DEICER, PANEL, RR S/SHADE
7	RH J/B ALT	80	Right-hand junction block

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSos.com

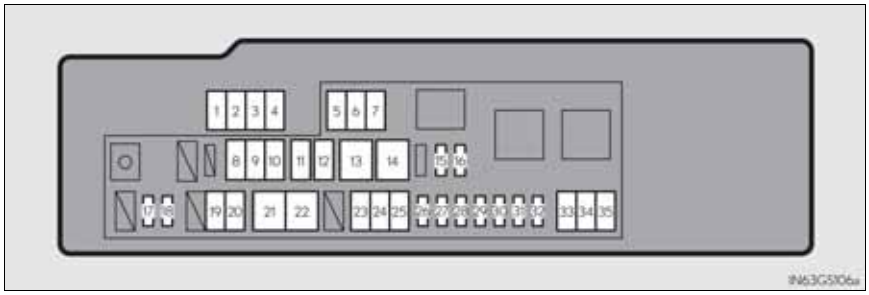
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
8	MPX-B	10	Smart entry & start system, electric tilt and telescopic steering column, power seats, head-up display, front right-hand door ECU, gauges and meters, steering sensor, yaw rate and G sensor, overhead module, front left-hand door ECU, power trunk lid, RR CTRL SW, clock, body ECU, CAN gateway ECU
9	DOME	7.5	Personal lights, ornament lights, trunk light, footwell lights, door courtesy lights, vanity lights, rear door inside handle illuminations, power trunk lid
10	EPS	80	EPS
11	ARS	80	No circuit
12	HTR	50	Air conditioning system
13	ABS NO.1	40	VDIM
14	LUG J/B ALT	50	Luggage compartment junction block
15	PTC NO.1	50	PTC heater
16	PTC NO.2	50	PTC heater
17	ABS NO.2	50	VDIM
18	ST	30	Starting system
19	H-LP LO	30	Headlights, H-LP RLY
20	D/C CUT	30	DOME, MPX-B
21	DCM	7.5	DCM
22	ECU-B	7.5	Smart entry & start system
23	ALT-S	7.5	Charging system

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
24	ETCS	10	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
25	HORN	10	Horn
26	R/B-B	20	EPS-B, TV
27	P/I-B NO.1	50	Headlights, daytime running lights, EBS
28	EPB	30	Parking brake
29	LUG J/B-B	40	Luggage compartment junction block
30	FAN NO.1	80	Electric cooling fans
31	LH J/B ALT	60	Left-hand junction block
32	H-LP CLN	30	Headlight cleaner
33	FAN NO.2	40	Electric cooling fans
34	A/C COMP	7.5	Air conditioning system
35	FILTER	10	Condenser

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



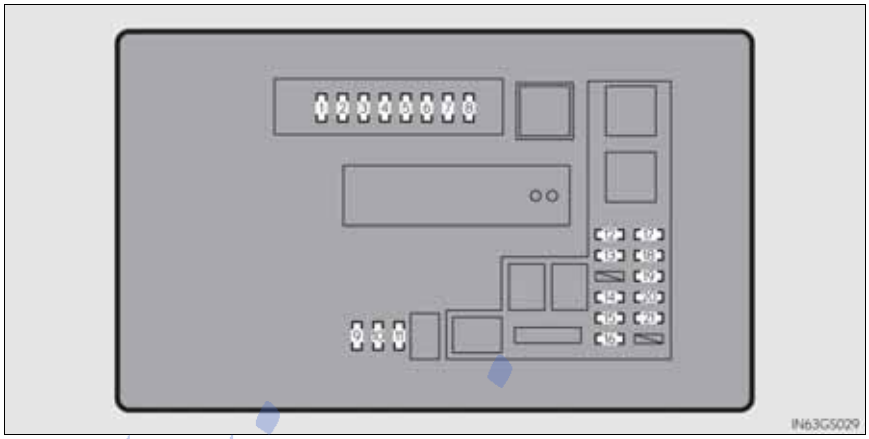
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	RH J/B ALT	80	Right-hand junction block
2	P/I ALT	100	RR DEF, TAIL, FR FOG, DEICER, PANEL, RR S/SHADE
3	ALT	150	RH J/B ALT, P/I ALT, alternator, LH J/B ALT, luggage compartment junction block
4	P/I-B NO.2	80	F/PMP, EFI MAIN, A/F HTR, EDU, IG2 MAIN
5	RH J/B-B	40	Right-hand junction block
6	VGRS	40	No circuit
7	LH J/B-B	40	Left-hand junction block
8	PTC NO.2	50	PTC heater
9	PTC NO.1	50	PTC heater
10	LUG J/B ALT	50	Luggage compartment junction block
11	ABS NO.1	40	VDIM
12	HTR	50	Air conditioning system
13	ARS	80	No circuit
14	EPS	80	EPS
15	DOME	7.5	Personal lights, ornament lights, trunk light, footwell lights, door courtesy lights, vanity lights, rear door inside handle illuminations, power trunk lid

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
16	MPX-B	10	Smart entry & start system, electric tilt and telescopic steering column, power seats, head-up display, front right-hand door ECU, gauges and meters, steering sensor, yaw rate and G sensor, overhead module, front left-hand door ECU, power trunk lid, clock, body ECU, RR CTRL SW, CAN gateway ECU
17	FILTER	10	Condenser
18	A/C COMP	7.5	Air conditioning system
19	H-LP CLN	30	Headlight cleaner
20	FAN NO.2	40	Electric cooling fans
21	LH J/B ALT	60	Left-hand junction block
22	FAN NO.1	80	Electric cooling fans
23	P/I-B NO.1	50	H-LP HI RH, H-LP HI LH, DRL, emergency brake signal
24	EPB	30	Parking brake
25	LUG J/B-B	40	Luggage compartment junction block
26	R/B-B	20	EPS-B, TV
27	HORN	10	Horn
28	ETCS	10	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
29	ALT-S	7.5	Charging system
30	ECU-B	7.5	Smart entry & start system
31	DCM	7.5	DCM
32	D/C CUT	30	DOME, MPX-B
33	ABS NO.2	50	VDIM
34	ST	30	Starting system
35	H-LP LO	30	Headlights, H-LP RLY

FarmaSOS.com

■ Engine compartment (type B fuse box)



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	IGN	10	Starting system
2	INJ	10	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
3	EFI NO.2	10	Fuel system, exhaust system
4	IG2 MAIN	20	IGN, GAUGE, INJ, AIR BAG, IG2 NO.1, LH-IG2
5	EFI MAIN	25	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, EFI NO.2
6	A/F	15	Air intake system
7	EDU	20	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
8	F/PMP	25	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
9	SPARE	30	Spare fuse
10	SPARE	20	Spare fuse
11	SPARE	10	Spare fuse

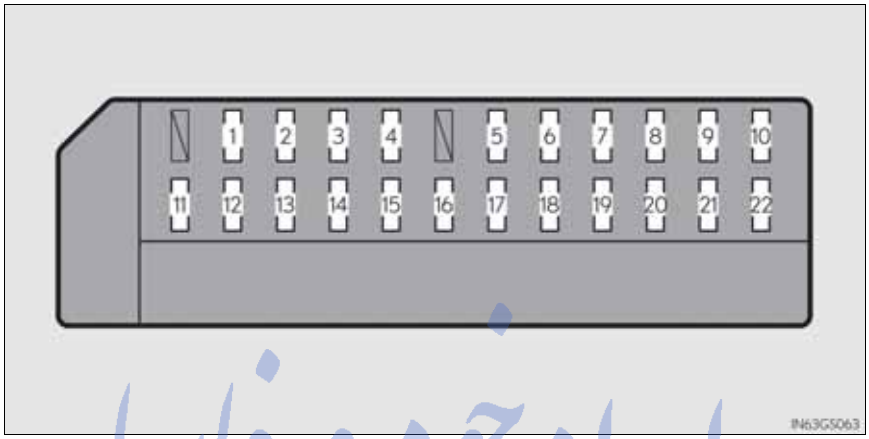
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵-۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
12	H-LP LH-LO	20	Left-hand headlight
13	H-LP RH-LO	20	Right-hand headlight
14	WASH-S	5	Driver support system
15	WIP-S	7.5	Windshield wipers, power management system
16	COMB SW	5	Windshield wipers
17	TV	7.5	Remote Touch screen
18	EPS-B	5	Electric power steering
19	ODS	5	No circuit
20	IG2 NO.1	5	Power management system, DCM, CAN gateway ECU
21	GAUGE	5	Gauges and meters

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Left side instrument panel

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



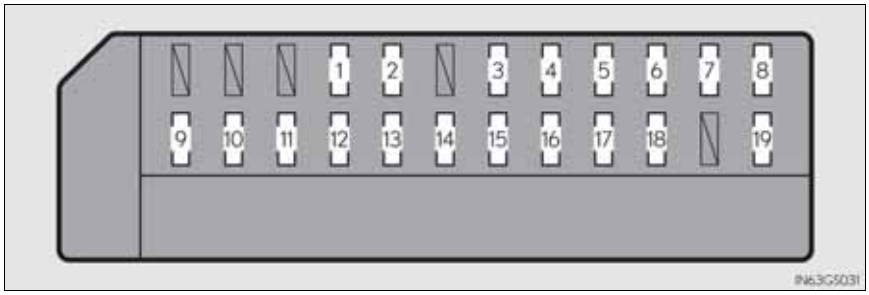
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	STOP	7.5	Stop lights, high mounted stoplight
2	P/W-B	5	Power window master switch
3	P/SEAT1 F/L	30	Power seats
4	D/L NO.1	25	Power door lock system
5	NV-IR	10	No circuit
6	FL S/HTR	10	Seat heaters/ventilators
7	WIPER	30	Windshield wipers
8	WIPER-IG	5	Windshield wipers
9	LH-IG	10	Seat belts, body ECU, AFS, overhead module, raindrop sensor, inside rear view mirror, lane camera sensor (LKA), head-up display, shift lock system, Lexus parking assist-sensor, front left-hand door ECU, driver monitor system, Remote Touch screen, electric tilt and telescopic steering column, power seats, moon roof, Lexus parking assist-sensor switch

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵-۰۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
10	LH ECU-IG	10	VDIM, D-SW MODULE (Blind Spot Monitor, heated steering wheel), driver support system, AFS, EPB
11	DOOR FL	30	Outside rear view mirror defoggers, power window (front left-hand)
12	CAPACITOR (HV)	10	No circuit
13	STRG LOCK	15	Steering lock
14	D/L NO.2	25	Power door lock system
15	DOOR RL	30	Power window (rear left-hand)
16	HAZ	15	Turn signal lights, emergency flashers
17	LH-IG2	10	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, stop lights, smart entry & start system, steering lock system
18	LH J/B-B	7.5	Body ECU
19	S/ROOF	20	Moon roof
20	P/SEAT2 F/L	25	Power seats
21	TI & TE	20	Electric tilt and telescopic steering column
22	A/C	7.5	Air conditioning system

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۳۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	P/SEAT1 F/L	30	Power seats
2	D/L NO.1	25	Power door lock system
3	NV-IR	10	No circuit
4	FL S/HTR	10	Seat heaters/ventilators
5	STRG HTR	15	Heated steering wheel
6	WIPER-IG	5	Windshield wipers
7	LH-IG	10	Seat belts, body ECU, AFS, Remote Touch screen, overhead module, rain-drop sensor, moon roof, inside rear view mirror, LKA, front left-hand door ECU, Lexus parking assist-sensor, power seats, CAN gateway ECU
8	LH ECU-IG	10	Yaw rate and G sensor, air conditioning system, AFS, driver support system
9	DOOR FL	30	Outside rear view mirror defoggers, power window (front left-hand)
10	CAPACITOR (HV)	10	No circuit
11	AM2	7.5	Power management system, smart entry & start system
12	D/L NO.2	25	Power door lock system
13	DOOR RL	30	Power window (rear left-hand)
14	HAZ	15	Turn signal lights, emergency flashers

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
15	LH-IG2	10	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, stop lights, smart entry & start system, steering lock system
16	LH J/B-B	7.5	Body ECU
17	S/ROOF	20	Moon roof
18	P/SEAT2 F/L	25	Power seats
19	A/C	7.5	Air conditioning system

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Right side instrument panel

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



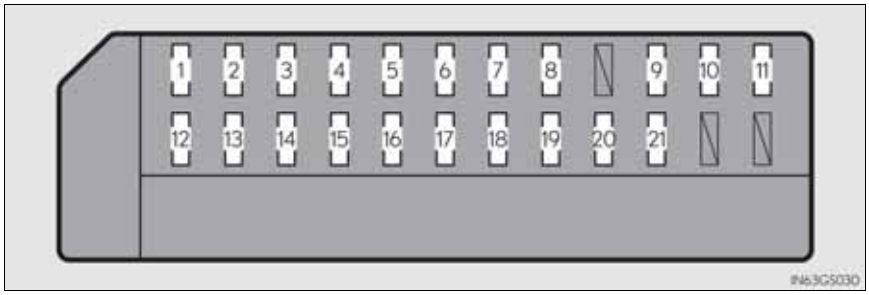
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	P/SEAT1 F/R	30	Power seats
2	FR P/OUTLET	15	Power outlet (front)
3	RR P/OUTLET	15	Power outlet (rear)
4	P/SEAT2 F/R	25	Power seats
5	AVS	20	AVS
6	STRG HTR	15	Heated steering wheel
7	WASH	20	Windshield washer
8	RH ECU-IG	10	Navigation system, pre-crash seat belts, air conditioning system
9	RH-IG	10	Tension reducer, seat heater/ventilator switches, AWD system, front right-hand door ECU, nanoe, CAN gateway ECU, tire pressure warning system, power seats, driver monitor system
10	DOOR FR	30	Front right-hand door control system (outside rear view mirror defoggers, power window)

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
11	DOOR RR	30	Power window (rear right-hand)
12	RAD NO.2	30	Audio system
13	AM2	7.5	Smart entry & start system
14	MULTIMEDIA	10	Navigation system, Remote Touch
15	RAD NO.1	30	Audio system
16	AIR BAG	10	SRS airbag system
17	OBD	7.5	On-board diagnosis system
18	ACC	7.5	Body ECU, head-up display, RR CTRL, navigation system, transmission, Remote Touch, DCM, Remote Touch screen

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



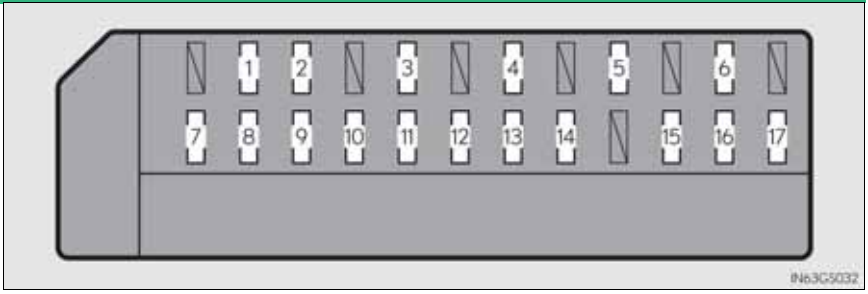
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	STOP	7.5	Stop lights, high mounted stoplight
2	P/SEAT1 F/R	30	Power seats
3	FR P/OUTLET	15	Power outlet (front)
4	P/W-B	5	Power window master switch
5	RR P/OUTLET	15	Power outlet (rear)
6	P/SEAT2 F/R	25	Power seats
7	AVS	20	AVS
8	WIPER	30	Windshield wipers
9	WASH	20	Windshield washer
10	RH ECU-IG	10	Navigation system, VDIM, D-SW MODULE (Blind Spot Monitor, heated steering wheel)
11	RH-IG	10	Tension reducer, AWD system, power seats, head-up display, front right-hand door ECU, nanoe, shift lock system, electric tilt and telescopic steering column, seat heater/ventilator switches, smart entry & start system antennas, tire pressure warning system receiver, driver monitor system
12	DOOR FR	30	Front right-hand door control system (outside rear view mirror defoggers, power window)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵-۰۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
13	DOOR RR	30	Power window (rear right-hand)
14	RAD NO.2	30	Audio system
15	STRG LOCK	15	Steering lock system
16	MULTIMEDIA	10	Navigation system, Remote Touch
17	RAD NO.1	30	Audio system
18	AIR BAG	10	SRS airbag system
19	OBD	7.5	On-board diagnosis system
20	TI & TE	20	Electric tilt and telescopic steering column
21	ACC	7.5	Body ECU, head-up display, RR CTRL, navigation system, transmission, Remote Touch, Remote Touch screen

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Trunk



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	PSB	30	Pre-crash seat belts
2	PTL	25	Power trunk lid
3	RR J/B-B	10	Smart entry & start system
4	RR S/HTR	20	Seat heaters (rear)
5	FR S/HTR	10	Seat heaters/ventilators (front)
6	RR FOG	10	Rear fog light
7	DC/DC-S (HV)	7.5	No circuit
8	BATT FAN (HV)	20	No circuit
9	SECURITY	7.5	SECURITY
10	ECU-B NO.3	7.5	Parking brake
11	TRK OPN	7.5	Power trunk lid
12	DCM (HV)	7.5	No circuit
13	AC INV (HV)	20	No circuit
14	RR-IG1	5	Radar sensor, Blind Spot Monitor
15	RR ECU-IG	10	Power trunk lid, parking brake, tension reducer (rear left-hand), RR CTRL SW, tire pressure warning system
16	EPS-IG	5	Electric power steering system
17	BACK UP	7.5	Back-up light

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 722)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ If there is an overload in a circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

■ When replacing light bulbs

Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

امداد خودرو فارما

CAUTION

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
  This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. As there is a danger that components may be damaged, we recommend that replacement is carried out by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (→P. 852)

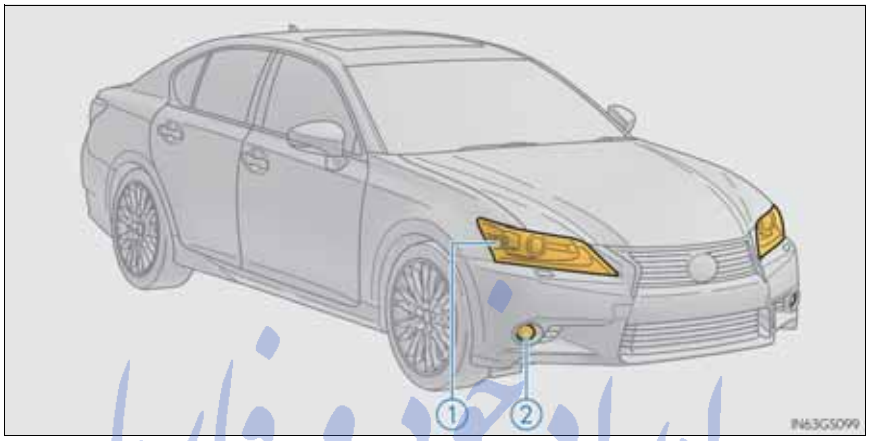
Removing the engine compartment covers

→P. 661

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Bulb locations

■ Front



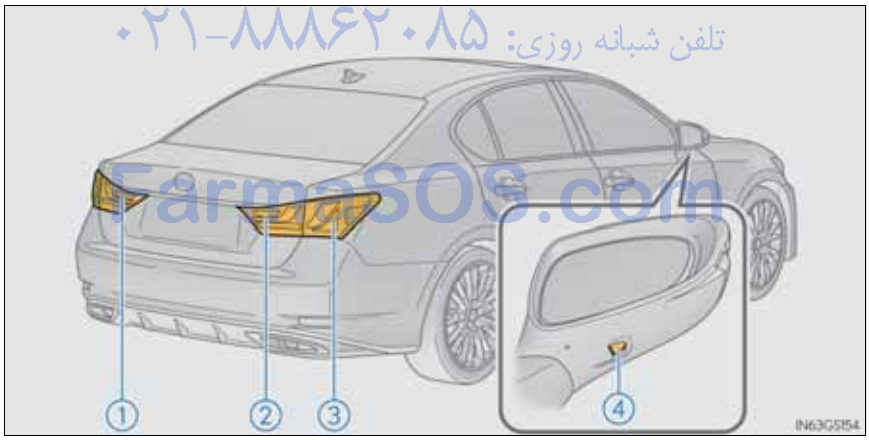
امداد خودرو فارما

① Front turn signal light

② Front fog light (if equipped)

■ Rear

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com



① Back-up light (right-hand drive vehicles)

② Back-up light (left-hand drive vehicles)

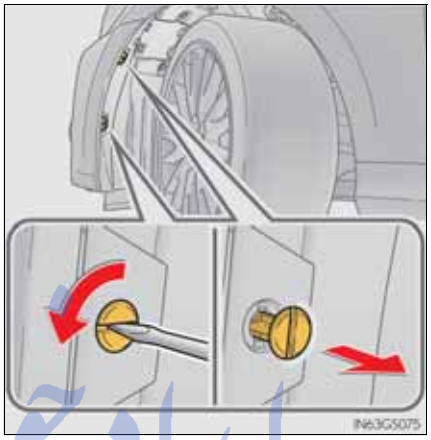
③ Rear turn signal light

④ Outer foot light

Replacing light bulbs

■ Front fog lights (if equipped)

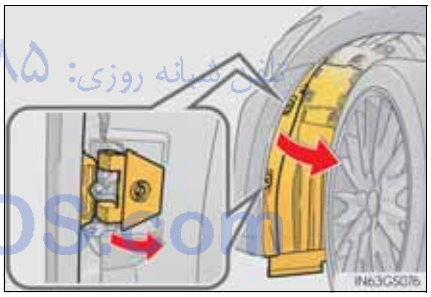
1 To allow enough working space, turn the steering wheel to the opposite side of the bulb to be replaced. Remove the 2 fender liner clips.



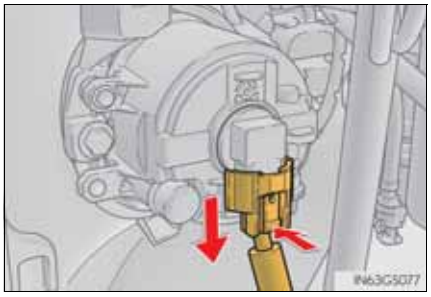
Turn the steering wheel to the left when replacing the right side light bulb, and turn the steering wheel to the right when replacing the left side light bulb.

To take out the clips, turn the head of the clip to unlock, then remove by pulling.

2 While holding the clamp open, pull and remove the tabs and open the fender liner.

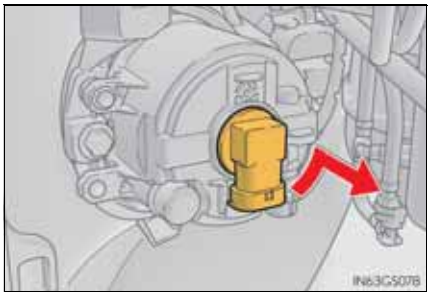


3 Unplug the connector while pressing the lock release.



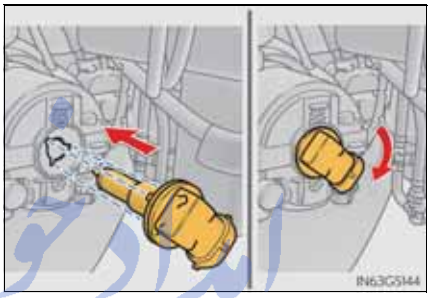
امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

4 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.



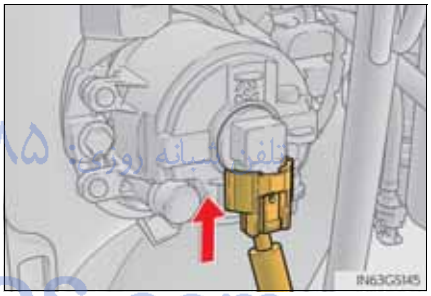
5 Set the new light bulb.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert. Turn it clockwise to set.



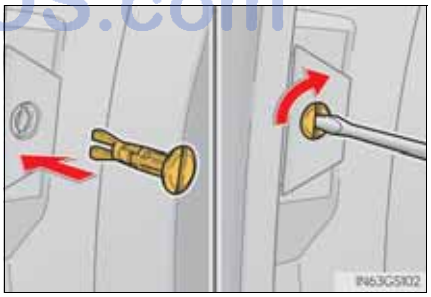
6 Set the connector.

After installing the connector, shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the fog lights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.



7 Reinstall the fender liner and install the clips.

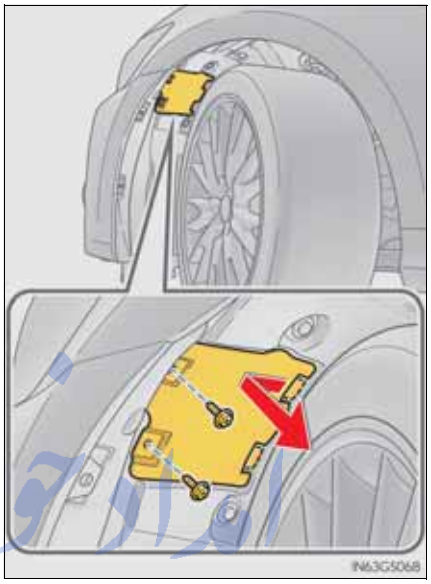
Insert the clips and turn to lock.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

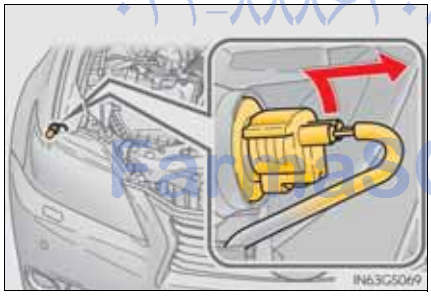
■ Front turn signal lights

1 For the left side only: To allow enough working space, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, then remove the bolts and take off the cover.



2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

▶ Right side

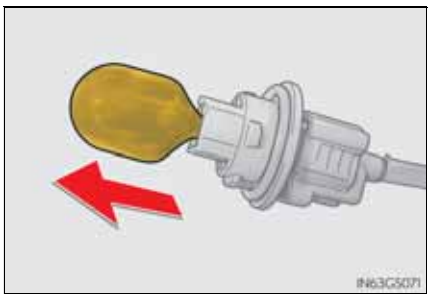


▶ Left side



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
farmasos.com

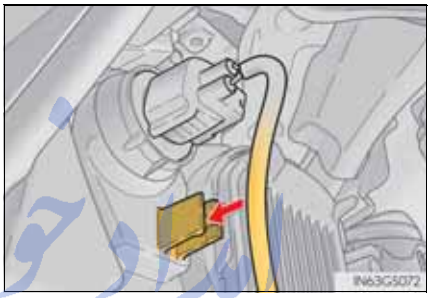
3 Remove the light bulb.



4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

After installing the bulb base, secure the cord with the clips and install the cover* in its original position.

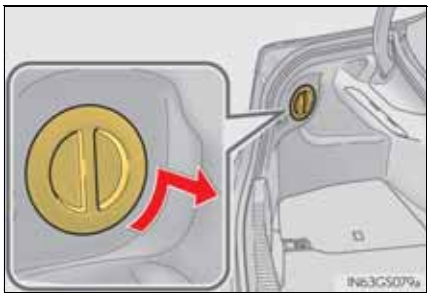
*: For the left side only



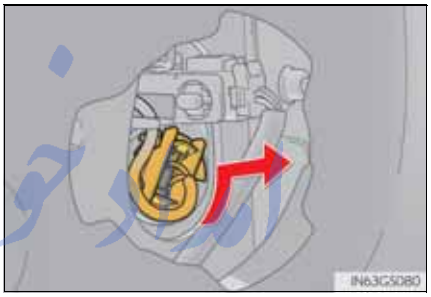
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Rear turn signal lights

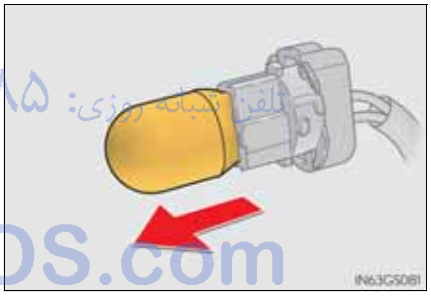
1 Open the trunk lid and remove the cover.



2 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.

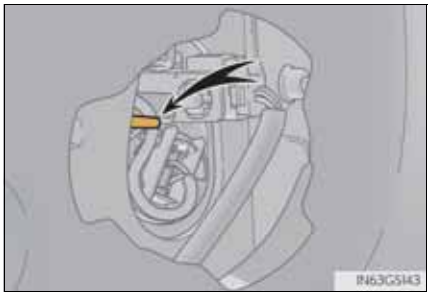


3 Remove the light bulb.



4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

After installing the bulb base, secure the cord with the clips and install the cover in its original position.



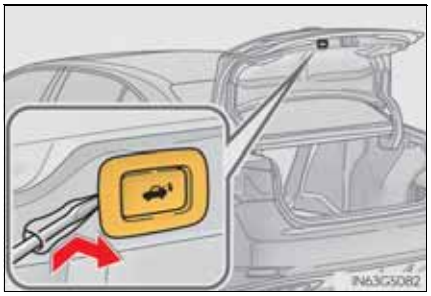
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن پشتیبانی روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

■ Back-up light

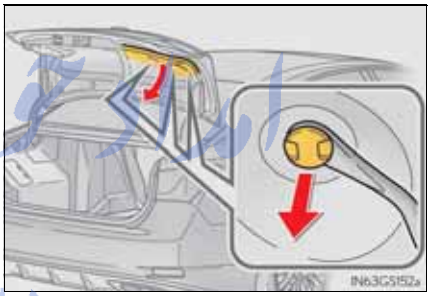
1 Open the trunk lid.

2 For the left side (vehicles with power trunk lid only): Pry out each side of the trunk closer switch in turn by inserting a screwdriver into the base.

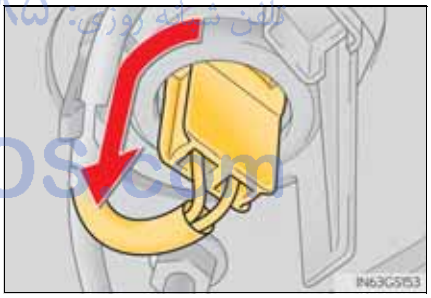
To prevent damage, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



3 Remove the clips on whichever side you are replacing and open the cover of the trunk lid.

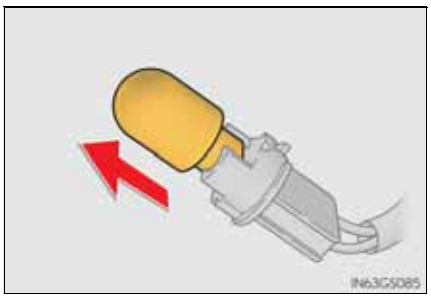


4 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



FarmaSOS.com

5 Remove the light bulb.

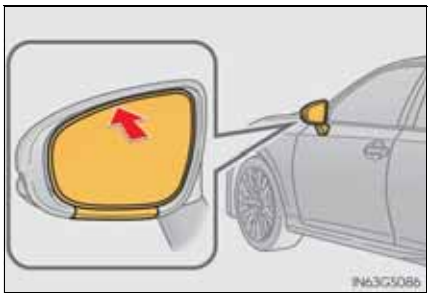


6 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Outer foot lights

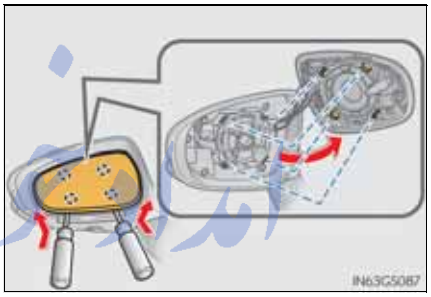
1 Press the upper part of the outside rear view mirror to tilt the mirror face upward, and apply protective tape to the lower part of the mirror cover.



2 Insert 2 flathead screwdrivers wrapped in protective tape, and disconnect the tabs behind the mirror.

Prize the mirror out toward you, disconnecting the tabs 2 at a time.

Work carefully, ensuring that you do not drop the mirror.



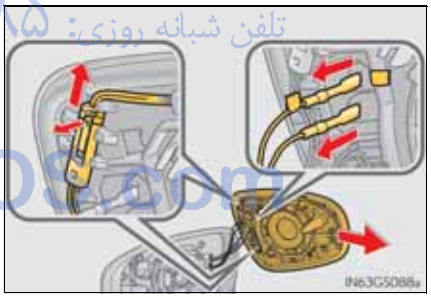
3 Disconnect the connectors behind the mirror, and remove the mirror.

When removing the thin connectors, make sure to mark one of the connectors with a piece of tape, to avoid mixing them up when reinstalling.

Work carefully, ensuring that you do not drop the mirror.

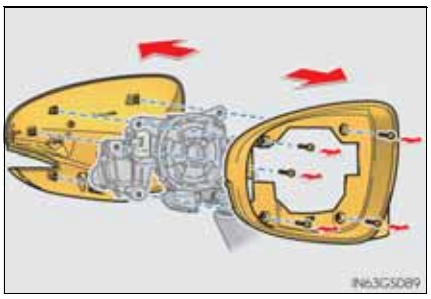
When handling the mirror, do not touch the parts applied with grease.

The number of connectors equipped differs by vehicle specification.

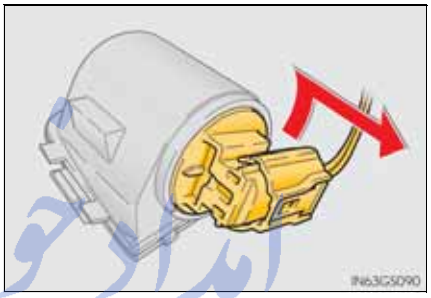


FarmaOS.com

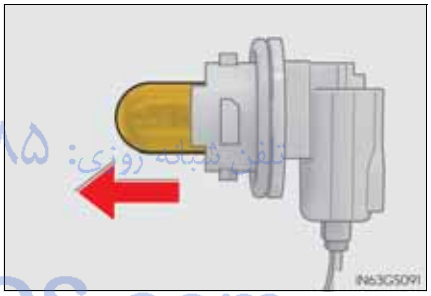
4 Remove the screws and take off the mirror cover.



5 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.

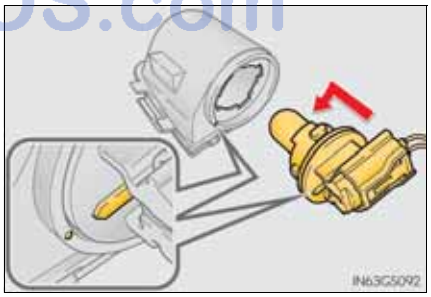


6 Remove the light bulb.



7 After installing the new bulb, secure the socket to the light body.

When inserting the socket, align the marks printed on the light body and the socket.



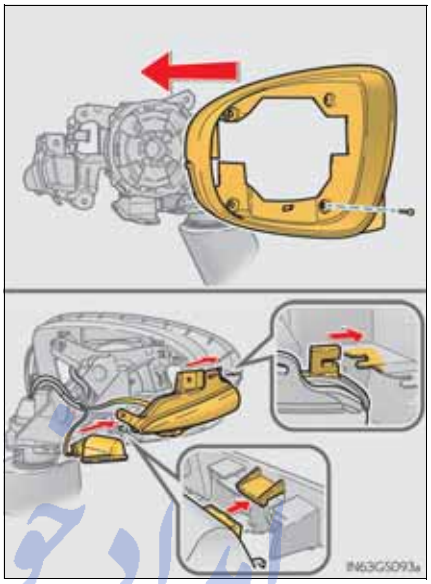
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

8 Install the visor cover on the mirror frame, secure it with a screw, and install the side turn signal light and outer foot light.

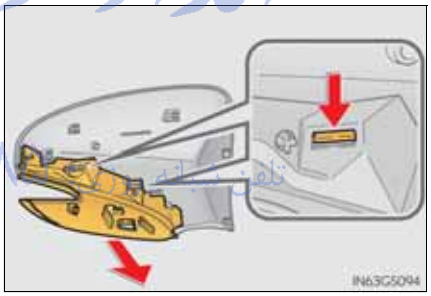
Use only the screw position shown in the illustration.

Side turn signal light: Align the tabs on the light and the cover and install.

Outer foot light: Interlock the tabs in the groove of the light body with those on the cover, and secure.



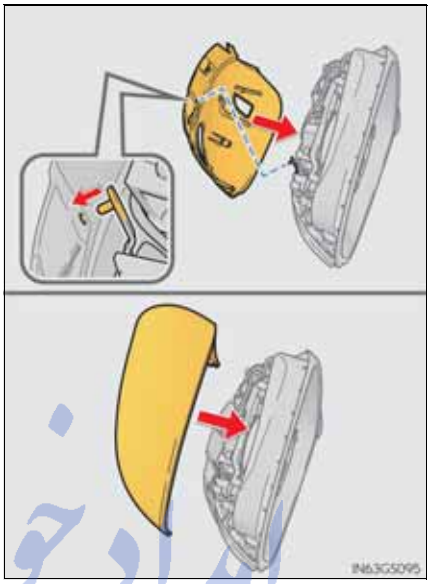
9 Disconnect the tabs, and separate the top and bottom of the rear side cover of the mirror.



FarmaSOS.com

10 Install the cover of the back end of the mirror, installing the lower side and the upper side in that order.

When installing the lower side of the cover, insert the side turn signal light pin into the hole in the cover.



11 Secure the cover with screws and reconnect the connectors back together.

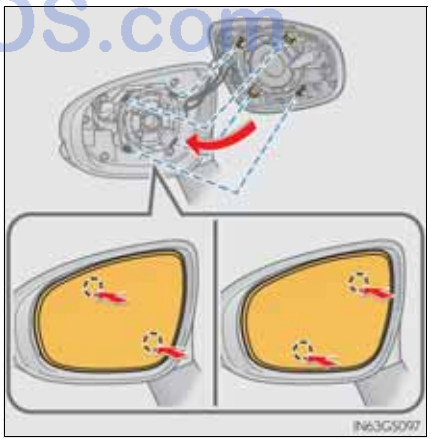
Secure the cords by returning them to the hooks as they were.



12 Align the tabs, and secure the mirror by pushing in each diagonally-opposite pair of tabs in order.

Make sure to insert the tabs in order as shown in the illustration, and push them in until a click is heard.

If you do not hear the click, do not force the tabs in. Instead, remove the mirror and check that the tabs are aligned.



امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

■ Replacing the following bulbs

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Headlights
- Front position lights and daytime running lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Stop/tail lights
- Tail lights
- Rear fog light
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsAsos.com

■ Discharge headlights

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

■ LED light bulbs

The lights other than the headlights, front fog lights (if equipped), front turn signal lights, rear turn signal lights, back-up light and outer foot lights each consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional to have the light replaced.

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

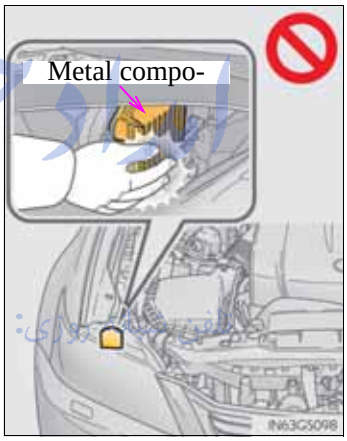
■ When replacing light bulbs

→P. 721

CAUTION

■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
  If the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- While the headlights are turned on, and for a short time after they have been turned off, metal components at the rear of the headlight assembly will be extremely hot. To prevent burns, do not touch these metal components until you are certain they have cooled down.



۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ Discharge headlights

- Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional before replacing the discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
  An extremely high voltage of 30000 V will be discharged and could result in death or serious injury by electric shock.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.
  Doing so could result in electric shock and death or serious injury.

■ To prevent damage or fire

- Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.
- Check the wattage of the bulb before installing to prevent heat damage.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When replacing the outer foot lights

If the front window is stopping you from conducting the replace operation properly, open the window on the side you are working on to allow you enough space to work. Continuing the operation without giving yourself enough space to work could lead you to scratch the vehicle.

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

When trouble arises 7

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 738

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 739

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 740

If you think something is wrong 747

Fuel pump shut off system 748

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 749

If a warning message is displayed 757

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire) 782

If you have a flat tire (vehicles without a spare tire) 797

If the engine will not start. 815

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 817

If the parking brake cannot be released..... 818

If the electronic key does not operate properly..... 821

If the vehicle battery is discharged 824

If your vehicle overheats .. 829

If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 832

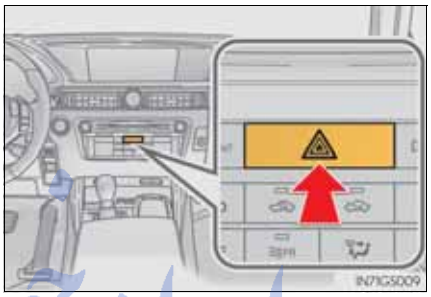
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road to a breakdown, etc.

Press the switch.

All the turn signals will flash.
To turn them off, press the switch once again.



امداد خودرو فارما

■ Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

1. Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

   Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

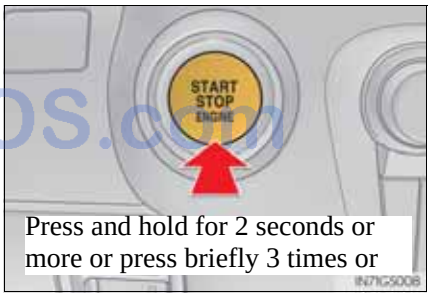
2. Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

3. After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.
4. Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

3. Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.
4. To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



Press and hold for 2 seconds or more or press briefly 3 times or

5. Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or flat bed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

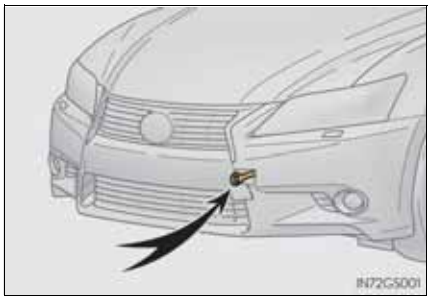
Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Emergency towing



If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Installing towing eyelet

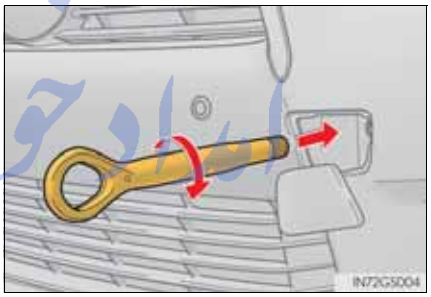
1 Take out the towing eyelet. (→P. 784, 799)

2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

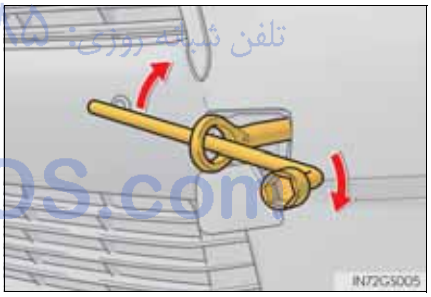
To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body as shown in the illustration.



3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench.



FarmaSOS.com

Towing with a sling-type truck

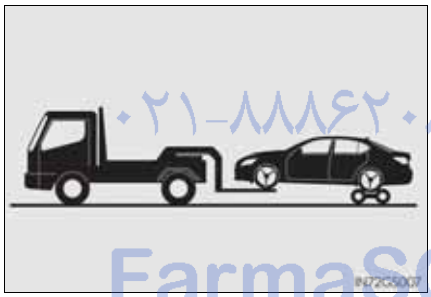
Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.



Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front

Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.



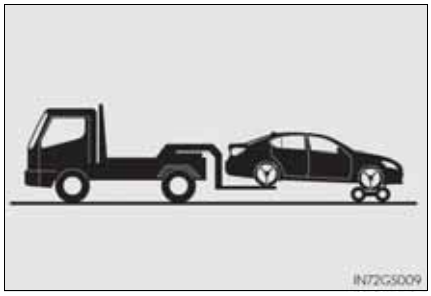
▶ From the rear (2WD models)

Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode so that the steering wheel is unlocked.



▶ From the rear (AWD models)

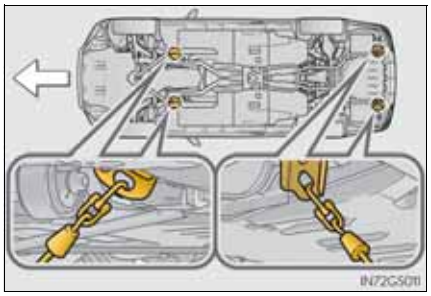
Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

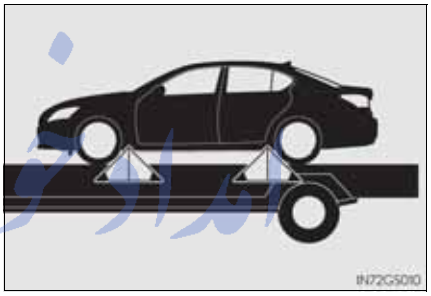
Using a flat bed truck

If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Before emergency towing

1 Release the parking brake.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

3 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY (engine off) or IGNITION ON (engine running) mode.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while towing

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
  Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelets and the cables or chains. Always be cautious of the surroundings and other vehicles while towing.
- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission and transfer (AWD models) when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

2WD models:
Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.
AWD models:
Never tow this vehicle with any of the wheels in contact with the ground.

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

2WD models:

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear with the engine switch off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle from the rear, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed from the rear.

AWD models:
When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ To prevent body damage when towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission and transfer (AWD models) in emergency towing

Never tow a vehicle from the rear with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission and transfer.

FarmaSOS.com

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

1 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.

2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Brake system warning light (warning buzzer) • Low brake fluid • Malfunction in the brake booster system

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Charging system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system

Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Malfunction indicator lamp Indicates a malfunction in: • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic automatic transmission control system
	SRS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system
	ABS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Electric power steering system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	Pre-crash safety system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the pre-crash safety system The warning light will operate as follows, even when the system is not malfunctioning: • The light will flash quickly when the system is operating. (→P. 343) • The light will turn on when the pre-crash safety system is disabled. (→P. 344) • The light will flash when the system cannot temporarily be used. (→P. 774)
	Slip indicator Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC system; • The TRC system; or • The hill-start assist control system The light will flash when the VSC, the TRC or the hill-start assist control system is operating.
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	"AFS OFF" indicator Indicates a malfunction in the adaptive front-lighting system
 (Flashes)	Parking brake indicator Indicates a malfunction in the parking brake system
	Brake system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the parking brake system

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light goes off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1 Indicates that a door or the trunk is not fully closed	Check that all the doors and the trunk are closed.
	Low fuel level warning light Indicates remaining fuel is approximately 10.5 L (2.8 gal., 2.3 Imp.gal.) or less	Refuel the vehicle.
	Seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2 Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts	Fasten the seat belt. If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) off.
	Master warning light A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	→P. 757

ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Tire pressure warning light	
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as • Natural causes (→P. 754) • Flat tire (→P. 783, 798)	Adjust the tire inflation pressure (including the full-size spare tire) to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system	Have the system checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*1: Open door warning buzzer:

→P. 763

*2: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds intermittently for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Carry out the following procedure after the tire temperature has lowered sufficiently.

- Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level.
- If the warning light does not go out even after several minutes, check that the tire inflation pressure is at the specified level and carry out initialization.

The warning light may come on again if the above operations are conducted without first allowing the tire temperature to lower sufficiently.

■ The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

■ When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

Vehicles with a compact spare tire: The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire.

Vehicles with a full-size spare tire: The spare tire is also equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire.

■ Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly

→P. 678

■ If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

NOTICE

■ Precaution when installing a different tire

When differently constructed tires or tires of different makers, models or tread patterns are installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

FarmaSOS.com

If a warning message is displayed

If a warning is shown on the multi-information display, stay calm and perform the following actions:



① Master warning light

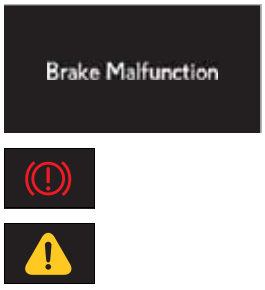
The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

② Multi-information display

If any of the warning light comes on again after the following actions have been performed, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning message	Details
	Indicates the following: • The brake fluid level is low; or, • The brake booster system is malfunctioning. A buzzer also sounds.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Stop the vehicle immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning message	Details
	Indicates abnormal engine oil pressure The warning light may come on if the engine oil pressure is too low.

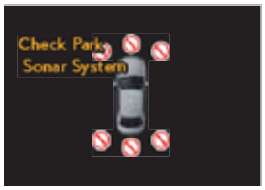
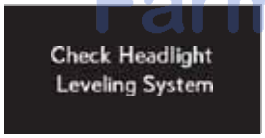
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

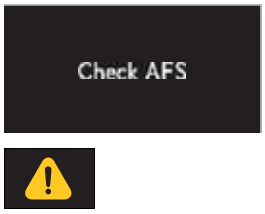
A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning message	Details
  (AWD models)	Indicates a malfunction in the AWD system
 	Indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high
  (Flashes)  (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the pre-crash safety system

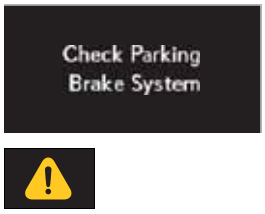
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details
  (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the Lexus parking-assist sensor The malfunctioning assist-sensor is flashing.
 	Indicates a malfunction in the dynamic radar cruise control system (if equipped) or the cruise control system Press the “ON-OFF” button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
  (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)
  (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the automatic headlight leveling system

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۷۶۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details
 (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the adaptive front-lighting system
 	Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; or, • The seat belt pretensioner system
  (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the Automatic High Beam system
 	Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or, • The brake assist system
  (Flashes) 	Indicates a malfunction in the parking brake system

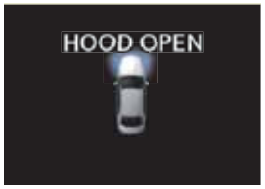
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details
	Indicates a malfunction in the parking brake system
	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the Blind Spot Monitor
 (Flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the smart entry & start system

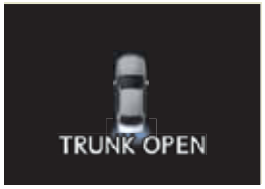
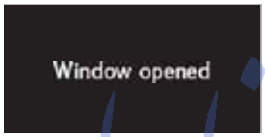
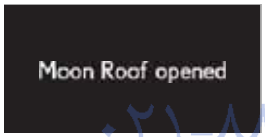
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Follow the correction procedures.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message goes off.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	Indicates that one or more of the doors is not fully closed The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not yet fully closed.	Make sure that all the doors are closed.
	Indicates that the hood is not fully closed If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the hood is not yet fully closed.	Close the hood.

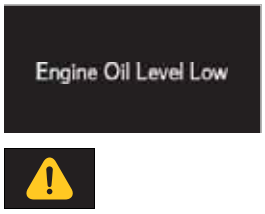
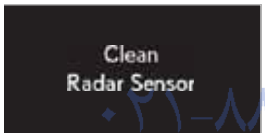
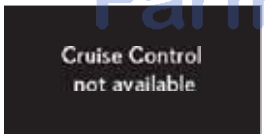
FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	Indicates that the trunk is not fully closed If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph),  flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk is not yet fully closed.	Close the trunk.
  (Flashes)	Indicates that the windows are not fully closed (with the engine switch off, and the driver's door open)	Close all the windows.
  (Flashes) (If equipped)	Indicates that the moon roof is not fully closed (with the engine switch off, and the driver's door open)	Close the moon roof.
  (Flashes) (If equipped)	Indicates that the windows and the moon roof are not fully closed (with the engine switch off, and the driver's door open)	Close all the windows and the moon roof.

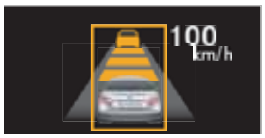
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	Indicates that the parking brake is still engaged If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph),  flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged.	Release the parking brake.
  (Flashes)  (Flashes)	Indicates that the parking brake system has overheated	Wait until the system cools down.
 	Indicates that shift range 1 has been selected with the shift lever in M when driving on slippery road surfaces. The range will not be downshifted and remain 2.	Drive with the shift range higher than 2.

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	Indicates that engine oil level is low	Check the level of engine oil, and add if necessary.
 (If equipped)	Indicates that Lexus parking assist-sensor is dirty or covered with ice	Clean the sensor.
 (If equipped)	Indicates that the radar sensor is dirty or covered with ice	Clean the sensor.
 (If equipped)	Indicates that the radar cruise control system is unable to judge vehicle-to-vehicle distance	• Turn off the snow mode. • If the windshield wipers are on, turn them off or set them to a mode other than AUTO or high speed wiper operation.

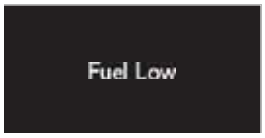
امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 (If equipped)	Indicates that your vehicle is nearing the vehicle ahead (in vehicle-to-vehicle distance mode) At the same time,  will appear on the head-up display (the image flashes).	Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.
  (Flashes) (If equipped)	Indicates that there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, or that the pre-crash braking function is operating At the same time, will appear on the head-up display too (the image flashes).	Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.
  (If equipped)	Indicates that the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) is suspended • The camera sensor temperature is higher than the operation temperature range. • The power steering system operation is restricted.	Restart the LKA after driving for a while.

۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
Farmasos.com

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 (If equipped)	Alerts the driver that the vehicle is out of the lanes (while the LKA [Lane-Keeping Assist] system is operating) The warning buzzer sounds continuously. The lane markings and/or the steering wheel marking flash. At the same time,  will appear on the head-up display (part of the image flashes).	Check around the vehicle and back to inside of the lane markings.
  (If equipped)	Indicates that the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) system detects no-handed driving (while the lane keeping assist function is operating) The warning buzzer sounds twice.	Grip the steering wheel firmly.
  (If equipped)	Indicates that the Blind Spot Monitor sensors or the surrounding area on the bumper is dirty or covered with ice	Clean the sensor and its surrounding area on the bumper.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 10.5 L (2.8 gal., 2.3 Imp.gal.) or less	Refuel the vehicle.
  (Flashes)	Indicates that the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on	Turn the lights off.
  (Flashes)	Indicates that the driver's door was opened with the shift position in any position other than P	Shift the shift position to P.

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Warning message in radar cruise mode (if equipped)

In the following cases, the warning message may not be displayed even if vehicle-to-vehicle distance decreases:

- When your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are traveling at the same speed or the vehicle ahead is traveling more quickly than your vehicle
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at a very low speed
- Immediately after cruise control speed is set
- At the instant the accelerator pedal is depressed

■ The LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) lane departure warning function

In the following cases, the warning message will not be displayed even if a lane line is crossed.

- When the vehicle speed deviates from the operating range of the LKA system functions
- When the lane lines cannot be recognized
- When the steering wheel is turned as far as necessary to cause the vehicle to change lanes

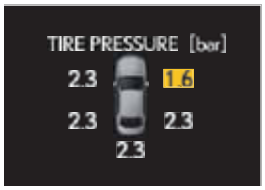
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Follow the correction procedures.

A warning message is shown on the multi-information display. After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message goes off.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 (If equipped)	Indicates that the Automatic High Beam switch is pressed while the headlights are in low beam.	Turn the high beam on and press the Automatic High Beam switch again.
	Indicates that the washer fluid level is low	Add washer fluid.
  (If equipped)	Indicates that the fuel injectors require maintenance	Have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional replenish the injector cleaner and reset the message.

FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
  (If equipped)	Indicates that the tire inflation pressure is low	Check the tire inflation pressure, and adjust to the appropriate level.
  (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the tire pressure warning system	Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off then on again. If the tire pressure warning indicator flashes for 1 minute then illuminates, there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 (If equipped)	Indicates that the tire position information cannot be recognized	Drive for a short while and check if the display updates. If the radio wave conditions improve, the display may return to normal. If the tire pressure is still not displayed after driving for several minutes, stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn the engine switch off then on again, and start driving. If the tire pressure is still not displayed even after repeating this several times, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن ۲۴ ساعته روزی
FarmaSOS.com

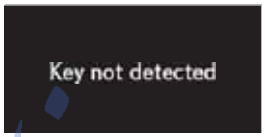
Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
  (Flashes) (If equipped)	Indicates that the pre-crash safety system is not currently functional because the grille cover or the sensor is dirty This message also appears when the pre-crash safety system is not functional due to overheating.	Check the grille cover and the sensor and clean them if they are dirty. In case of overheating, the system will become functional once the system cools down.

Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

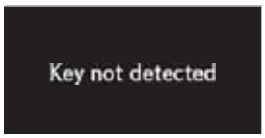
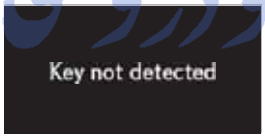
After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message and light go off.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	  (Flashes)	The electronic key is not detected when an attempt is made to start the engine.	Start the engine with the electronic key present.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن پاسخگویی روزانه
FarmaSOS.com

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	3 times		The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and a door other than the driver's door was opened and closed while the engine switch was in a mode other than off.	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.
		 (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was in P and the engine switch was not turned off.	Turn the engine switch off or bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

FarmaSOS.com

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	Continuous	  (Displayed alternately)  (Flashes)	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the engine switch off when the shift lever was in P.	Turn the engine switch off and lock the doors again.
9 times	—	  (Flashes)	An attempt was made to drive when the regular key was not inside the vehicle.	Confirm that the electronic key is inside the vehicle.
Continuous	—	  (Flashes)	The driver’s door was opened when the shift lever was not in P and the engine switch was not turned off.	Shift the shift lever to P.

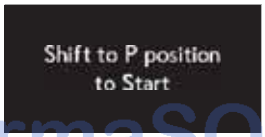
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Continuous	Continuous	Shift to P position Key not detected (Displayed alternately) (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was not in P and the engine switch was not turned off.	• Shift the shift lever to P. • Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.
—	Continuous	Key detected in vehicle (Flashes)	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.

FarmaSOS.com

Once	Continuous	  (Flashes)	An attempt was made to lock either front door by opening a door and putting the inside lock button into the lock position, then closing the door by pulling on the outside door handle with the electronic key still inside the vehicle. For some models only: An attempt was made to lock the doors other than using the smart entry & start system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.

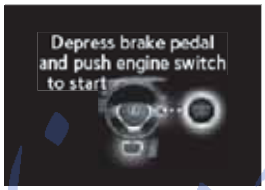
ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	 (Flashes)	• When the doors were unlocked with the mechanical key and then the engine switch was pressed, the electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle. • The electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle even after the engine switch was pressed two consecutive times.	Touch the electronic key to the engine switch while depressing the brake pedal.
Once	—	 (Flashes)	An attempt was made to start the engine with the shift lever in an incorrect position.	Shift the shift lever to P and start the engine.

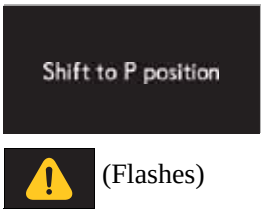
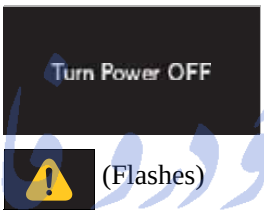
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
—	—		Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function.	Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery.
Once	—		The electronic key has a low battery.	Replace the electronic key battery. (→P. 697)

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	 (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened and closed with the engine switch turned off and then the engine switch was put in ACCESSORY mode twice without the engine being started.	Press the engine switch while depressing the brake pedal.
			During an engine starting procedure in the event that the electronic key was not functioning properly (→P. 823), the engine switch was touched with the electronic key.	Press the engine switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding.
Once	—	 (Flashes)	The steering lock could not be released within 3 seconds of the engine switch being pressed.	Press the engine switch while depressing the brake pedal and moving the steering wheel left and right.

FarmaSOS.com
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	 (Flashes)	The engine switch has been turned off with the shift lever in a position other than P or N.	Shift the shift lever to P.
Once	—	 (Flashes)	After the engine switch has been turned off with the shift lever in a position other than P, the shift lever has been shifted to P.	Turn the engine switch off.

■ Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

FarmaSOS.com

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare tire provided.

For details about tires: →P. 672

⚠ CAUTION

■ If you have a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

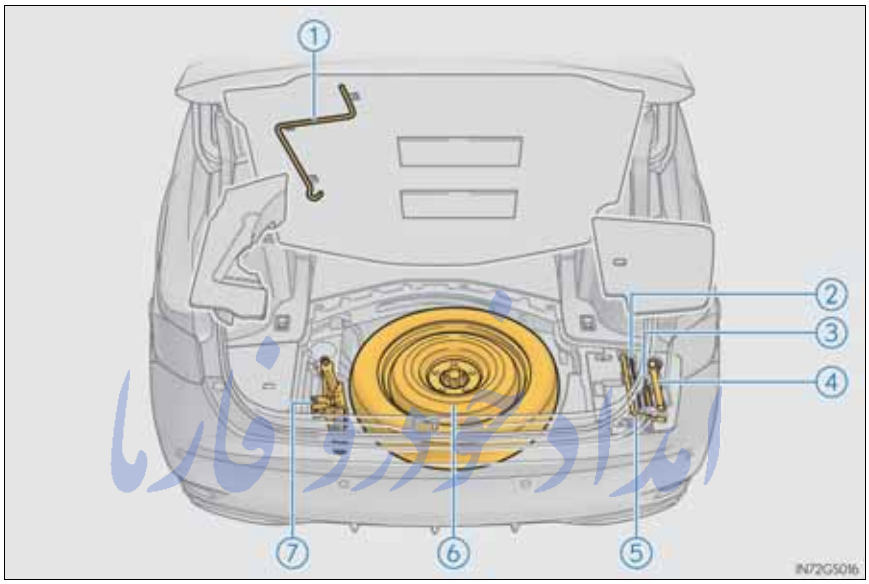
Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 738)

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools

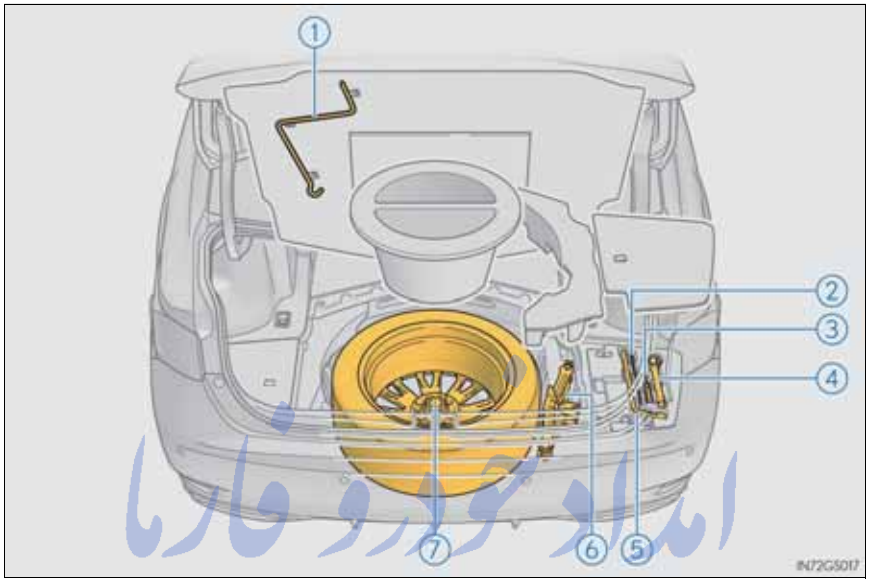
▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



1 Jack handle
2 Parking brake release tool
3 Screwdriver
4 Towing eyelet
5 Wheel nut wrench
6 Spare tire
7 Jack

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



① Jack handle
② Parking brake release tool
③ Screwdriver
④ Towing eyelet
⑤ Wheel nut wrench
⑥ Jack
⑦ Spare tire

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۰۰
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions.
Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن امداد خودرو ۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Taking out the jack and jack handle

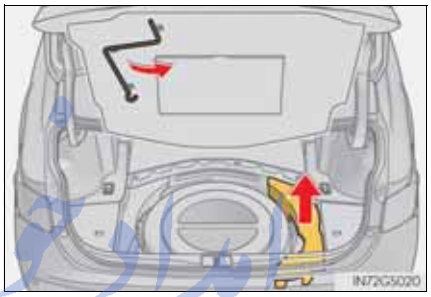
1 Remove the center luggage mat. (→P. 622)

2 Remove the spacer and take out the jack handle from the reverse side of the center luggage mat.

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

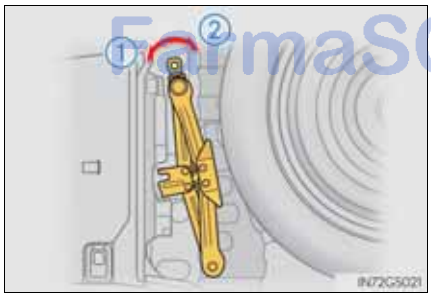


3 Take out the jack.

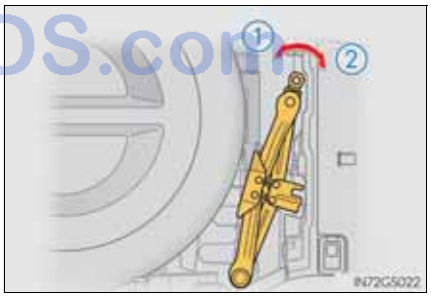
① For tightening

② For loosening

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



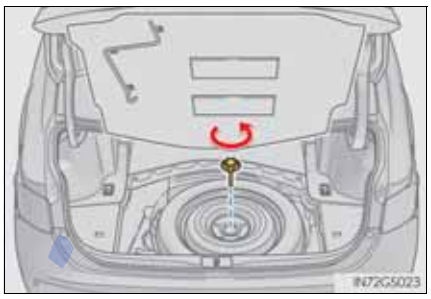
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۲-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Taking out the spare tire

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

1 Remove the center luggage mat. (→P. 622)

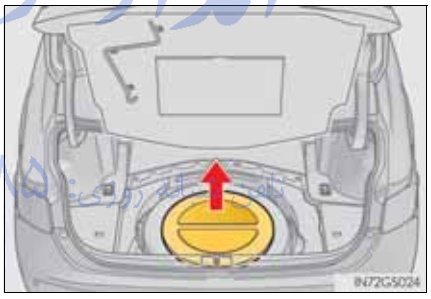
2 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.



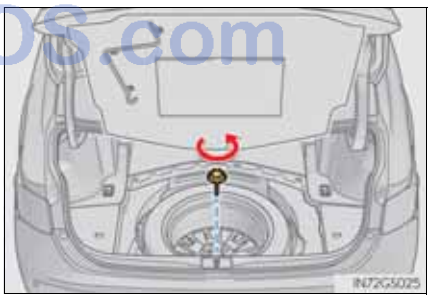
▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

1 Remove the center luggage mat. (→P. 622)

2 Remove the spacers.



3 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.



امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

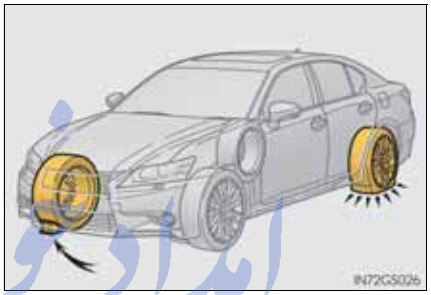
CAUTION

■ When storing the spare tire

Be careful not to catch fingers or other body parts between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

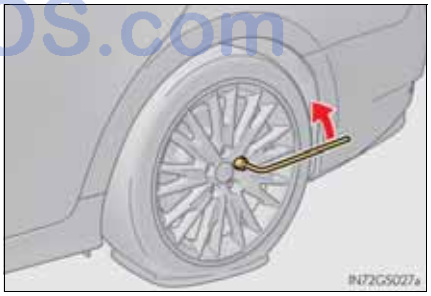
Replacing a flat tire

1 Chock the tires.



Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

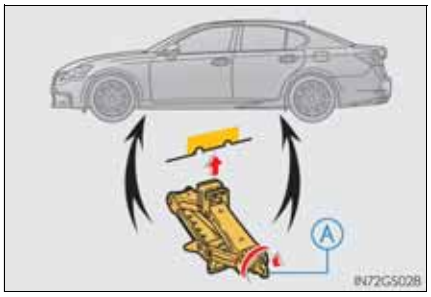
2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



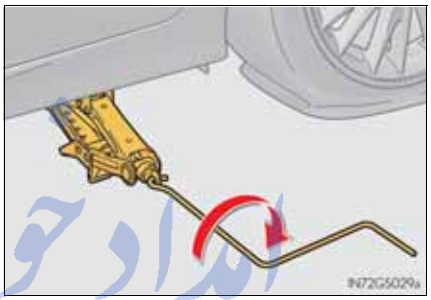
امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

3 Turn the tire jack portion “A” by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.

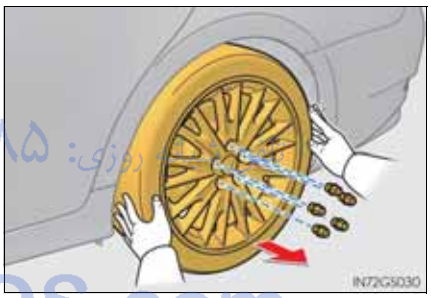


4 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



5 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



6 Vehicles with a full-size spare tire: Remove the wheel ornament by pushing from the reverse side.



امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Replacing a flat tire

● Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury:

- Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.

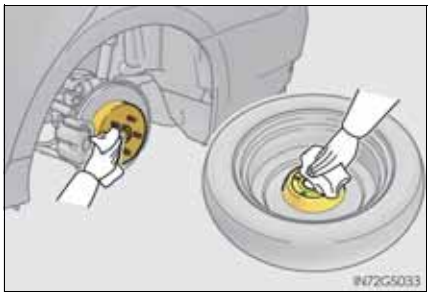
● Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

farmasos.com

Installing the spare tire

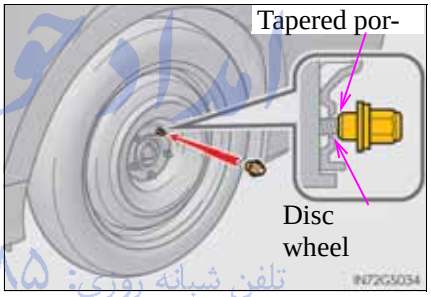
1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.



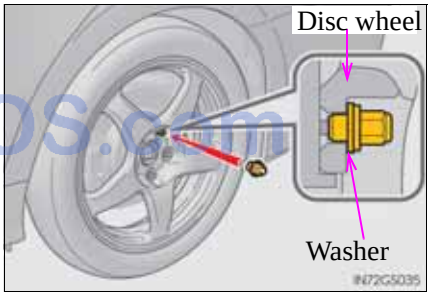
If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

2 Install the tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

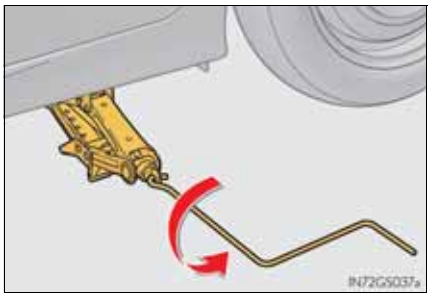
When replacing an aluminum wheel with a steel wheel, tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.



When replacing an aluminum wheel with an aluminum wheel, turn the wheel nuts until the washers come into contact with the disc wheel.



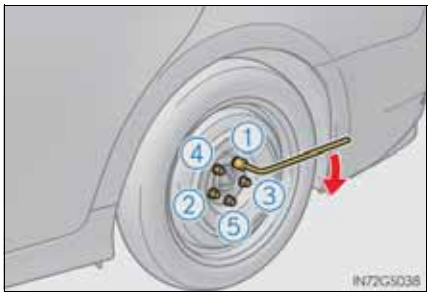
3 Lower the vehicle.



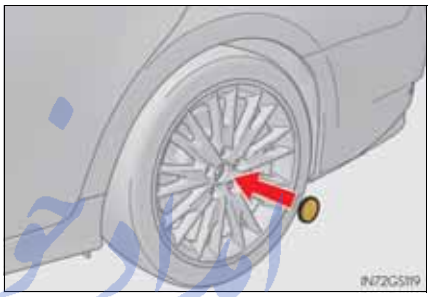
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)



5 Vehicles with a full-size spare tire: Reinstall the wheel ornament.



6 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ The compact spare tire

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label “TEMPORARY USE ONLY” on the tire sidewall.
  Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P. 850)

■ When using the compact spare tire

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

■ When the compact spare tire is equipped

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires.

■ If you have a flat rear tire on a road covered with snow or ice (vehicles with front and rear tires of the same size and compact spare tire only)

Install the compact spare tire on one of the front wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the rear tires:

1. Replace a front tire with the compact spare tire.
2. Replace the flat rear tire with the tire removed from the front of the vehicle.
3. Fit tire chains to the rear tires.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Certification for the jack

CE

Manufacturer's Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer:
Kawasaki Industrial Co., Ltd.
4618 Mukaijima Shimada, Shizuoka, Japan

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

2006/42/EC Machinery Directive

The product covered by this declaration

JACK SUB-ASSY,PANTOGRAPH

model
0.8ton , 1.1ton , 1.35ton , 1.5ton

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the Machinery Directive
Directive above by meeting following standards

JIS D 8103

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirement the Machinery Directive has been compiled by the signatory belowand is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer

Technical File No: KSF-201-00-01

The CE mark was first applied in:2010

Done at Shizuoka, Japan

Signature:
Koji Kawasaki
PRESIDENT ,Kawasaki Industrial Co., Ltd.

Date of Issue: 25 December,2009

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When using the full-size spare tire as a rear tire (vehicles with front and rear tires of differing sizes)

- Replace the spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, as well as sudden braking and shifting operation to engine braking.

■ When using the compact spare tire

- Remember that the compact spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tires simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, as well as sudden braking and shifting operation to engine braking.

■ When the compact spare tire is attached

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- PCS (if equipped)
- EPS
- AFS (if equipped)
- AVS (if equipped)
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist monitor (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)
- Navigation system (if equipped)

Also, not only can the following system not be utilized fully, but it may even negatively affect the drive-train components:

- AWD system

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۷ تلفن شبانه‌روزی
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Speed limit when using the compact spare tire

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■ After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.
Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency tire puncture repair kit.
A puncture caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread can be repaired temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

⚠ CAUTION

■ If you have a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

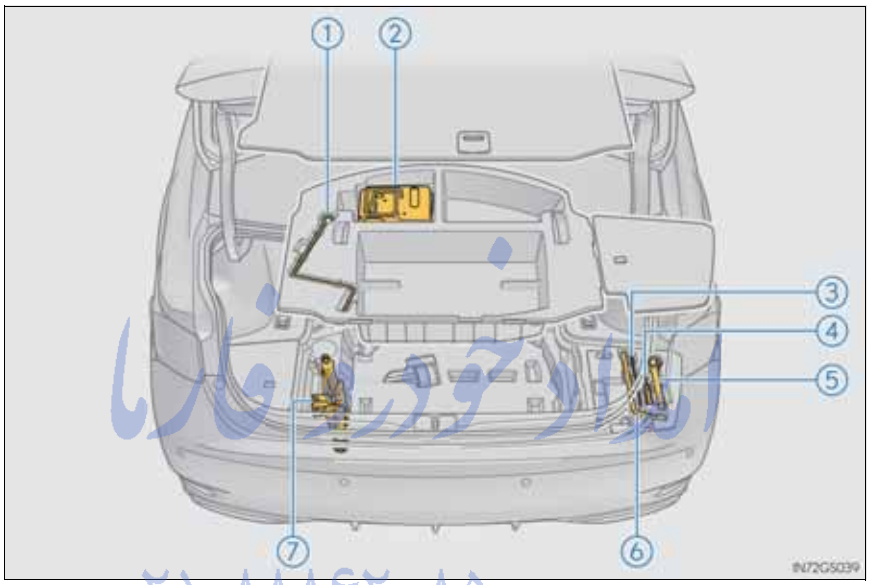
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Before repairing the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 738)

Location of the emergency tire puncture repair kit, jack and tools

▶ Type A

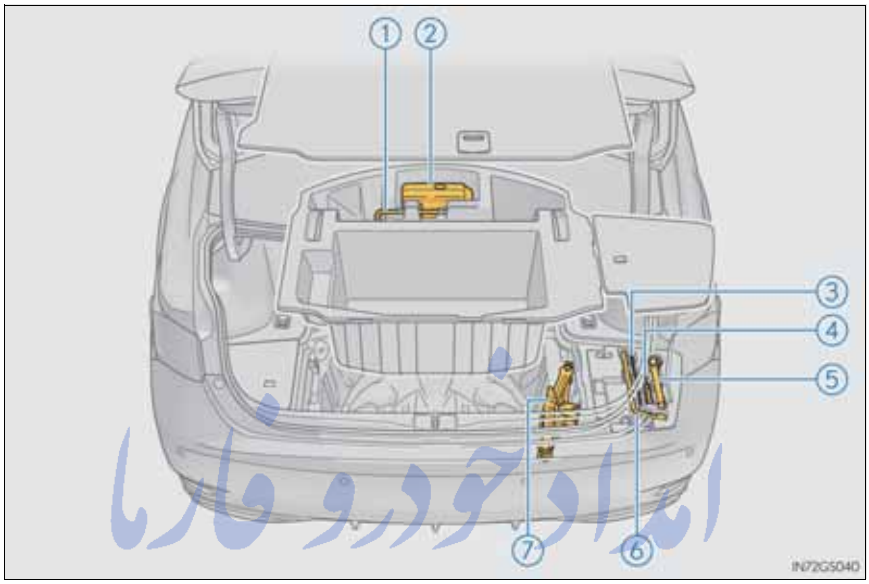


تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۸
FarmaSOS.com

① Jack handle
② Emergency tire puncture repair kit
③ Parking brake release tool
④ Screwdriver
⑤ Towing eyelet
⑥ Wheel nut wrench
⑦ Jack*

*: Use of the jack (→P. 789)

▶ Type B

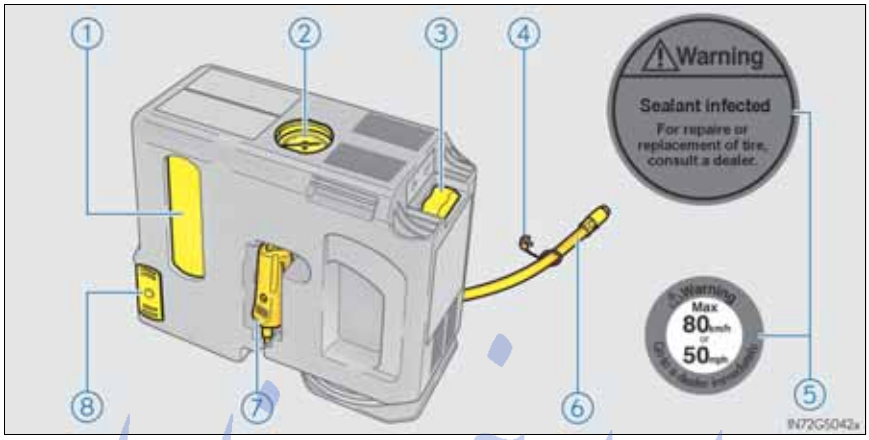


1 Jack handle
2 Emergency tire puncture repair kit
3 Parking brake release tool
4 Screwdriver
5 Towing eyelet
6 Wheel nut wrench
7 Jack*

*: Use of the jack (→P. 789)

FarmaSOS.com

Emergency tire puncture repair kit components



① Bottle
② Air pressure gauge
③ Compressor switch
④ Air release cap
⑤ Stickers
⑥ Hose
⑦ Power plug
⑧ Insertion key

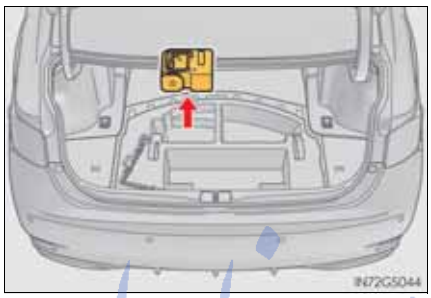
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Taking out the emergency tire puncture repair kit

1 Remove the center luggage mat. (→P. 622)

2 Take out the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

▶ Type A



▶ Type B

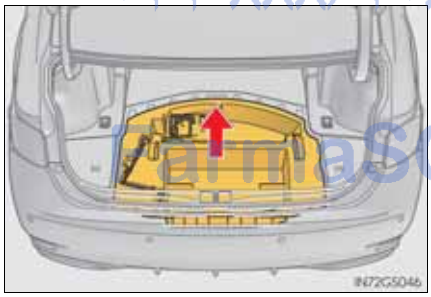


Taking out the jack

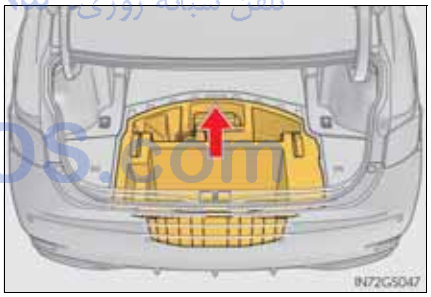
1 Remove the center luggage mat. (→P. 622)

2 Remove the center auxiliary box.

▶ Type A



▶ Type B



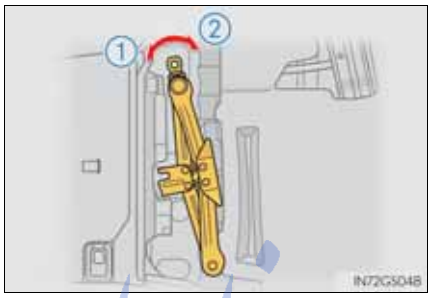
امداد خودرو فارا
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FaraSOS.com

3 Take out the jack.

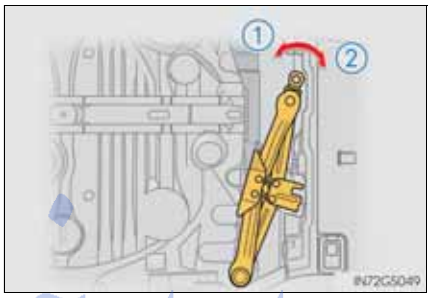
① For tightening

② For loosening

▶ Type A



▶ Type B



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Before performing emergency repair

Check the degree of the tire damage.

A tire should only be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit if the damage is caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread.

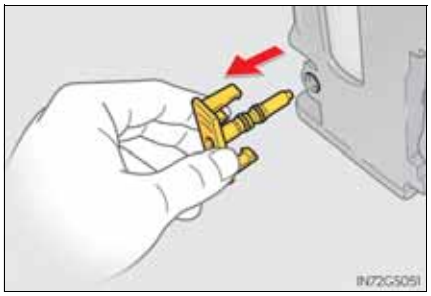


- Do not remove the nail or screw from the tire. Removing the object may widen the opening and disenable emergency repair with the kit.
- To avoid sealant leakage, move the vehicle until the area of the puncture, if known, is positioned at the top of the tire.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

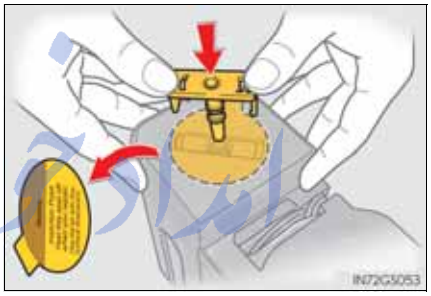
Emergency repair method

1 Pull the insertion key out of the kit.



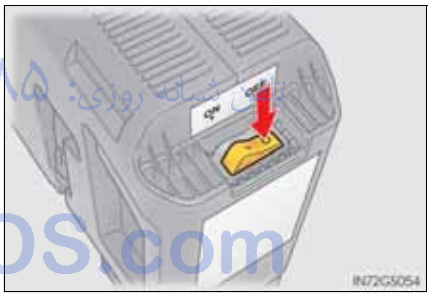
2 Place the kit with the bottom facing upward.

Peel off the label, and push in the insertion key until a click is heard.



3 Return the kit to an upright position and make sure that the compressor switch is off.

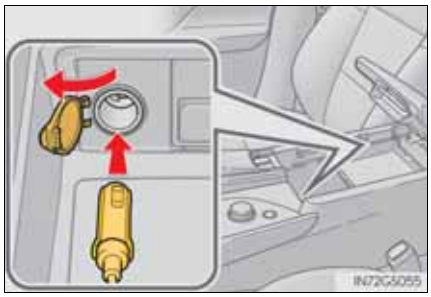
Use the kit with the top facing upward.



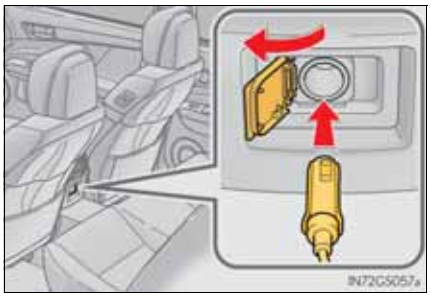
FarmaSOS.com

4 Connect the power plug to the power outlet socket. (→P. 627)

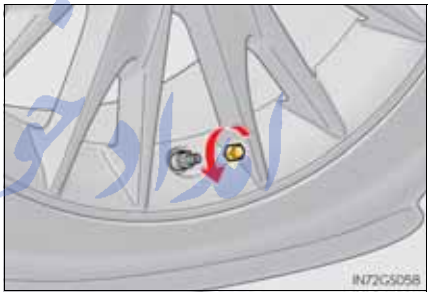
▶ Inside of console box



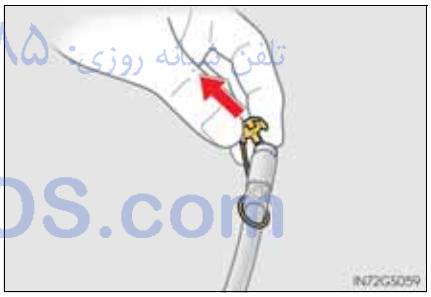
▶ Backside of console box



5 Remove the valve cap from the valve of the punctured tire.



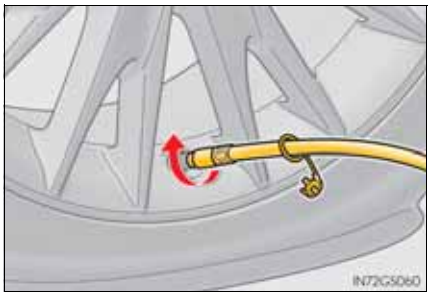
6 Remove the air release cap from the hose.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

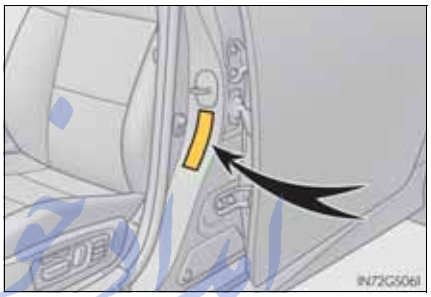
7 Connect the hose to the valve.

Screw the end of the hose clockwise as far as possible.



8 Check the specified tire inflation pressure.

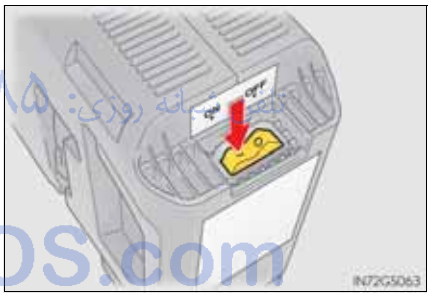
Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label as shown. (→P. 850)



9 Start the engine. (→P. 207)

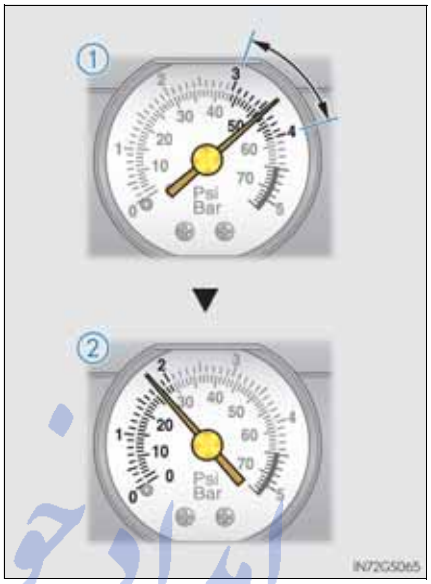
10 To inject the sealant and inflate the tire, turn the compressor switch on.

Use the kit with the top facing upward.



FarmaSOS.com

11 Inflate the tire until the recommended pressure is reached.



① The sealant will be injected and the pressure will spike to 300 kPa (3.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 44 psi) or 400 kPa (4.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 58 psi), then gradually decrease.

② The air pressure gauge will display the actual tire inflation pressure about 1 minute after the switch is turned on.

- Turn the compressor switch off and then check the tire inflation pressure. Being careful not to over inflate, check and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached.
- If the needle of the air pressure gauge reaches the red zone (450 kPa [4.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 65 psi] or more), there may be a malfunction in the tire or in the kit itself. Stop operation immediately.
- If the tire inflation pressure is still lower than the recommended level after inflation for 10 minutes with the switch on, the tire is too damaged to be repaired. Turn the compressor switch off and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

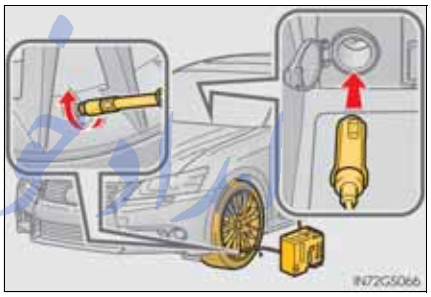
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

- If the tire inflation pressure exceeds the recommended level, let out some air to adjust the tire inflation pressure.
(→P. 813)

12 Disconnect the hose from the valve on the tire and then pull out the power plug from the power outlet socket.

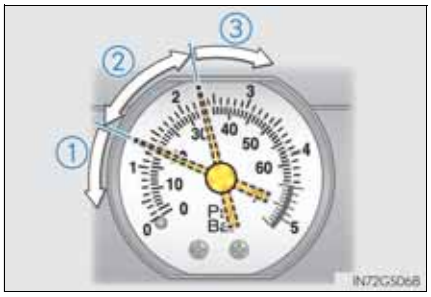
13 To spread the liquid sealant evenly within the tire, immediately drive for about 5 km (3 miles).

14 After driving for about 5 km (3 miles), stop your vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface and reconnect the compressor.



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

15 Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check the tire inflation pressure.



① If the tire inflation pressure is below 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi): The puncture cannot be repaired. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

② If the tire inflation pressure is between 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) and a point below the recommended level: The tire can be repaired. Proceed to step 16.

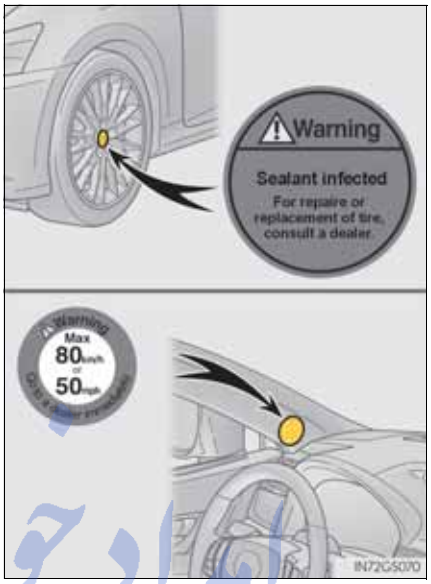
③ If the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level: Proceed to step 17.

16 Turn the compressor switch on to inflate the tire until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached. Drive for about 5 km (3 miles) and then perform step 14.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۹۱۲-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

17 Store the kit and then attach the 2 stickers as shown.

Taking precautions to avoid sudden braking and sharp turns, drive carefully at under 80 km/h (50 mph) to the nearest Lexus dealer for tire repair or replacement.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

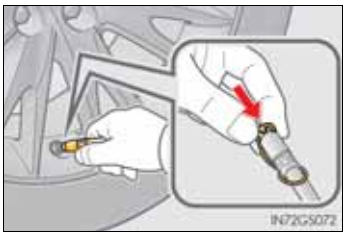
- In the following cases, the tire cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - When the tire is damaged due to driving without sufficient air pressure
  - When the tire lost air pressure due to a crack or damage in the tire sidewall
  - When the tire is visibly separated from the wheel
  - When the cut or damage to the tread is 4 mm (0.16 in.) long or more
  - When the wheel is damaged
  - When two or more tires have been punctured
  - When there is more than one hole or cut in the damaged tire
- Emergency tire puncture repair kit
  - The sealant has a limited lifespan. The expiry date is marked on the bottle. The sealant should be replaced before the expiry date. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for replacement.
  - The sealant stored in the emergency tire puncture repair kit can be used only once to temporarily repair a single tire. If the sealant in the bottle and other parts of the kit have been used and need to be purchased, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - The sealant can be used when the outside temperature is from -30 °C (-22 °F) to 60 °C (140 °F).
  - The kit is exclusively designed for size and type of tires originally installed on your vehicle. Do not use it for tires that a different size than the original ones, or for any other purposes.
  - If the sealant gets on your clothes, it may stain.
  - If the sealant adheres to a wheel or the surface of the vehicle body, the stain may not be removable if it is not cleaned at once. Immediately wipe away the sealant with a wet cloth.
  - During operation of the kit, a loud operation noise is produced. This does not indicate a malfunction.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ If the tire is inflated to more than the recommended level

1 Disconnect the hose from the valve.

2 Install the air release cap to the end of the hose and push the protrusion on the air release cap into the valve to let some air out.



3 Disconnect the hose from the valve, remove the air release cap from the hose and then reconnect the hose.

4 Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check that the air pressure indicator shows the recommended level. (→P. 850)
If the air pressure is lower than the recommended level, turn the compressor switch on again and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended pressure is reached.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Precautions for use of the sealant

- Ingesting the sealant is hazardous to your health. If you ingest sealant, consume as much water as possible, then immediately consult a doctor.
- If sealant gets in eyes or adheres to skin, immediately wash it off with water. If discomfort persists, consult a doctor.

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ When fixing the flat tire

- Stop your vehicle in a safe and flat area.
- Connect the valve and hose securely with the tire installed on the vehicle.
- If the hose is not properly connected to the valve, air leakage may occur or sealant may be sprayed out.
- If the hose comes off the valve while inflating the tire, there is a risk that the hose will move abruptly due to air pressure.
- After inflation of the tire has completed, the sealant may splatter when the hose is disconnected or some air is let out of the tire.
- Keep back from the tire while it is being repaired, as there is a chance of it bursting while the repair operation is being performed. If you notice any cracks or deformation of the tire, turn off the compressor switch and stop the repair operation immediately.
- The kit may overheat if operated for a long period of time. Do not operate the compressor continuously for more than 10 minutes.
- Parts of the kit become hot during operation. Be careful handling the kit during and after operation.
- Do not attach the vehicle speed warning sticker to an area other than the one indicated. If the sticker is attached to an area where an SRS airbag is located, such as the pad of the steering wheel, it may prevent the SRS air bag from operating properly.

■ Driving to spread the liquid sealant evenly

- Drive the vehicle carefully at a low speed. Be especially careful when turning and cornering.
- If the vehicle does not drive straight or you feel a pull through the steering wheel, stop the vehicle and check the following:
  - Tire condition. The tire may have separated from the wheel.
  - Tire inflation pressure. If tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) or below, this may indicate severe tire damage.

FarnaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ When performing an emergency repair

- Perform the emergency repair without removing the nail or screw that has punctured the tread of the tire. If the object that has punctured the tire is removed, repair by the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be possible.
- The kit is not waterproof. Make sure that the kit is not exposed to water, such as when it is being used in the rain.
- Do not put the kit directly onto dusty ground such as sand at the side of the road. If the kit vacuums up dust etc., a malfunction may occur.
- Use the kit with the top facing upward. The kit cannot work properly if it is laid on its side.

■ Handling the emergency tire puncture repair kit

- The compressor power source should be 12 V DC suitable for vehicle use. Do not connect the compressor to any other source.
- If gasoline splatters on the kit, the kit may deteriorate. Take care not to allow gasoline to contact it.
- Store the kit in its assigned place out of reach of children.
- Do not disassemble or modify the kit. Do not subject parts such as the air pressure indicator to impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 674)

FarmaSOS.com

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 207), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P. 207)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 80)

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 825)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 817)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 825)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

  Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever to P.
3. Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.
4. Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

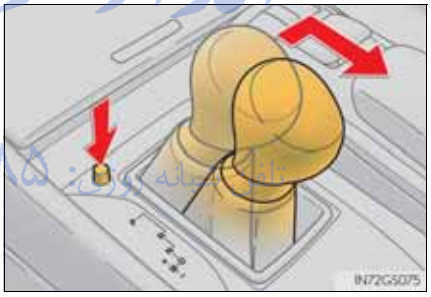
FarmaSOS.com

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Press the shift lock override button.

   The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



ایداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

In the event that the battery is discharged or switch operation does not release the parking brake, the parking brake can be released manually using the procedure below. This procedure should be performed only if necessary, such as in an emergency.
If the switch cannot be operated even when the battery is normal, the parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Before releasing the parking brake manually

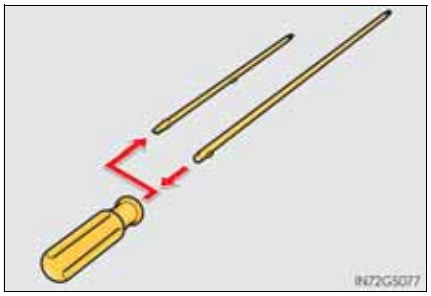
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Turn the engine switch off.
- Check that the parking brake indicator is off.
- Chock the tires.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Releasing the parking brake manually

1 Take out the parking brake release tool and the screwdriver from the trunk. (→P. 784, 799)

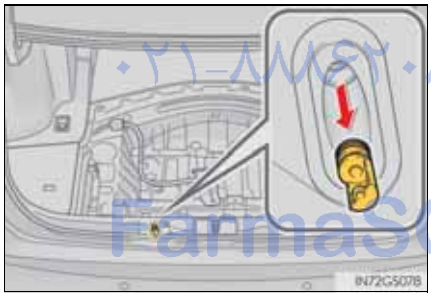
Fit the parking brake release tool into the screwdriver handle.

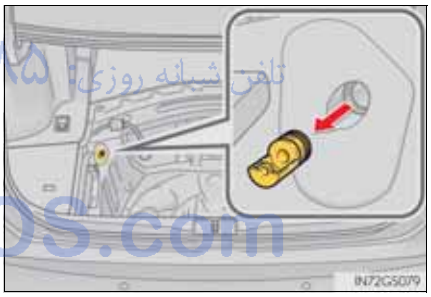


2 Vehicles with a spare tire: Take out the spare tire. (→P. 788)
Vehicles without a spare tire: Remove the center auxiliary box. (→P. 802)

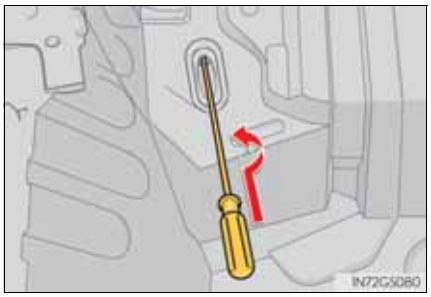
3 Remove the plug.

- ▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit
- ▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire





4 Insert the tool and press it down firmly while turning it counterclockwise until it stops.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Manual operation of the parking brake

The parking brake cannot be set manually.

CAUTION

■ When releasing the parking brake manually

- Shift the shift lever to P, turn the engine switch off and chock the tires. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move, resulting in an accident.
- Turn the engine switch off and check that the parking brake indicator is off. Failure to do so may cause the system to operate and turn the inserted parking brake release tool, resulting in an injury.

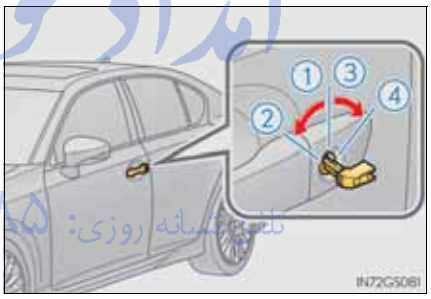
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 130) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk and key linked functions

■ Doors

Use the mechanical key (→P. 119) in order to perform the following operations:



① Locks all the doors

② Closes the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)*

③ Unlocks all the doors

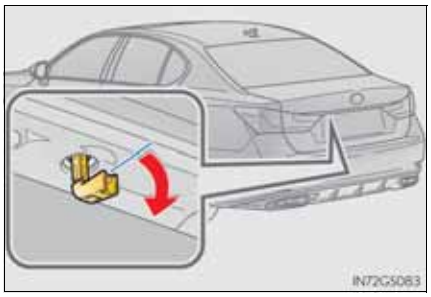
④ Opens the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)*

*: This setting must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmasOS.com

■ Trunk

Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open.



Starting the engine

1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch.



The engine switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that  is shown on the multi-information display.

4 Press the engine switch.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Stopping the engine

Shift the shift lever to P and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P. 697)

■ Alarm (if equipped)

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.
If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

■ Changing engine switch modes

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step 3 above.
The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed.(→P. 208)

■ When the electronic key does not work properly

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on.
(Customizable features →P. 855)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P. 129)

FarmaSOS.com

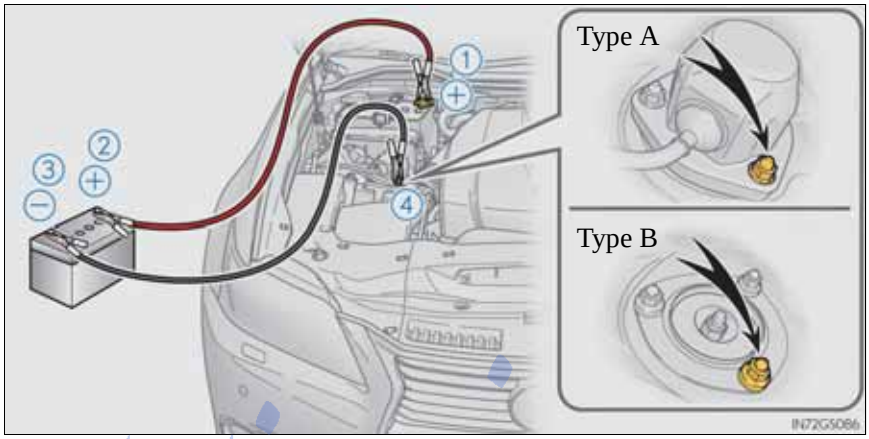
The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can also call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

1 Open the hood. (→P. 657)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

2 Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:



① Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.

② Connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

③ Connect a negative cable clamp to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

④ Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts, as shown in the illustration.

3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

4 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the engine switch off.

5 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

6 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ Charging the battery

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ When recharging or replacing the battery

- For vehicles with an alarm: make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery to prevent the doors from being locked with the key left inside the vehicle when the alarm operates.
- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off.
  If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the “+” terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or engine drive belt.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

2 Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:
Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:
Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

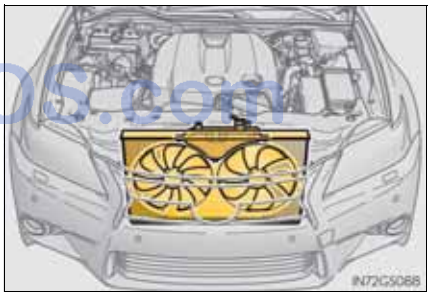
3 Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:
Wait until the temperature of the engine (shown on the instrument panel) begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fan is not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

4 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

If the engine compartment cover needs to be removed: →P. 661



FarmaSOS.com

5 Add engine coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 847)



Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ Overheating

If you observe the following, your vehicle may be overheating:

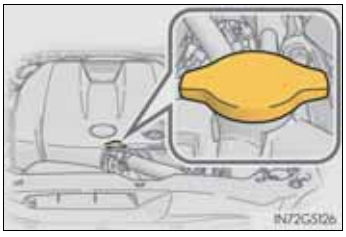
- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the fans, etc. while the engine is operating.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot.
  High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.



امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use commercially available coolant additives.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

2 Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the rear wheels.

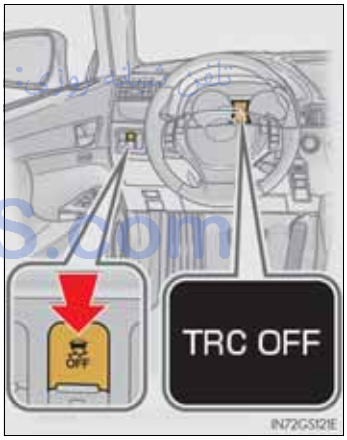
3 Place wood, stones or some other material under the rear wheels to help provide traction.

4 Restart the engine.

5 Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press  to turn off TRC.



امداد خودرو مارا
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the rear wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Vehicle specifications 8

8-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)..... 836
Fuel information 853
8-2. Customization
Customizable features..... 855
8-3. Items to initialize
Items to initialize 866

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weights

Overall length		4850mm (190.9 in.)
Overall width		1840 mm (72.4 in.)
Overall height*1	2WD	1455 mm (57.3 in.)
	AWD	1470 mm (57.9 in.)
Wheelbase		2850 mm (112.2 in.)
Tread*1	Front	1575 mm (62.0 in.)
	Rear	1590 mm (62.6 in.) 1560 mm (61.4 in.)*2
Gross vehicle mass	2WD	2170 kg (4784 lb.)
	AWD	2250 kg (4960 lb.)
Maximum permissible axle capacity	Front	1120 kg (2469 lb.)
	Rear	1205 kg (2657 lb.)
Drawbar load		80 kg (176 lb.)
Towing capacity	With brake	1600 kg (3527 lb.) 1000 kg (2205 lb.)*3
	Without brake	750 kg (1653 lb.)

*1: Unladen vehicle

*2: Vehicles with 265/35R19 tires

*3: AWD models

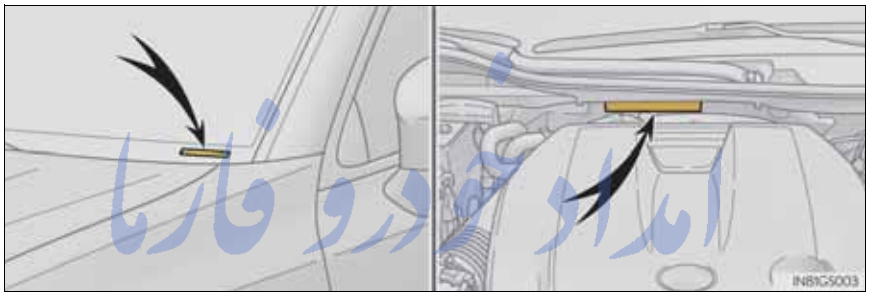
ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Vehicle identification

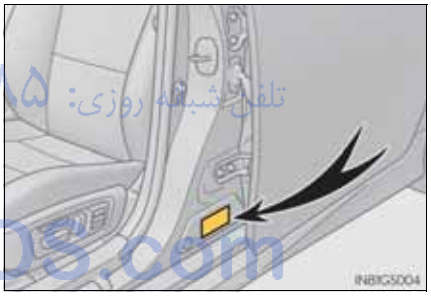
■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and in the engine compartment.



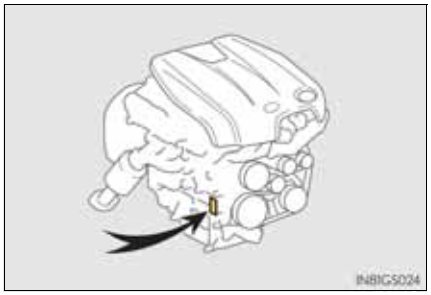
This number is also on the manufacturer's label.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



Engine

	GS250	GS350
Model	4GR-FSE	2GR-FSE
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline	
Bore and stroke	83.0 × 77.0 mm (3.27 × 3.03 in.)	94.0 × 83.0 mm (3.70 × 3.27 in.)
Displacement	2500 cm^3 (152.6 cu.in.)	3456 cm^3 (210.9 cu.in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment	
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment	

Fuel

Fuel type	EU area: Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only Except EU area: Premium unleaded gasoline only
Research Octane Number	95 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	66 L (17.4 gal., 14.5 Imp.gal.)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Lubrication system

	GS250	GS350
Oil capacity Drain and refill (Reference*) With filter Without filter	 6.3 L (6.7 qt., 5.5 Imp.qt.) 5.9 L (6.2 qt., 5.2 Imp.qt.)	 6.4 L (6.8 qt., 5.6 Imp.qt.) 6.0 L (6.3 qt., 5.3 Imp.qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection (GS250)

▶ EU area, Nordic countries, Russia, Ukraine, Croatia, Macedonia, Israel

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Lexus recommends the use of approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil". Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving" or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

15W-40 and 20W-50:
API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

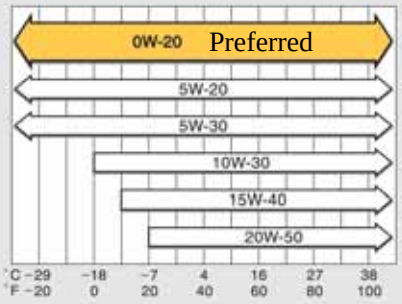
ایراد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy, and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 or lower viscosity engine oil is recommended.



Temperature range anticipated before next oil change.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



① API Service Symbol

Top portion: The oil quality designation by API (American Petroleum Institute) (SN)

Center portion: The SAE viscosity grade (SAE 0W-20)

Lower portion: “Resource-Conserving” means that the oil has fuel saving and environmental protection capabilities.

② ILSAC Certification Mark

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۷۸۸۶۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Except EU area, Nordic countries, Russia, Ukraine, Croatia, Macedonia, Israel

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is used in your Lexus vehicle. Lexus recommends the use of approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil”. Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

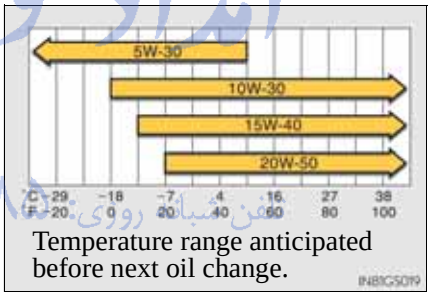
Oil grade:

5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL “Energy-Conserving”, SM “Energy-Conserving”, SN “Resource-Conserving” or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

15W-40 and 20W-50:
API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



Temperature range anticipated before next oil change.

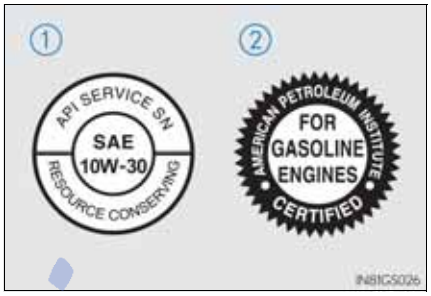
Oil viscosity (10W-30 is explained here as an example):

- The 10W in 10W-30 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 30 in 10W-30 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

امداد خودرو فارس
FarmaSOS.com

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



① API Service Symbol

Top portion: The oil quality designation by API (American Petroleum Institute) (SN)

Center portion: The SAE viscosity grade (SAE 10W-30)

Lower portion: “Resource-Conserving” means that the oil has fuel saving and environmental protection capabilities.

② ILSAC Certification Mark

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Engine oil selection (GS350)

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is used in your Lexus vehicle. Lexus recommends the use of approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil”. Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL “Energy-Conserving”, SM “Energy-Conserving”, SN “Resource-Conserving” or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

15W-40 and 20W-50:
API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

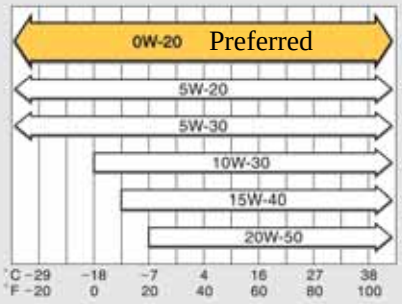
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 or lower viscosity engine oil is recommended.



Temperature range anticipated before next oil change.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



① API Service Symbol

Top portion: The oil quality designation by API (American Petroleum Institute) (SN)

Center portion: The SAE viscosity grade (SAE 0W-20)

Lower portion: “Resource-Conserving” means that the oil has fuel saving and environmental protection capabilities.

② ILSAC Certification Mark

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

امداد خودرو فاریا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Cooling system

	GS250		GS350
	Left-hand drive vehicles	Right-hand drive vehicles	
Capacity	10.9 L (11.5 qt., 9.6 Imp.qt.)	11.0 L (11.6 qt., 9.7 Imp.qt.)	9.7 L (10.3 qt., 8.5 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following: • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.		

Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	DENSO FK20HBR11
Gap	1.1 mm (0.043 in.)

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۰ تلفن شبانه روزی

NOTICE

■ Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

FarmaSOS.com

Electrical system

Battery	
Open voltage at 20 °C (68 °F):	12.6— 12.8 V Fully charged 12.2— 12.4 V Half charged 11.8— 12.0 V Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the engine and all lights are turned off.)
Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.250 — 1.290 Fully charged 1.160 — 1.200 Half charged 1.060 — 1.100 Discharged
Charging rates	
Quick charge Slow charge	15 A max. 5 A max.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity*	GS250	7.5 L (7.9 qt., 6.6 Imp.qt.)
	GS350	10.0 L (10.6 qt., 8.8 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ Automatic transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Front differential (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.70 L (0.74 qt., 0.62 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Hypoid gear oil API GL-5 Above -18°C (0°F): SAE90 Below -18°C (0°F): SAE80W or SAE80W-90

Rear differential

Oil capacity	GS250	1.15 L (1.22 qt., 1.01 Imp.qt.)
	GS350	1.35 L (1.43 qt., 1.19 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity		Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Oil” at the factory.
Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
Farma808.com

Brakes

Pedal clearance*	2WD	115 mm (4.5 in.) Min.
	AWD	126 mm (5.0 in.) Min.
Pedal free play		1.0 — 2.0 mm (0.04 — 0.08 in.)
Fluid type		SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

*: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 500 N (51.0 kgf, 112.4 lbf) while the engine is operating.

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Tires and wheels

▶ Type A

Tire size	225/50R17 94W		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 210 km/h (132 mph)	270 (2.7, 39)* 250 (2.5, 36)	290 (2.9, 42)* 250 (2.5, 36)
	From 160 km/h (100 mph) to 210 km/h (132 mph)	230 (2.3, 33)	240 (2.4, 35)* 230 (2.3, 33)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less		230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	17 × 7 1/2J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

*: 5 passengers and full loaded

▶ Type B

Tire size	235/45R18 94Y		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 210 km/h (132 mph)	230 (2.3, 33)	250 (2.5, 36)* 230 (2.3, 33)
	From 160 km/h (100 mph) to 210 km/h (132 mph)		230 (2.3, 33)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less		

امداد خودرو پارسا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Wheel size	18 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

*: 5 passengers and full loaded

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

▶ Type C

Tire size	235/40R19 96Y XL, 265/35R19 94Y		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 210 km/h (132 mph)	250 (2.5, 36)* 240 (2.4, 35)	250 (2.5, 36)
	From 160 km/h (100 mph) to 210 km/h (132 mph)	240 (2.4, 35)	
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less		
Wheel size	19 × 8J (235/40R19), 19 × 9J (265/35R19)		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

*: 5 passengers and full loaded

▶ Compact spare tire

Tire size	T155/70D17 110M, T145/70D18 107M
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)
Wheel size	17 × 4T (T155/70D17), 18 × 4T (T145/70D18)
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

■ When towing a trailer

Add 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) to the recommended tire inflation pressure and drive at speeds below 100 km/h (62 mph).

ایراد خودرو فارسا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsaSOS.com

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights	35	A
	Front fog lights*	55	B
	Front turn signal lights	21	C
	Rear turn signal lights	21	D
	Back-up light	16	D
	Outer foot lights	5	D
Interior	Door courtesy lights	5	D
	Vanity lights	8	D
	Trunk light	3.8	C

A: D4S discharge bulbs

B: H11 halogen bulbs

C: Wedge base bulbs (amber)

D: Wedge base bulbs (clear)

*: If equipped

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

EU area:
Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228.
For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.

Except EU area:
Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.
For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

ایراد خودرو ما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

NOTICE

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly.
- Gasoline engine (EU area): Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. The use of these fuels will damage the vehicle’s fuel system. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Gasoline engine (except EU area): Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. Your vehicle can use gasoline mixed with 10% max ethanol. The use of fuel with more than 10% ethanol content (E10) will damage the vehicle’s fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. These preferences can be changed by using the “DISP” button, by using the Remote Touch, or at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Customizing vehicle features

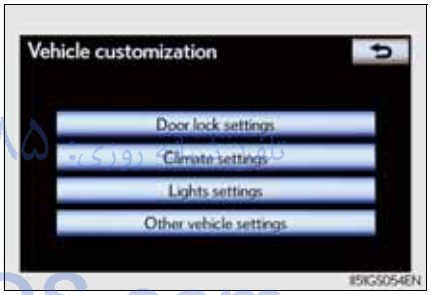
■ Changing by using the Remote Touch

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system:

1 “Vehicle settings” screen displayed on the Remote Touch screen. (→P. 382)

2 Select “Vehicle customization” on the “Vehicle settings” screen.

“Vehicle customization” screen will appear.



3 Choose a category displayed on the screen to display the settings.

4 Select the setting to be changed. Change each setting.

For items that can be enabled/disabled, and for items with an operating time that can be changed, select “On” or “Off”, or select the desired operating time.

For items with sensor sensitivity that can be changed, select “+” or “-” to choose the desired level, then select “OK”.

5 A message indicating that the settings are being saved will appear. Do not perform any other operations while this message is displayed.

FarmaSOS.com

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system:

→Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

■ Changing by using the “DISP” button

→P. 107

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

① Settings that can be changed using the Remote Touch

② Settings that can be changed using the “DISP” button

③ Settings that can be changed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

Definition of symbols: O = Available, —=Not available

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Alarm*1 (→P. 86)	Sensitivity adjustment of the intrusion sensor when the window is open	Standard	Low	—	—	O
	Deactivates the alarm when the doors are unlocked using the mechanical key	Off	On	—	—	O

FarmaSOS.com

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Multi-information display (→P. 102)	“Language”*2	“American English” (American English)	"Français" (French)	—	O	—
			"Deutsch" (German)			
			"Español" (Spanish)			
			"Italiano" (Italian)			
			"русский" (Russian)			
	“Units”*2	“km (L/100km)”	“km (km/L)”	—	O	—
			“miles (MPG)”*3			
	“ECO lamp”	“ON (Self-lighting)”	“OFF”	—	O	—
			“ON (Always)”			
	“Drive monitor”	“Outside”	“Fuel consumption”	—	O	—
			“Cruising range”			
	“Lamp brightness”	“Standard”	“Bright”	—	O	—
	“SPORT lamp”	“ON”	“OFF”	—	O	—
	“Default settings”	“OFF”	“ON”	—	O	—

امداد خودرو فارما
۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Door lock (→P. 146, 822)	“Unlock on second key turn” (Allows all doors to be unlocked by turning the mechanical key once in the driver’s door)	Off (All doors unlocked in one step)	On (Driver’s door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps)	O	—	O
	“Auto unlock by shift to P” (All doors are automatically unlocked when shifting the shift lever to P)	Off	On	O	—	O
	“Auto unlock by driver door” (All doors are automatically unlocked when driver’s door is opened)	On	Off	O	—	O
Smart entry & start system (→P. 123) and wireless remote control (→P. 141)	“Lock/unlock feedback lights” (Enable/disable the operation of the emergency flashers when the vehicle is locked or unlocked)	On	Off	O	—	O
	“Auto relock timer” (Adjust the time elapsed before the automatic door lock function is activated if a door is not opened after being unlocked)	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
			120 seconds			
	Open door reminder buzzer (When locking the vehicle)	On	Off	—	—	O

امداد خودرو پارسا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۷۷۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Smart entry & start system (→P. 123)	“Entry and start system” (Smart entry & start system can be disabled)	On	Off	O	—	O
	“Select doors to unlock” (The doors that are unlocked using the smart entry & start system can be selected)	All the doors	Driver’s door	O	—	O
Wireless remote control (→P. 141)	Wireless remote control	On	Off	—	—	O
	“Remote 2-press unlock” (Allows all doors to be unlocked by pressing on the electronic key once)	Off (All doors unlocked in one step)	On (Driver’s door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps)	O	—	O
	Trunk unlocking operation	Press and hold (short)	One short press	—	—	O
			Push twice			
			Press and hold (long)			
			Off			

ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن پشتیبانی روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Front seats (→P. 157)	"Driver's seat easy exit" (Driver's seat movement when exiting the	Standard	Off / Partial	O	—	O
	Selecting the door linking driving position memory with door unlock operation	Driver's door	All doors	—	—	O
Outside rear view mirrors (→P. 174)	Automatic mirror folding and extending operation*1	Linked to the locking/ unlocking of the doors	Off / Linked to operation of the engine switch	—	—	O
Power windows (→P. 178) and moon roof*1 (→P. 181)	Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	—	—	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On	—	—	O
	Buzzer sounds if operated using wireless remote control	On	Off	—	—	O

FarmaSOS.com

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Turn signal lever (→P. 223)	The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change (After flashing the turn signal lights when turning left or right while this function is off and the turn signal lever is moved to the first position in direction of the flashing light, the turn signal lights can be selected to be flashing or off.)	3	5	—	—	O
			7			
			Off (the turn signal lights keep flashing if the turn signal lever is moved to the first position in direction of flashing light)			
			Off (the turn signal lights will be off if the turn signal lever is moved to the first position in direction of flashing light)			

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۷۷۶۵۳۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Automatic light control system (→P. 228)	“Light sensor sensitivity” (Adjust the sensitivity of the ambient light sensor)	Standard	-2 to 2	O	—	O
	“Follow me home” (Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off)	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
			90 seconds			
			120 seconds			
	Welcome light illumination control	On	Off	—	—	O
Lexus parking assist-sensor*1 (→P. 284)	“Distance (Front)” (Detection distance of the front center sensor)	Far	Near	O	—	O
	“Distance (Rear)” (Detection distance of the rear center sensor)	Far	Near	O	—	O
	“Alert volume” (Alert volume can be adjusted)	3	1 to 5	O	—	O
	“Display” (when Lexus parking assist-sensor is operating)	All sensors displayed	Display off	O	—	O

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FamaSOS.com

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 409)	“Efficient ventilation mode” (Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to “AUTO” switch operation)	On	Off	O	—	O
	“Auto A/C mode” (A/C Auto switch operation)	On	Off	O	—	O
	“Smog sensor sensitivity” (Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity)	Standard	-3 to 3	O	—	O
Illumination (→P. 611)	Interior lights illumination control	On	Off	—	—	O
	“Interior lights off timer” (Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off)	15 seconds	7.5 seconds	O	—	O
			30 seconds			
	Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	—	—	O
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	—	—	O
	Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	—	—	O
	Footwell lighting	On	Off	—	—	O
	Outer foot lights	On	Off	—	—	O

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Illumination (→P. 611)	"Exterior lights off timer" (Time elapsed before the outer foot lights turn off)	15 seconds	Off	O	—	O
			7.5 seconds			
			30 seconds			
	Enable/disable operation of the outer foot lights when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	—	—	O
	Enable/disable operation of the outer foot lights when the doors are unlocked with the power door lock switch	On	Off	—	—	O
Rear sunshade*1 (→P. 636)	Reverse operation	On	Off	—	—	O
	Time elapsed before the reverse operation feature activates	0.7 seconds	0 second	—	—	O
			0.9 seconds			
			1.2 seconds			

*1: If equipped

*2: The default setting varies according to countries.

*3: Right-hand drive vehicles

امداد خودرو ما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

■ Vehicle customization

- When the smart entry & start system is off, the “Select doors to unlock” cannot be customized.
- When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the “Auto relock timer” activates, the signals will be generated in accordance with the “Lock/unlock feedback lights” settings.

■ When customizing using the Remote Touch

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Also, to prevent battery discharge, leave the engine running while customizing the features.

⚠ CAUTION

■ During customization

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Items to initialize

The following item must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Tire pressure warning system*	• When rotating the tires • When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.	P. 675

*: If equipped

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Index

What to do if...
(Troubleshooting)..... 868
Alphabetical index..... 876

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual” for information regarding the navigation system.

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 120)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately. (→P. 122)

FarmaSOS.com



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P. 697)
- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?
  When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P. 208)
- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?
  When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.
- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P. 130)



The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?
  The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P. 147)



The trunk lid is closed with the electronic key left inside

- The function to prevent the electronic key from being left inside the trunk will operate and you can open the trunk as usual. Take the key out from the trunk. (→P. 124)

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

If you think something is wrong



The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P. 207)
- Is the shift lever in P? (→P. 211)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle?
  (→P. 126)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P. 212)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?
  In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way.
  (→P. 823)
- Is the battery discharged? (→P. 825)

امداد خودرو فارنا
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarnaSOS.com



The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?

  If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode
  (→P. 818)



The steering wheel cannot be turned after the engine is stopped

- It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P. 211)



The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?
  The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P. 178)



The engine switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P. 211)

FarmasOS.com



A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

  Are the driver and the front passenger wearing the seat belts?
  (→P. 752)

- The parking brake indicator is on

  Is the parking brake released? (→P. 225)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P. 749, 757)



An alarm is activated and the horn sounds (if equipped)

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door or anything move inside the vehicle during setting the alarm?
  The sensor detects them and the alarm sounds. (→P. 86)

To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode or start the engine.

FarmaSOS.com



A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle or the moon roof opened?
  Check the message on the multi-information display.
  (→P. 757)



A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P. 749, 757.

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

- Vehicles with a spare tire
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P. 783)
- Vehicles without a spare tire
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and repair the flat tire temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P. 798)



The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P. 833)

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Alphabetical index

A

A/C 409
Air conditioning filter.....695
Front automatic air conditioning system 409
Rear air conditioning system425
S-FLOW mode 419
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System).333
Function.....333
Warning light.....750
Warning message.....761
Adaptive Front-lighting System (AFS) 230
Adaptive Variable Suspension system (AVS).....334
AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) 230
Air conditioning filter 695
Air conditioning system 409
Air conditioning filter.....695
Front automatic air conditioning system 409
Rear air conditioning system425
S-FLOW mode 419
Airbags 44
Airbag manual on-off system 56
Airbag operating conditions .. 51
Airbag precautions for your child 47
Airbag warning light..... 750
Correct driving posture..... 36
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 51
Curtain shield airbag precautions 49
General airbag precautions 47
Locations of airbags..... 44
Modification and disposal of airbags 50
Side airbag operating conditions 51
Side airbag precautions..... 47
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions 51
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions 47
SRS airbags..... 44
Airbag manual on-off system 56
Alarm..... 86
Alarm 86
Warning buzzer..... 749, 757
Anchor brackets..... 69
Antennas (smart entry & start system) 125

امداد خودرو فارس
FarsiaSOS.com

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).333
Function.....333
Warning light.....750
Warning message.....761
Approach warning (dynamic radar cruise control).....264
Armrest.....635
Armrest door 639
Ashtrays.....626
Assist grip.....641
Audio input.....536
Audio system.....432
Audio input.....536
AUX port/ USB port 536, 512, 524
Bluetooth® audio.....498
CD/DVD player.....467
CD/DVD player information488
DVD video 475
iPod.....522
MP3/WMA disc 469
Optimal use.....533
Portable music player 536
Radio 458
Rear seat audio controls.....537
Steering wheel audio switch.543
USB memory.....510
Automatic headlight leveling system 231
Automatic High Beam 233
Automatic light control system 228
Automatic transmission..... 215
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P..... 818
M mode..... 219
Paddle shift switches 218
AUX port..... 536
Auxiliary boxes 620
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension system)..... 334

B

Back-up light
Replacing light bulb..... 729
Wattage..... 853
Battery 667
Battery checking..... 667
If the vehicle has discharged battery..... 825
Preparing and checking before winter 359
Warning light..... 750
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) 354
Bluetooth®
Audio system 498
Hands-free system (for cellular phone)..... 542
Brake
Fluid..... 849
Parking brake..... 225
Warning light..... 749, 751
Warning message..... 757

FarmaSOS.com

Brake assist 333
Break-in tips 189
Brightness control
Instrument panel light control 100
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 354

C

Card key 118
Care 644, 648
Aluminum wheels.....645
Exterior.....644
Interior.....648
Seat belts.....649
Cargo hooks 621
CD player 467
Chains.....361
Child restraint system.....59
Baby seats, definition.....59
Baby seats, installation.....70
Child seats, definition.....59
Child seats, installation.....70
Installing CRS with ISOFIX rigid anchors.....73
Installing CRS with seat belts 70
Installing CRS with top strap .74
Junior seats, definition.....59
Junior seats, installation 72
Child safety..... 58
Airbag precautions..... 47
Battery precautions..... 670, 828
Child restraint system 59
How your child should wear the seat belt..... 39, 41
Installing child restraints 69
Moon roof precautions..... 184
Power window lock switch.. 178
Power window precautions.. 180
Rear door child-protectors... 147
Removed electronic key battery precautions 699
Seat belt comfort guide..... 39
Seat belt precautions..... 43
Seat heater precautions 630
Trunk precautions 153
Child-protectors 147
Cleaning..... 644, 648
Aluminum wheels..... 645
Exterior 644
Interior 648
Seat belts..... 649
Clock 625
Coat hooks..... 640
Condenser 667
Console box..... 617
Console box light..... 617
Cooling system..... 665
Engine overheating..... 830

FarmaSOS.com

Cruise control
Cruise control 254
Dynamic radar cruise control 258
Cup holders 618
Curtain shield airbags 45
Customizable features 856

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast)463
Daytime running light system ..231
Defogger
Front windshield.....416
Outside rear view mirrors.....430
Rear window.....430
Differential
Front differential.....849
Rear differential.....849
Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB)463
Dimension 836
Display
Dynamic radar cruise control 258
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist).278
Multi-information display 102
Remote Touch screen 370
Trip information 104
Warning message.....757
Do-it-yourself maintenance.....654
Door courtesy lights
Location.....611
Wattage.....853
Door lock
Doors 146
Smart entry & start system .. 123
Wireless remote control..... 141
Doors 146
Automatic door locking and unlocking system..... 148
Door glasses..... 178
Door lock 146
Open door warning buzzer .. 127
Open door warning light..... 752
Outside rear view mirrors.... 174
Rear door child-protector 147
Driver’s seat position memory . 162
Driving..... 186
Break-in tips 189
Correct posture 36
Driving mode select switch . 328
Procedures 186
Winter drive tips 359
Dynamic radar cruise control ... 258
Function..... 258
Warning message..... 760, 766
DVD player 467, 475

FarmaSOS.com

E

Eco drive mode 328
Eco Driving Indicator.....109, 114
Electric Power Steering (EPS) ..334
Function.....334
Warning light.....751
Warning message.....762
Electronic key.....118
Battery-saving function 129
If the electronic key does not operate properly 822
Replacing the battery.....697
Emergency, in case of
If the battery is discharged ...825
If the electronic key does not operate properly 822
If the engine will not start.....816
If the parking brake cannot be released.....819
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....818
If the warning buzzer sounds749
If the warning light turns on .749
If the warning message is displayed 757
If you have a flat tire 783, 798
If you think something is wrong.....747
If your vehicle becomes stuck 833
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....739
If your vehicle needs to be towed 740
If your vehicle overheats 830
Emergency brake signal 334
Emergency flashers 738
Emergency tire puncture repair kit 798
Engine..... 838
Accessory mode..... 208
Compartment 660
Engine switch 207
Hood 657
How to start the engine..... 207
Identification number 837
If the engine will not start.... 816
Ignition switch (engine switch)..... 207
Overheating 830
Engine compartment cover..... 661
Engine coolant..... 665
Capacity 847
Checking..... 665
Preparing and checking before winter 359
Engine coolant temperature gauge 99
Engine immobilizer system..... 80
Engine oil 662
Capacity 839
Checking..... 662
Oil level warning message... 766
Oil pressure warning message 758
Preparing and checking before winter 359

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Engine switch 207
EPS (Electric Power Steering) ..334
Function 334
Warning light 751
Warning message 762

F

First-aid kit storage net 621
Flat tire
Vehicles with a spare tire 783
Vehicles without a spare tire 798
Floor mats 34
Fluid
Automatic transmission 848
Brake 849
Washer 671
Fog lights 239
Replacing light bulbs 724, 735
Switch 239
Wattage 853
Follow me home system 229
Footwell light 611
Front air conditioning system 409
Front fog lights 239
Replacing light bulbs 724
Switch 239
Wattage 853
Front personal lights 612
Front position lights 228
Light switch 228
Replacing light bulbs 735
Welcome light illumination control 123
Front seats 157
Adjustment 157
Cleaning 648
Correct driving posture 36
Driving position memory 162
Head restraints 168
Power easy access system 166
Seat heaters 631
Seat position memory 162
Seat ventilators 632
Front turn signal lights 223
Replacing light bulbs 726
Turn signal lever 223
Wattage 853
Fuel 249
Capacity 838
Fuel gauge 99
Fuel pump shut off system ... 748
Information 854
Refueling 249
Type 249, 838
Warning light 752
Warning messages 769
Fuel filler door 249
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 252
Refueling 249
Fuel pump shut off system 748
Fuses 700

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۳۶۲۰۱۱
FarmaSOS.com

G

Gauges.....99
Glove box 616
Glove box light.....616

H

Hands-free system
(for cellular phone) 542
Head restraints.....168
Headlights 228
Adaptive Front-lighting
System (AFS).....230
Automatic High Beam
system.....233
Discharge headlights
precautions 737
Follow me home system.....229
Headlight leveling warning
message 760
Light switch.....228
Replacing light bulbs.....735
Wattage.....853
Headlight cleaner.....248
Head-up display 112
Heaters.....409
Air conditioning system 409
Heated steering wheel.....629
Outside rear view mirrors.....430
Seat heaters.....631
Hill-start assist control 341
Hood 657
Open..... 657
Warning message..... 763
Hooks
Cargo hooks..... 621
Coat hooks 640
Retaining hooks (floor mat)... 34
Luggage hook 621
Utility hook..... 642
Horn..... 228

I

Identification 837
Engine..... 837
Vehicle..... 837
Ignition switch (engine switch) 207
Illuminated entry system 613
Immobilizer system 80
Indicators..... 96
Initialization
Moon roof 183
Power windows..... 179
Tire pressure warning
system..... 675
Initiators (tire pressure warning
system) 688
Inside door handle lights 611
Inside rear view mirror 171
Instrument panel light control .. 100
Interior lights 611
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor... 89
ISOFIX rigid anchors 69

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

J

Jack
Positioning the jack 658
Vehicle-equipped jack..784, 799
Jack handle 784, 799
Jam protection function
Moon roof 182
Power trunk lid 153
Power window 179

K

Keyless entry 123
Smart entry & start system ...123
Wireless remote control.....141
Keys.....118
Battery-saving function 129
Electronic key 118
Engine switch 207
If the electronic key does not operate properly 822
Key number plate 118
Keyless entry 123, 141
Mechanical key.....119
Replacing the battery.....697
Warning buzzer 127
Wireless remote control key.141
Knee airbags.....44

L

Language (multi-information display)..... 107
Lever
Auxiliary catch lever 657
Hood lock release lever 657
Shift lever 215
Turn signal lever..... 223
Wiper lever 241
Lexus parking assist monitor.... 297
Lexus parking assist-sensor..... 284
Function..... 284
Warning message..... 760, 766
License plate lights..... 228
Light switch 228
Replacing light bulbs..... 735
Welcome light illumination control 123
Light bulbs
Replacing..... 724
Wattage..... 853

FarmaSOS.com

Lights
Automatic High Beam system.....233
Fog light switch.....239
Follow me home system.....229
Headlight switch.....228
Illuminated entry system 613
Interior light.....612
Interior lights list 611
Personal lights 612
Replacing light bulbs.....724
Trunk light.....152
Turn signal lever.....223
Vanity lights 624
Wattage.....853
Welcome light illumination control 123
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 274
Operation 276
Warning messages.....760, 767
Lock steering column.....211
Low profile tire 678
Luggage hook.....621
Luggage security system.....151

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance . 654
Maintenance data..... 836
Maintenance requirements... 651
Malfunction indicator lamp..... 750
Master warning light 752
Meter 99
Head-up display..... 112
Indicators 96
Instrument panel light control.... 100
Meters 99
Multi-information display.... 102
Warning lights 95
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 171
Outside rear view mirror defoggers..... 430
Outside rear view mirrors.... 174
Vanity mirrors..... 624
Moon roof..... 181
Door lock linked moon roof operation..... 182
Jam protection function 182
Operation 181
Warning message..... 764
MP3 disc..... 469
Multi-information display 102
Dynamic radar cruise control 258
Lane-Keeping Assist..... 278
Language 107
Switching the display..... 104
Trip information 104
Warning message..... 757

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

N

"nanoe" system.....423
Navigation system*

O

Odometer.....99
Oil
Engine oil 839
Front differential oil 849
Rear differential oil.....849
Opener
Hood 657
Trunk 150
Outer foot lights
Location.....611
Replacing light bulbs.....731
Wattage.....853
Outside rear view mirrors.....174
Adjusting and folding.....174
BSM (Blind Sport Monitor) .354
Linked mirror function when reversing 176
Mirror position memory 162
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 430
Outside temperature display.....104
Overheating, Engine.....830

P

Paddle shift switches 218
Parking assist sensors 284
Parking brake..... 225
If the parking brake cannot be released..... 819
Operation 225
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer 765
Parking brake engaged warning message 765
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)..... 343
Function..... 343
PCS OFF switch 344
Warning light..... 751
Warning message. 759, 767, 774
Personal lights 612
Pollen removal mode..... 419
Power easy access system 166
Power outlets 627
Power steering 334
Warning light..... 751
Warning message..... 762
Power trunk lid 150
Power windows 178
Door lock linked window operation..... 180
Jam protection function 179
Operation 178
Window lock switch 178

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

FarmaSOS.com

Pre-Crash Safety system (PCS).343
Function.....343
PCS OFF switch.....344
Warning light.....751
Warning message..759, 767, 774

R

Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control).....258
Radiator.....667
Radio.....458
Radio Data System (RDS).....463
Rear air conditioning system.....425
Rear door sunshades.....636
Rear fog light.....239
Replacing light bulb.....735
Switch.....239
Rear personal lights.....612
Rear seat heaters.....632
Rear sunshade.....636
Operation.....636
Reverse operation feature.....637
Rear turn signal lights.....223
Replacing light bulbs.....728
Turn signal lever.....223
Wattage.....853
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror.....171
Outside rear view mirrors.....174
Rear view monitor system.....297
Rear window defogger.....430
Refueling.....249
Capacity.....838
Fuel types.....838
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened.....252
Opening the fuel tank cap.....251
Remote Touch.....368
Remote Touch screen.....370
Replacing
Electronic key battery.....697
Fuses.....700
Light bulbs.....722
Tires.....783

S

Seat belt reminder light.....752
Seat belts.....38
Adjusting the seat belt.....39
Child restraint system installation.....70
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt.....649
Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR).....41
How to wear your seat belt.....38
How your child should wear the seat belt.....41
Pre-crash seat belts.....40
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use.....42
Reminder light and buzzer.....752
Seat belt pretensioners.....40
SRS warning light.....750

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۳۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Seat heaters.....631
Seat position memory.....162
Seat ventilators.....632
Seats 157
Adjustment 157
Adjustment precautions.....159
Child seats/child restraint system installation.....69
Cleaning.....648
Driving position memory 162
Head restraints.....168
Power easy access system 166
Properly sitting in the seat.....36
Seat heaters.....631
Seat position memory.....162
Seat ventilators 632
Sensor
Automatic headlight system .231
Automatic High Beam system.... 238
Driver monitor sensor.....345
Humidity sensor 421
Inside rear view mirror 172
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor... 89
Lexus parking assist-sensor..284
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist).274
Radar sensor 267, 345, 361
Rain-sensing windshield wipers.....246
S-FLOW mode.....419
Shift lever 215
Automatic transmission 215
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P..... 818
Shift lever light..... 611
Shift lock system 818
Side airbags 45
Side mirrors 174
Adjusting and folding 174
BSM (Blind spot monitor)... 354
Linked mirror function when reversing..... 176
Mirror position memory 162
Side turn signal lights..... 223
Replacing light bulbs..... 735
Turn signal lever..... 223
Smart entry & start system 123
Antenna location..... 125
Entry functions..... 123
Starting the engine..... 207
Warning message..... 762
Snow mode..... 217
Snow tires..... 363
Spare tire..... 783
Inflation pressure 852
Storage location 784
Spark plug..... 847
Specifications 836
Speech command system 402
Speedometer 99
Sport mode 328

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Steering lock.....211
Column lock release 212
Steering lock system warning message 781
Steering wheel 170
Adjustment 170
Audio switches 543
Heated steering wheel.....629
Power easy access system 166
Steering wheel position memory 162
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal 334
Replacing light bulbs.....735
Storage feature.....614
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck.833
Sun visors 624
Sun shade
Rear 636
Rear door 637
Roof 182
Switches
AFS OFF switch.....230
Audio remote control switches.....543
Automatic High Beam switch 233
BSM (Blind spot monitor) switch 354
Cruise control switch.....254
“DISP” button.....104
Door lock switches 146
Driving mode select switch ..328
Driving position memory switches 162
Dynamic radar cruise control switch 258
Emergency flashers switch .. 738
Engine switch 207
Fog light switch 239
Headlight cleaner switch 248
Heated steering wheel switch 629
HUD (Head-up display) switches 112
Ignition switch 207
Lexus parking assist-sensor switch 285
Light switches..... 228
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch 276
Moon roof switches 181
Outside rear view mirror switches 174
Paddle shift switches 218
PCS OFF switch 344
Power door lock switch 146
Power window switches 178
Rear sunshade switch..... 636
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch 430
Seat heater switches..... 631
Seat ventilator switches 632
Snow mode switch..... 217
Talk switch 402, 567
Telephone switches..... 543
Tilt and telescopic steering control switch 170

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Tire pressure warning reset switch 675
Trunk closer switch 151
Trunk opener switch 150
Trunk opener main switch 151
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button 261
VSC OFF switch 335
Window lock switch 178
Windshield wipers and washer switch 241

T

Tachometer 99, 114
Tail lights 228
Light switch 228
Replacing light bulbs 735
Welcome light illumination control 123
Talk switch 402, 567
Telephone switches 543
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 86
Double locking system 85
Engine immobilizer system 80
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor ... 89
Tire inflation pressure 691
Maintenance data 850
Tire inflation pressure display function 106
Warning light 753
Warning message 772, 772
Tire pressure warning system ... 674
Function 674
Initializing 675
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters 674
Registering ID codes 676
Tire pressure warning reset switch 675
Warning light 753
Warning message 772, 772
Tires 672
Chains 361
Checking 672
Emergency tire puncture repair kit 798
If you have a flat tire.... 783, 798
Inflation pressure 850
Replacing 783
Rotating tires 673
Size 850
Snow tires 363
Spare tire 783
Tire inflation pressure display function 106
Tire pressure warning system 674
Warning light 753
Warning message 772
Tools 784, 799
Top strap 74

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Towing 740
Emergency towing.....740
Towing capacity 836
Towing eyelet.....742
Trailer towing.....199
Traction Control (TRC).....333
Trailer towing.....199
Transmission 215
Automatic transmission.....215
Driving mode select switch ..328
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....818
M mode.....219
Paddle shift switches 218
TRC (Traction Control).....333
Trip information 104
Trip meters 99
Trunk.....150
Jam protection function.....156
Luggage security system 151
Open trunk warning message.....764
Power trunk lid 150
Smart entry & start system ...124
Trunk closer switch 151
Trunk easy closer.....152
Trunk features.....621
Trunk handle.....152
Trunk light.....152
Trunk opener main switch....151
Trunk opener switch.....150
Trunk storage extension 639
Wireless remote control.....141
Trunk light..... 152
Trunk light..... 152
Wattage..... 853
Turn signal lights..... 223
Replacing light bulbs... 726, 728
Turn signal lever..... 223
Wattage..... 853

U

USB port..... 512, 524
Utility hook..... 642

V

Vanity lights 624
Vanity lights 624
Wattage..... 853
Vanity mirrors 624
VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) 334
Vehicle identification number .. 837
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 333
Ventilators (seat ventilators) 632
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)..... 333

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۳۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

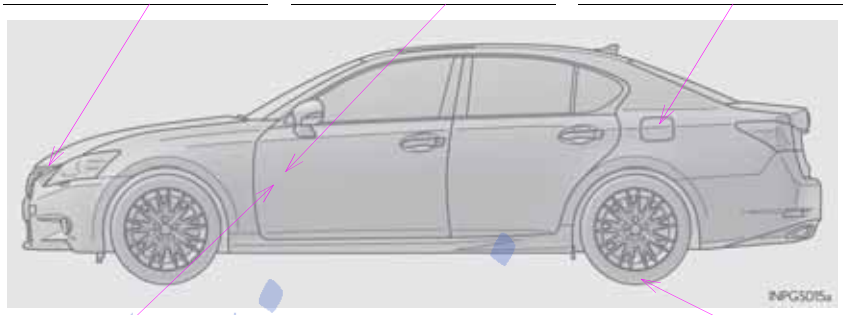
W

Warning buzzers
Approach warning 264
Brake system 749
Downshifting 221
Key reminder 777
Lexus parking assist-sensor..284
No-handed driving warning..279
Open door 763
Open hood 763
Open moon roof.....764
Open trunk 764
Open window 764
Pre-crash braking.....343
Seat belt reminder.....752
Warning lights 95
ABS 750
AFS OFF indicator 751
Brake system 749, 751
Charging system 750
Electric power steering system.....751
Low fuel level.....752
Malfunction indicator lamp ..750
Master warning light 752
Open door 752
Parking brake indicator.....751
Pre-Crash Safety system.....751
Seat belt reminder light 752
Slip indicator 751
SRS 750
Tire pressure warning light...753
Warning messages..... 757
Warning reflector storage belt.. 623
Washer..... 241
Checking..... 671
Low washer fluid warning message 771
Preparing and checking before winter 359
Switch 241
Washing and waxing 644
Weight 836
Welcome light illumination control 123
Wheels 693
Replacing 693
Size 850
Window glasses..... 178
Window lock switch..... 178
Windows..... 178
Power windows..... 178
Rear window defogger..... 430
Windshield wiper de-icer 431
Windshield wipers..... 241
Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster 241
Position 362
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 243
Winter driving tips..... 359
Wireless remote control key..... 141
Battery-Saving Function..... 129
Locking/Unlocking..... 141
Replacing the battery 697
WMA disc 469

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

GAS STATION INFORMATION

Auxiliary catch lever	Trunk opener	Fuel filler door
P. 657	P. 150	P. 249



Hood lock release lever	Tire inflation pressure
P. 657	P. 850

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	66 L (17.4 gal., 14.5 Imp.gal.)
Fuel type	EU area: Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only Except EU area: Premium unleaded gasoline only P. 249, 838
Cold tire inflation pressure	P. 850
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)	L (qt., Imp.qt.) GS250 / GS350 With filter: 6.3 (6.7, 5.5) / 6.4 (6.8, 5.6) Without filter: 5.9 (6.2, 5.2) / 6.0 (6.3, 5.3)
	"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent

ایداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com